



A TEXT-BOOK  
OF  
DENTAL HISTOLOGY  
AND  
EMBRYOLOGY  
INCLUDING  
LABORATORY DIRECTIONS

BY

FREDERICK BOGUE NOYES, B A., D D.S.

PROFESSOR OF HISTOLOGY, NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY DENTAL SCHOOL, 1896-1914  
PROFESSOR OF HISTOLOGY AND ORTHODONTIA, COLLEGE OF DENTISTRY  
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS, 1914

*THIRD EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED*

WITH A CHAPTER ON THE ABSORPTION OF THE ROOTS OF TEETH

By NEWTON GEORGE THOMAS, M A , D.D.S

PROFESSOR OF HISTOLOGY, NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY DENTAL SCHOOL, 1917-1919  
SECRETARY AND PROFESSOR OF HISTOLOGY, COLLEGE OF DENTISTRY, UNIVERSITY  
OF ILLINOIS, 1919

WITH 343 ILLUSTRATIONS AND 21 PLATES

---

LONDON  
HENRY KIMPTON  
263 HIGH HOLBORN, W C  
1921



# PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE exhaustion of the second edition of this work has afforded another opportunity for careful revision of the text and illustrations, and the addition of some important material, which has been developed since the appearance of the second edition. Many new drawings and a number of new micrographs have been prepared. The chapters on the lymphatics of the dental region and the absorption of the roots of teeth have been added, and the chapters on embryology, greatly enlarged.

The conditions at the present time, and especially the interest of the medical profession in the mouth as a source of systemic infection have put new emphasis on the teaching of histology, and have greatly changed the attitude of the dental profession. The need for a thorough knowledge of tissue structure and function is realized as it never has been before, and the demand for thorough training in the fundamental biological sciences has greatly increased.

The present interest and emphasis of the profession on the relation of the pulpless tooth to systemic diseases has somewhat changed the relative distribution of the text. The pages devoted to the enamel have been reduced, those devoted to the dentin, cementum and supporting tissues increased, and the chapter on the lymphatics added.

The work is primarily intended as an elementary text-book for dental students, rather than an exhaustive treatise on dental histology. For this reason, discussion of disputed ideas, presentation of various opinions, and reference to the work which has developed the subject have been largely and purposely avoided. It is the author's opinion that it is better for the student to get a clear idea of structure that he can use as a basis for thinking, rather than to be left with a hazy impression of differences of opinion.

In the preparation of this (the third) edition the author is specially indebted to Dr. Newton G. Thomas, who has prepared and written the chapter on the Absorption of the Roots of Teeth, and to Mrs. N. M. Frain, the artist for the department, who has made the illustrations.

F B N.

CHICAGO, 1921



# CONTENTS

---

INTRODUCTION	17
CHAPTER I	
HOMOLOGIES	19
CHAPTER II	
THE DENTAL TISSUES	23
CHAPTER III	
THE ENAMEL	37
CHAPTER IV	
THE STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS OF THE ENAMEL	41
CHAPTER V	
CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ENAMEL TISSUE	63
CHAPTER VI	
THE DIRECTION OF THE ENAMEL RODS IN THE TOOTH CROWN	77
CHAPTER VII	
THE RELATION OF THE STRUCTURE TO THE CUTTING OF THE ENAMEL	84
CHAPTER VIII	
THE STRUCTURAL REQUIREMENTS FOR STRONG ENAMEL WALLS	90
CHAPTER IX	
STRUCTURAL DEFECTS IN THE ENAMEL	113
CHAPTER X	
SPECIAL AREAS OF WEAKNESS FOR ENAMEL MARGINS	125
CHAPTER XI	
THE DENTIN	135
CHAPTER XII	
THE CEMENTUM (VI)	153

	CHAPTER XIII	
DENTAL PULP		164
	CHAPTER XIV	
THE LYMPHATICS OF THE DENTAL REGION		181
	CHAPTER XV	
INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES .		200
	CHAPTER XVI	
BONE .		209
	CHAPTER XVII	
BONE FORMATION AND GROWTH		216
	CHAPTER XVIII	
PERIOSTEUM		222
	CHAPTER XIX	
THE ATTACHMENT OF THE TEETH .		230
	CHAPTER XX	
THE PERIDONTAL MEMBRANE .		237
	CHAPTER XXI	
THE CELLULAR ELEMENTS OF THE PERIDONTAL MEMBRANE		250
	CHAPTER XXII	
ABSORPTION OF TEETH .		275
	CHAPTER XXIII	
THE MOUTH CAVITY .		288
	CHAPTER XXIV	
BIOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS FUNDAMENTAL TO EMBRYOLOGY		298
	CHAPTER XXV	
EARLY STAGES OF EMBRYOLOGY .		302
	CHAPTER XXVI	
THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TOOTH GERM .		321
	CHAPTER XXVII	
THE RELATION OF THE TEETH TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FACE .		334

## PART II

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

(TWENTY-FIVE PERIODS IN THE LABORATORY)

PRELIMINARY	377
PERIOD I	382
PERIOD II	387
PERIOD III	394
PERIOD IV	397
PERIOD V	397
PERIOD VI	399
PERIOD VII	399
PERIOD VIII	391
PERIOD IX	391
PERIOD X	392
PERIOD XI	393
PERIOD XII	393
PERIOD XIII	394
PERIOD XIV	394
PERIOD XV	395
PERIOD XVI	395
PERIOD XVII	396
PERIOD XVIII	396
PERIOD XIX	397
PERIOD XX	398
PERIOD XXI	399
PERIOD XXII	400
PERIOD XXIII	401
PERIOD XXIV	401

---

## APPENDIX

## CHAPTER I

THE GRINDING OF MICROSCOPIC SPECIMENS USING THE GRINDING MACHINE	403
--	-----

## CHAPTER II

THE THEORY OF HISTOLOGICAL TECHNIQUE	424
--------------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER III

GENERAL HISTOLOGICAL METHODS	430
------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER IV

FIXING AGENTS AND STAINING SOLUTIONS	439
--------------------------------------	-----

## INDEX

# DENTAL HISTOLOGY.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

THE development in knowledge of the cell has had a most profound effect upon the entire practice of medicine, in fact, the progress of modern medicine has dated from the studies of cell biology, the germ theory of disease being only one of the phases of this development. In terms of the cell theory the functions of the body are but the manifest expression of the activities of thousands or millions of more or less independent but correlated centers of activity. If these centers or cells perform their functions correctly, the functions of the body are normal, but if they fail to perform their office or work abnormally, the functions of the body are perverted. In the last analysis, then, all physiology is cell physiology, all pathology cell pathology. To modern medicine, histology, or the cell structure of the organs and tissues of the body, together with cell physiology, is the rational foundation of all practice. This is as true for the dentist as for the physician in regard to the soft tissues of the mouth and teeth that he is called upon to handle. With caries of the teeth, the disease which most demands the attention of the dentist, the case is somewhat different. Caries of the teeth is an active destruction, by outside agencies, of a formed material which is the result of cell activity, the teeth themselves being passive. The cellular activities of organs and tissues of the body may have an influence, but this is only in producing those conditions of environment which render the activities of the destructive agent efficient in their action upon the tooth tissues. Though the dental tissues are passive, the phenomena of caries can only be understood when the structure of the tissues is understood, and not only must the treatment be based upon knowledge of the structure of the tissues, but the mechanical execution of the treatment is facilitated by that knowledge of structure.

In the preparation of cavities, the arrangement of the enamel wall is determined by the knowledge of the direction of the enamel

prisms in that locality, and to a certain extent the position of cavity margins must be governed by the knowledge of the structure of the enamel. In the execution of the work a minute knowledge of the direction of enamel rods becomes the most important element in rapidity and success of operation. The longer the author studies and teaches the structure of the enamel in its relation to the structure and preparation of enamel walls the more he finds himself using this knowledge at the chair in daily operations. He believes that nothing will do more to increase facility, rapidity, and success of operation than a close study of the enamel structure.

All tissues are made up of two structural elements—cells and intercellular substances. The cells give the vital characteristics the intercellular substances the physical character. The cells are the active living elements, the intercellular substances are formed materials produced by the activity of the cells and more or less dependent upon them to maintain their quality but they possess no vital properties. They surround and support the cells, and the physical characteristics are given by them. An understanding of the relation of cells and intercellular substances in the structure and function of tissues is absolutely fundamental to the study of dental histology, and should be acquired in a thorough study of general histology before the subject is undertaken.

At the time the first edition of this work was prepared the relation of histologic structure of the enamel to the mechanical operation of dentistry was receiving special attention because of the study of cavity form for the prevention of the recurrence of caries and the changes necessitated in cavity preparation because of this study. This phase of dental histology is just as important as ever but it has been so generally accepted and so clearly grasped that now most of the applications in practice are taught, where they properly belong in Operative Dentistry and the Technique of Cavity Preparation. In this edition, therefore the space devoted to this subject is greatly reduced.

The problem of the pulpless tooth which now occupies the foremost place in the attention of the dental and medical professions emphasizes the importance of the histology of the dentin and cementum and places new importance on the relation of cellular and intercellular substances in the tissue. For the dental student this subject should be given more careful consideration than is usual in elementary courses of general histology.

**Exoskeleton.**—In studying the organization of animal forms they are found, very early in the evolutionary stages, to develop some sort of a framework, or skeleton, to support and protect the creature. In the lower and earlier forms this framework is formed entirely of some sort of shell upon the outside of the creature, and consequently is called an exoskeleton. This may be either horny or chitinous in nature, as in the insects, crabs, etc., or it may be calcified, as in the shell-fish, or it may be both. The exoskeleton serves not only as a supporting framework, but also as a protection.

**Endoskeleton** —In the higher forms an internal framework, or endoskeleton, is developed, which forms the scaffolding to support the creature, but does not act as a protection. In the first place, this is of cartilage, but may be changed into bone.

The exoskeleton is a product of the skin and may be of either epithelial or connective-tissue origin, or from both. The skin is made up of two parts the epithelial covering or epidermis, and the supporting connective-tissue layer, or derma. Both layers take part in the formation of most exoskeletal structures. In the hair, the shaft is of epithelium, the bulb of connective tissue. In the tooth, the enamel is from the epithelium, the dentin, from connective tissue. In all bony structures belonging to the exoskeleton the bone is formed in fibrous tissue and is never preceded by cartilage. Bony structures belonging to the endoskeleton are formed from cartilage. In lower forms of animals they remain always cartilage. In man the cartilage is partly converted into bone, all of the bones of the endoskeleton being preceded by cartilage.

The first trace of the endoskeleton is found in the lowest form of vertebrate, the *Amphioxus* or *Lancet*, the lowest form of fish, and appears as a rod or notochord in the dorsal region. There is also an important difference in the nervous organization (Figs 1 and 2). In the invertebrate the nervous system is represented by a larger or smaller ganglion in the anterior or head end, corresponding to the brain, this is dorsal to the alimentary canal. From this a ring passes around the anterior end of the alimentary canal

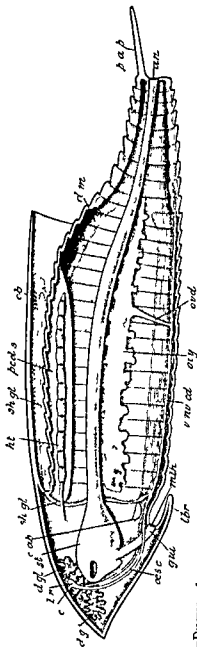


Fig. 1.—Diagram of invertebrate showing nervous system (Parker and Haswell) *Lepidurus kirku* sagittal section

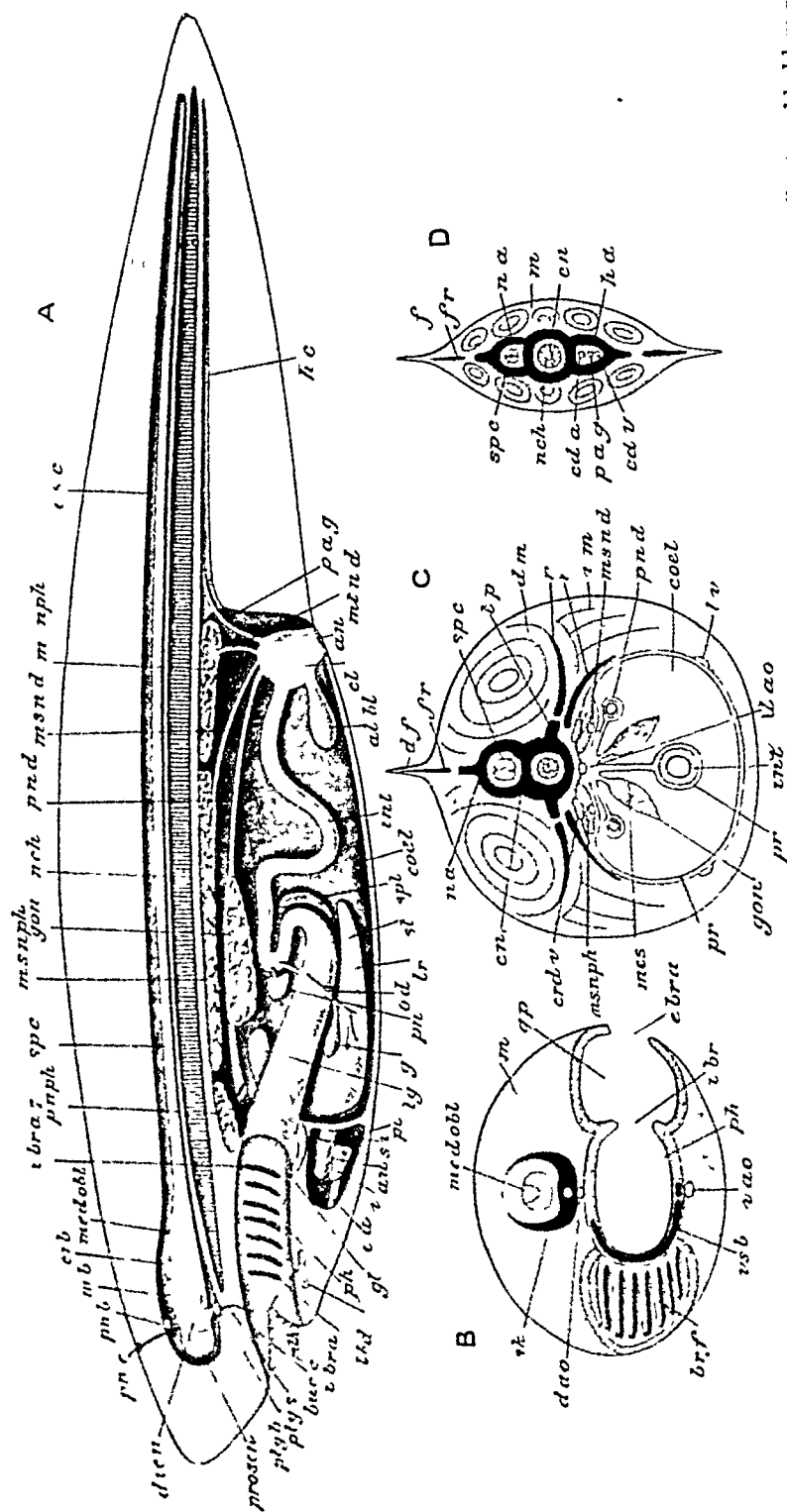


FIG. 2.—A, sagittal section of ideal craniate, B, transverse section of the head, C, of the trunk, D, of the tail, *an*, anus, *au*, auricle, *b d*, bile duct, *br f*, branchial filaments, *buc c*, buccal cavity, *c a*, conus arteriosus, *cd a*, caudal artery, *cd v*, caudal vein, *coel*, celome, *crd v*, circular vein, *cn*, centrum, *crb*, cerebellum, *c s c*, cerebrospinal cavity, *d ao*, dorsal aorta, *dien*, diencephalon, *d f*, dorsal fin, *d m*, dorsal muscles; *e br a*, external branchial aperture, *f r*, fin-ray, *g b*, gall-bladder, *gl*, glottis, *gon*, gonad, *g p*, gill-pouch, *h a*, hemal arch, *h c*, hemal canal, *i br a*, internal branchial apertures, *int*, intestine, *lq*, lung, *lr*, liver, *l v*, lateral vein; *m*, muscles, *m b*, metanephros; *mid obl*, medulla oblongata; *me s*, mesentery, *ms n d*, mesonephros, *mnh*, mouth, *m n d*, metanephric duct, *m nph*, metanephros, *n a*, neural arch, *nch*, notochord, *p a g*, postanal gut, *pc*, pericardium; *ph*, pharynx, *pm*, pancreas, *pm b*, pineal body, *p n d*, pronephric duct, *p n e*, pineal sense-organ, *p nph*, pronephros, *pr*, peritoneum, parietal layer, *pr'*, visceral layer, *prosen*, prosencephalon, *ply b*, pituitary body, *ply s*, pituitary sac, *r*, subperitoneal rib, *r'*, intermuscular rib, *slc*, skull, *sp c*, spinal cord, *spl*, spleen, *st*, stomach, *t v*, thyroid, *t v*, transverse process, *v*, ventricle, *v ao*, ventral aorta, *v m*, ventral muscles, *v s b*, visceral bar (Parker and Haswell)



and unites with a chain of ganglia ventral to it. The nervous system of the invertebrate then is, with the exception of the brain ganglia ventral to the alimentary canal and corresponds to the sympathetic system in higher animals. It will be noted that this arrangement puts the nervous system, which controls the activity of the individual in the most protected position. The invertebrate crawling upon the ground is subject to attack or injury from above, but it may be cut almost in two before the nervous system is reached.

In the vertebrate the central nervous system appears as a chain of ganglia dorsal to the alimentary canal and notochord (Fig. 2). This difference is significant, and may be expressed roughly in this way. The invertebrate framework is an outside protecting shell upon which the creature depends for protection. The vertebrate framework is an internal structure to facilitate motion and give support and is accompanied by a development of the nervous organization so that the creature protects itself by more rapid motion. In the invertebrate the digestive system is above or dorsal to the nervous system, in the vertebrate the nervous system is in the upper position, both structurally and functionally.

In ascending in the scale of organization the endoskeleton increases in importance and development while the exoskeleton decreases in importance and development.

From the standpoint of comparative anatomy the teeth are not a part of the osseous system but appendages of the skin, and are to be compared with such structures in the body as the hair and the nails. The teeth are a part of the exoskeleton, and their relation to the bones is entirely secondary for the purpose of strength, the bone growing up around the tooth to support it.

**Placoid Scales**—In the skin of such fishes as the shark and the dog fish small calcified scales are found which are made up of a conical cap of calcified tissue like enamel, resting on a cone of dentin which contains a vascular core or pulp. These are surrounded by a basal plate of tissue like cementum into which the fibers of the derma are imbedded. Only the tips of these scales project through the skin. These are the structures from which the teeth have been derived in evolution.

From the standpoint of development the mouth cavity is to be regarded as a part of the outside surface of the body which has been enclosed by the development of the following parts, and the dermal scales or rudimentary teeth, found in covering the arches forming the jaw, and the undergirding parts.

development for the purpose of seizing and masticating the animal's food. In the simplest forms there is only a development in size and shape of these scales, and they are supported only by the connective tissue which underlies the skin. These teeth are easily torn off in the attempt to hold a resisting prey, and in the shark (Fig 3) they are continually being replaced by new ones. In the more highly developed forms the bone forming the jaw grows upward around the bases of these scale-like teeth to support them more firmly and render them more useful.

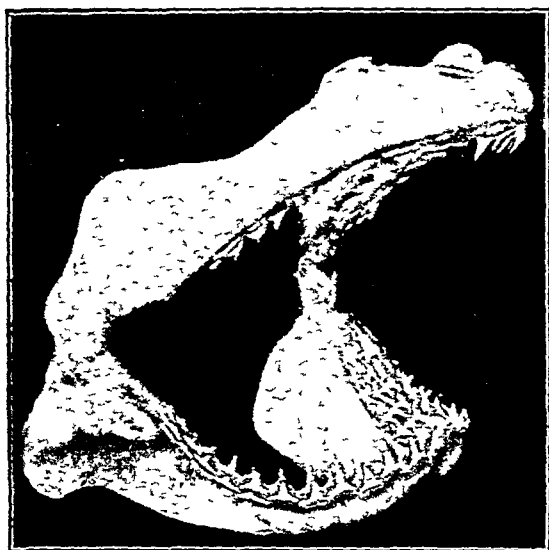


FIG 3 —Shark's skull (*Lamna cornubica*), showing succession of teeth

**Homology and Analogy.**—In biology structures that are similar in formation and origin are called *homologous*. Structures that are similar in function are called *analogous*. A structure or organ may be both homologous and analogous to another, but not necessarily so. For instance, the wing of a fly is analogous to the wing of a bird, because they are used for the same purpose, but they are not homologous. The wing of a bat and the wing of a bird are both analogous and homologous, being used for the same purpose, and having similar structure and origin. The arm of man is homologous to the wing of a bird, but not analogous to it. The jaws of a crab or beetle are analogous to the jaws of man, but they are not homologous structures, as the jaws of the crabs and insects are modified legs. The teeth are said to be homologous to the dermal

scales of certain fishes, and to the appendages of the skin, such as the hair and nails because they are similar in structure and origin (Plate I)

**Comparison of Structure**—If the tooth is compared with the hair in this way this will be better understood. The hair may be considered as a *horny structure composed of epithelial cells resting upon a papilla of connective tissue*. The tooth may be considered a *calified structure formed by epithelial cells resting upon a papilla of connective tissue which is also partially calcified*.

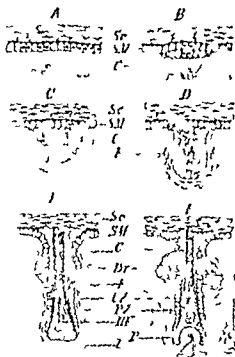
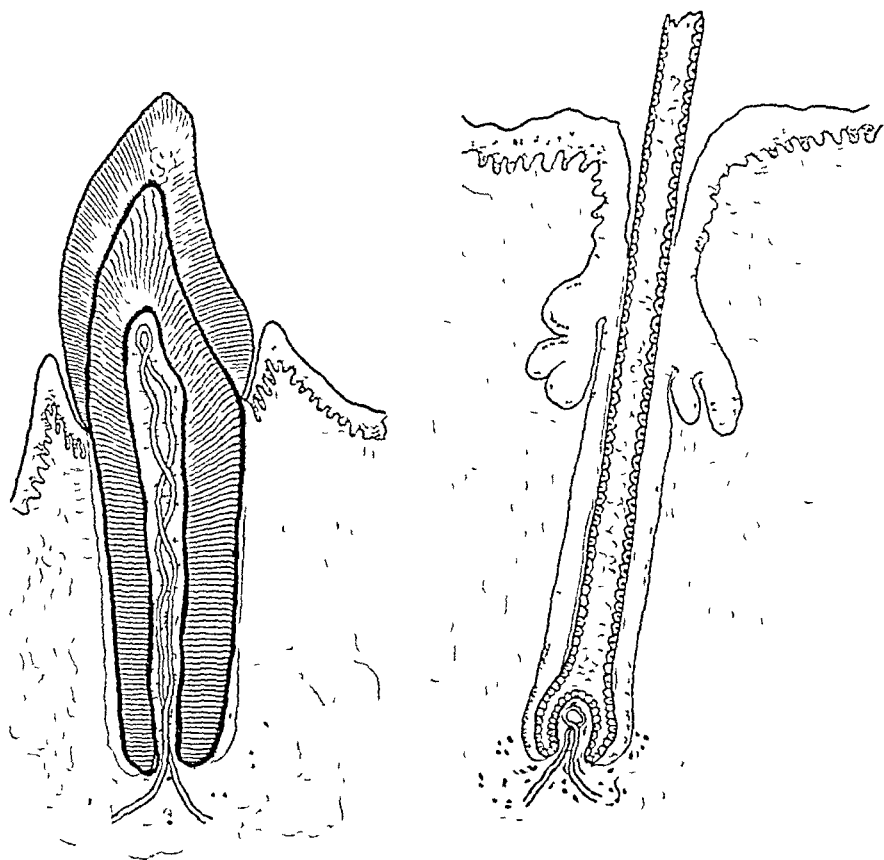


FIG. 4.—Development of the hair. Sc stratum corneum. SM stratum malpighii. C dermis. Dr sebaceous gland. F follicles. C? central. P? peripheral zone of hair germ. HK hair knot. P beginning the formation of the hair papilla. P same in a later stage of development when it has become vascular. (Wiedersheim *Comparative Anatomy of Vertebrates*.)

**Comparison of Origin**—From a study of the development of the tooth and the hair, the similarity of their origin and structure becomes more apparent.

The first step in the development of the hair is a thickening of the epithelium at a point the epithelial cells multiplying and growing down into the connective tissue below, so as to make a two-

# PLATE I



Comparison of Structure of Tooth and Hair



layered bag or cap, the connective tissue growing up in the form of a cone-shaped papilla into the cavity of the cap (Fig 4). The epithelial cells of the inner layer, next to the connective tissue, multiply rapidly and develop horny material and are pushed out from the surface of the skin as the shaft of the hair

In the development of the tooth there is at first a thickening of the epithelium, and a mass of epithelial cells like that forming the hair, but larger, grows down into the connective tissue (Fig. 5). This becomes bulbous, then invaginated, forming a two-layered

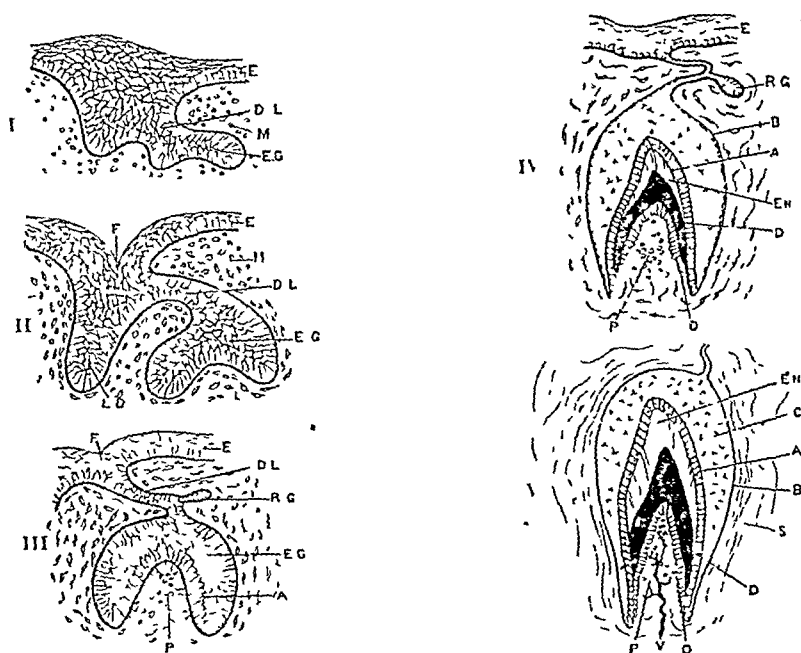


FIG 5—Diagram to illustrate development of a tooth, A, inner layer of enamel germ, B, outer layer, C, remains of intermediate cells, D, dentin; DL, dental lamina, E, epithelium, EG, enamel germ, En, enamel, F, dental furrow; LD, labiodental furrow, M, connective-tissue cells, O, odontoblasts, P, dentin papilla, R.G, reserve germ, V, bloodvessel (Cunningham's *Anatomy*)

cap. The two layers are at first perfect and are farther from the surface than the epithelial structure which develops the hair. A cone-shaped papilla of connective tissue, the dental papilla, grows up into the cavity of the epithelial organ corresponding to the bulb of the hair

The inner layer of epithelial cells produce the enamel, the outer layer of connective-tissue cells, covering the connective-tissue papilla, develop the dentin, leaving the pulp inside as the remains of the dental papilla.

*Phylogeny* is the history of the development or evolution of the species. *Ontogeny* is the development of the individual. In homologous structure we may trace the similarity in their origin both in

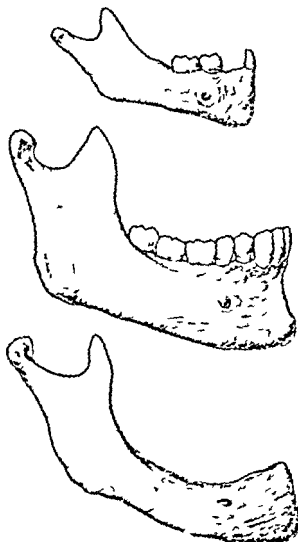


Fig. 6. Changes in the mandible with age. buccal and lingual view

ontogeny or the development of the individual and in phylogeny or the development of the species.

**Relation to the Bone.** The relation of the bones of the jaws to the teeth is entirely secondary and transient. The bone grows





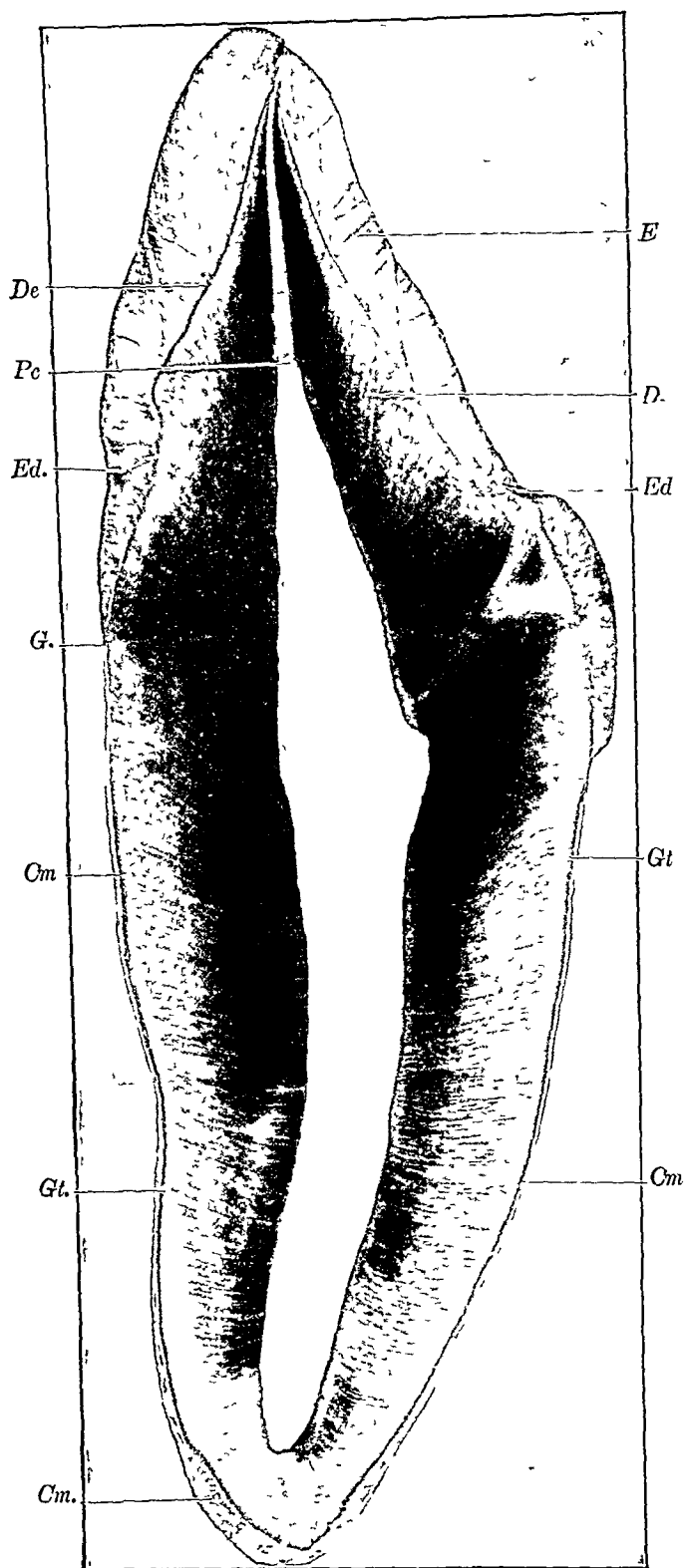
## DISTRIBUTION OF THE DENTAL TISSUES

The arrangement and distribution of the dental tissues in the structure of the human teeth is best studied in ground sections cut longitudinally through the entire tooth (Plate II), and series of transverse sections cut through the roots. For this purpose the sections should not be too thin (from 10 to 20 microns). For the study of the arrangement of the cementum and dentin in the roots at least three transverse sections should be ground from each root—one from the gingival, one from the middle, and one from the apical third.

**The Enamel**—The enamel forms a cap over the exposed portion of the tooth. Its function is to resist the abrasions of mastication. It gives the detail of crown form to the tooth. It extends to the gingival line and except in old age is covered in the gingival portions by the epithelium of the gingivæ which lies in contact with it but is not attached to it. It is thin in the gingival portion and is normally overlapped slightly by the cementum at the gingival line. It extends farther apically on the labial and lingual and buccal and lingual, than upon the proximal surfaces, especially on the incisors, cuspids, and bicuspid. It is thickest in the occlusal third of the axial surfaces and on the occlusal surfaces of the molars and bicuspid especially over the cusps. In the incisors and cuspids it is thickest in the occlusal third on the labial and over the marginal ridges on the lingual. The dento-enamel junction though not parallel with the surface of the enamel is usually curved in the same direction except near the cusps in molars and bicuspid, where the curve is sometimes reversed apparently to give greater thickness of enamel where resistance to wear is most needed.

In the molars and bicuspid the dento-enamel junction in the occlusal thirds on the buccal and lingual is usually curved in the opposite direction. That is while the surface of the enamel is convex, the surface of the dentin is concave. It will be seen that this not only gives a greater thickness to the enamel in the region which will resist abrasion, but also gives it a firmer seat upon the dentin. (Study illustrations in Chapter IX.) The dento-enamel junction is seldom a smooth even surface, but will appear scalloped in sections projections of dentin extending between projections of enamel (Fig. 7). In three dimensions this means that rounded projections of the enamel rest in rounded depressions of the dentin surface, and pointed projections of the dentin extend between the

## PLATE II



Ground Section of a Canine

*E*, enamel, *Cm*, cementum, *D*, dentin, *Pc*, pulp chamber, *De*, dentoenamel junction, *Ed*, enamel defect, *G*, junction of enamel and cementum at the gingival line, *Gt*, granular layer of Tomes (Reduced from a photomicrograph made in three sections)



rounded projections of the enamel. This is similar but much less marked than the interlocking of the papilla of connective tissue with the projections of the Malpighian layer of stratified squamous epithelium of the skin and mucous membrane. In some cases these



FIG 7 —Dento-enamel junction.

projections of dentin into the enamel may be quite marked. This scalloping of the dento-enamel junction gives a stronger attachment of the enamel to the dentin, and accounts, partially at least, for the difference that is observed in the ease with which enamel

can be removed from the dentin in the preparation of roots for crowns. Where the two tissues join with smooth surfaces the enamel can be comparatively easily cleaved away where the scalloping is marked it is removed with much greater difficulty.

**The Dentin**—The dentin gives the strength to the tooth. This should never be lost sight of in operations, and sound dentin should always be conserved to the greatest possible extent in the preparation of cavities. That the function of the dentin is to give strength will be seen more clearly from a comparative study of teeth modified for special functions. The dentin forms the greatest mass of the tooth, the type form being determined by it. The cusps and ridges, although different in form, are still represented in the dentin as well as the number and shape of the roots while the detail of the form of the roots is modified by the addition of the cementum on the surface.

The dentin forms a layer of comparatively even thickness surrounding the central cavity or pulp chamber, which is occupied by the formative organ. From this cavity a great number of small tubules extend through the calcified dentin matrix to the surface under the enamel and cementum. In the crown portion the course of these tubules is characteristically curved like the letter S or f, so that the tubules tend to enter the pulp chamber at right angles to the surface and to end under the enamel at right angles to the dento-enamel junction (Plate II). On closer study these tubule directions will be found to be more complicated but in studying the distribution of dentin they should be noted. In the root portion the tubules are usually comparatively straight, that is without the double curve, and are at about right angles to the axis of the canal.

The outer layer of dentin under low magnification presents a peculiar granular appearance which is specially apparent under the cementum. This is known as the granular layer of Tomes and is caused by irregular spaces in the dentin matrix which communicate with the dentinal tubules.

**The Cementum**—The cementum covers the dentin in the root portion and in most cases slightly overlaps the enamel at the gingival line. This is not always true, for in some cases it just meets the enamel and in others there is a space where the dentin is uncovered between the enamel and the cementum (Fig 8). It has not been positively determined whether this can ever be considered a normal condition, and the author has some reason to

suppose that the sections showing this condition were from teeth from which the gums had receded and the cementum was destroyed. The sensitiveness which is so marked in some cases, where the gums have receded beyond the gingival line, is probably due to the loss of cementum and the uncovering of the granular layer of Tomes.

The cementum is thin and structureless in appearance in the gingival portion when viewed with low powers, but becomes thicker

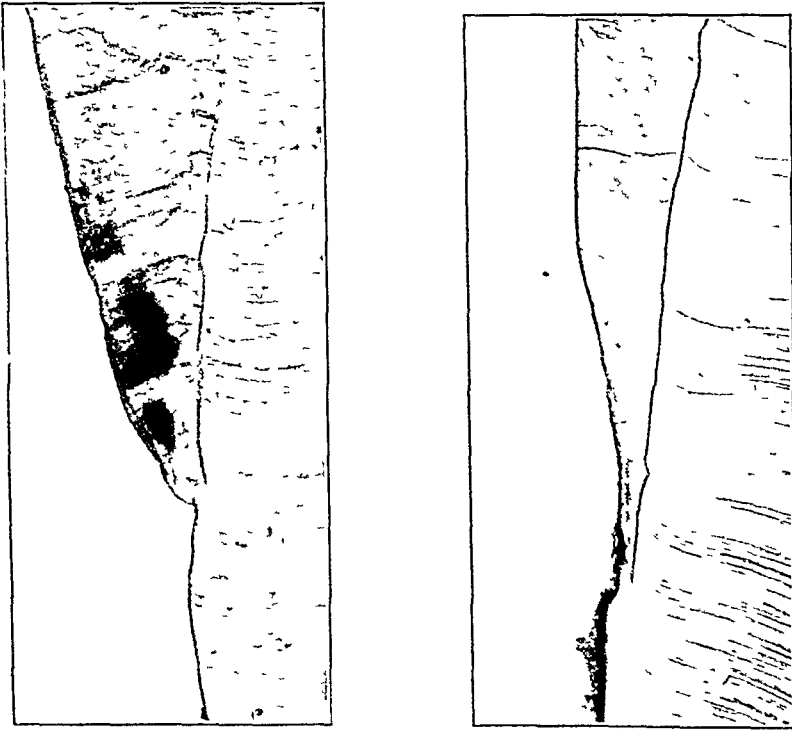


FIG. 8.—Gingival line, showing the relation of enamel and cementum

in the apical third. In the thicker portions irregular spaces (lacunæ) with radiating canals (canaliculi) are seen. In life these spaces contain living cells (the cement corpuscles), which correspond to the bone corpuscles found in the lacunæ of bone. Upon the convex surfaces of the root the cementum is thin, upon the concave surfaces it is thicker. This increases with age, and so the continuous formation of cementum tends to round the outlines of the roots and to unite them where they approach each other. The fibers which are built in the cementum are often imperfectly

calcified, especially where the layers are thick so that in the ground sections they may often be easily mistaken for canals because the imperfectly calcified fiber has shrunk in the preparation

### ADAPTATION IN THE DISTRIBUTION OF DENTAL TISSUES

If the teeth of mammals are studied in a comparative way many modifications will be found in the relative amount and distribution of the dental tissues adapting the tooth to perform special functions. A study of these modified or specialized teeth will give a better understanding of the functions of the tissues in the tooth. The human tooth may be taken as a type of omnivorous tooth and the arrangement and distribution of its tissues has already been described.

**Teeth of Continuous Growth**—In many animals the teeth or some special teeth are developed as weapons, or as implements to aid in securing food. It is usually the cuspid teeth that show this modification as in the tusks of the boar and many species of the carnivora, the tusks of the walrus, and other examples. In the case of the elephant the incisors have been developed in the same way. Whenever the teeth have been developed in size for uses which require strength and the ability to withstand stress and strain the increase in size is by development of the mass of dentin, the enamel often being entirely lost during the functional period. If these teeth were composed chiefly of enamel they would be too brittle. These tusks which, as in the case of the elephant, sometimes reach a weight of many hundreds of pounds, are usually deeply embedded in the bone and the concealed portion is covered with a layer of cementum which attaches the fibers holding them to the bone but they retain a conical pulp in a cone-shaped pulp chamber at the base of the tooth, which continues to form dentin. The tooth is pushed out of the socket as the shaft of the hair is pushed out by the multiplication of cells covering the bulb. In this way the size of the tooth is maintained as the exposed and functional part is worn off. Strength and elasticity are required, therefore the dentin is developed. The cementum which is formed on the embedded portion for attachment of fibers is worn off as soon as it is exposed to friction.

**Chisel Teeth**—The incisors of the rodents, as rats, mice, squirrels, and beavers present an interesting modification for a special function. These teeth are used as chisels for cutting hard sub-

stances, as wood, shells of nuts, etc. Here strength and hardness are required. The dentin is increased by the continual function of a conical persistent pulp which continues to form dentin, and the enamel organ is carried down into the socket, to the base of the dental papilla, on the labial, instead of stopping at the gingival line, as in the human incisors. In this position it continues to build enamel on the labial side of the dentin. The enamel rods, instead of being straight, are twisted about each other in a complicated fashion, giving the maximum of hardness. As the incisors work against each other by the movements of the jaw, the dentin is worn off on the lingual side and the enamel kept in the form of a chisel edge. There is also a modification of the temporomandibular articulation, allowing the lower jaw to move forward and back as well as up and down, but not laterally, so that the lower incisors can be closed either lingually or labially to the upper, and in this way both the upper and the lower incisors are made to sharpen each other in use. In this case there is need for both strength and hardness, and both dentin and enamel are continuously being formed at the base of the tooth embedded in the socket, and the cementum is formed over the embedded portions as the medium of attachment.

**Grinding Teeth.**—In a grinding tooth, as in the molar of the horse and cow, and in a much more complicated form in the elephant, the three tissues—enamel, cementum, and dentin—are arranged so as to form, by the different rapidity of abrasion, corrugated grinding surfaces like millstones. The conditions can be understood if it is remembered that the cusps in the dentin are very high, and are covered by a comparatively thin layer of enamel. After the enamel is formed, and while the tooth is embedded in its crypt in the bone, cementum is formed, covering the surface and filling up the hollows between the cusps, so that the crown when it first erupts is rounded, with enamel showing only at the tips of the cusps. As soon as the tooth wears, the tip of the enamel is worn through, so that the circumference of the crown shows first cementum, then enamel, then dentin, then enamel, then cementum, then enamel, and so on. The foldings of the enamel often become very complicated, but the most complicated forms can be understood in this way.

**Descriptive Terms.**—In describing the structure of the teeth and the arrangement of the structural elements of the tissues, directions are described with reference to three planes. The mesio-



disto axial plane passing through the center of the crown from mesial to distal and parallel with the long axis of the tooth

The bucco linguo-axial plane a plane passing through the center of the crown from buccal to lingual and parallel with the long axis of the tooth

The horizontal plane at right angles to the axial planes

## CHAPTER III.

### THE ENAMEL.

ENAMEL may be defined as the hard, glistening tissue covering the crowns of the teeth in man and most mammals. It is the hardest animal substance and contains less organic matter than any other tissue of the body

**Histogenesis**—The enamel is formed by the epithelial cells of the inner tunic of the enamel organ. After the tissue is formed the cells which produced it are destroyed and the tissue is left as a formed material covering the dentin.

**Structural Elements.**—The enamel is composed of two structural elements (1) The enamel rods, or prisms (2) A calcified substance which unites the rods into a continuous structure called the cementing, or interprismatic substance

The enamel differs from all other calcified tissues:

- 1 In origin.
- 2 In degree of calcification
- 3 In relation to its formative organ.
- 4 In the form of the structural elements of the tissue

It is well to emphasize these points of difference, for throughout dental and medical writing, reasoning by analogy from bone conditions to tooth conditions, and especially to changes in the enamel, is often found. For instance, the argument has been made that because there may be changes in the bones in pregnancy, "softening" of the teeth would be expected. Many similar, though less crude, arguments would not be made if it were remembered that histologically, histogenetically, physiologically, and morphologically the enamel stands *alone*

**Origin.**—The enamel is the only calcified tissue derived from the epithelium. All other calcified tissues are connective tissues. Histogenetically, then, the enamel is ultimately derived from the epiblastic germ layer, while all other calcified tissues arise from the mesoblast. Thus, even at the first step in the differentiation of the cells, enamel is different and independent from bone, cementum, or dentin. It is natural, therefore, to find the enamel differing from bone in every other respect. On the other hand, the relation

of the enamel to the epithelium becomes more and more apparent. For instance, imperfections in the structure of the enamel during its formation are most likely to be produced by systemic conditions which affect the epithelium. The eruptive fevers occurring during enamel formation often produce imperfections of structure. Scarlet fever is most pronounced in its epithelial effect, causing loss of skin, loss of living epithelium of the alimentary tract, and often loss of hair, and is likewise most likely to produce pitted teeth or hypoplasia of the enamel. In other words, the same poison which is produced by the germ of scarlet fever causes the death of epithelial cells of the skin, of the hair bulb, of the mucous membrane, and of the enamel organ.

The most recent work of Dr. Black shows the brown and mottled enamel of certain localities to be found associated with greatly freckled skin. Enamel therefore must be considered as epithelial in origin and ultimately from the epiblast, while all other calcified tissues are connective tissue and ultimately of mesoblastic origin.

**Degree of Calcification.**—The enamel is by far the hardest animal tissue. Chemically it is composed of water, calcium phosphate carbonate, and a small amount of fluoride, magnesium phosphate, and a trace of other salts. Normally it should contain no organic matter. Von Bibra gives the following analysis:

Calcium phosphate and fluoride	69.62
Calcium carbonate	4.37
Magnesium phosphate	1.34
Other salts	0.68
Cartilage	3.39
fat	0.90

It is very difficult to obtain enamel for chemical analysis entirely free from dentin, and small portions of dentin clinging to it are probably responsible for some of the organic matter given in the above analysis.

In all the older analyses the enamel was said to contain 90 to 97 per cent. of inorganic matter and 3 to 5 per cent. of organic matter, while the percentage in dentin was given as 72 per cent. of inorganic and 28 per cent. of organic, and in bone as 68 per cent. inorganic and 32 per cent. organic (dry compact bone). This in itself shows an enormous difference in the degree of calcification between enamel and the other hard tissues, but the results of more recent work are still more remarkable. In most of the original studies of the chemical composition, the enamel was broken into

small pieces and dried for some time at a temperature above the boiling-point of water, to drive off all the moisture. The dry enamel was weighed and then ignited, and the loss in weight taken as the amount of organic matter. In 1896 Mr. Charles Tomes,<sup>1</sup> of London, published the results of his chemical analysis of enamel in which he showed that a large part of the loss of weight in ignition was due to the loss of water. He carried out ignition in tubes to collect the products of combustion, and found that between red and white heat from 2 to 3 per cent of water was given off. This occurred suddenly and with almost explosive violence, blowing large pieces to fragments. While this did not account entirely for all of the matter previously considered organic, the character of the product of combustion and the observation of the material during ignition led him to conclude that the remaining portion was due to the dentin adhering to the enamel, and that the enamel contained not more than a trace of organic matter.

Dr Leon Williams attacked the problem from the microscopic and microchemical side, and was forced to the conclusion that normal enamel contains no organic matter. No trace of organic matter can be found in sections of enamel by staining. And if the enamel is dissolved by acid and the progress observed, not a trace of organic matrix can be found. The conclusion is therefore imperative that enamel is composed entirely of inorganic matter, which has been deposited and calcified in the form of the tissue by the formative cells. In other words, enamel is formed material produced by cells and laid down in a definite structure, but it contains no organic matrix, while all other calcified tissues are composed of an organic matrix of ultimate fibrous and gelatin-yielding character, in which inorganic salts are deposited in a weak chemical combination, and living cells are retained in spaces of the formed material.

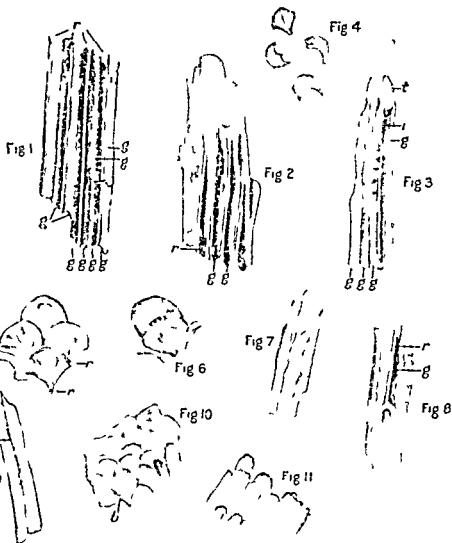
If bone or dentin is subjected to the action of acid, the combination between the organic and inorganic matter is broken up and the inorganic matter dissolved, leaving the organic portion, which yields gelatin when boiled in water, in the form of the original tissue. If enamel is treated with acid the cementing substance between the rods is first attacked and is dissolved more rapidly, then the rods are attacked from their sides, and finally the tissue is entirely destroyed, leaving no trace of structure. Apparently the greater the dilution of the acid the greater will be the extent

<sup>1</sup> Journal of Physiology.





# PLATE III



## CHAPTER IV.

### THE STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS OF THE ENAMEL.

THE enamel is composed of two structural elements:

1. The enamel rods or prisms, sometimes called enamel fibers.
- 2 The interprismatic, or cementing substance.

**Enamel Rods**—The enamel rods are long, slender, prismatic rods irregularly five or six-sided<sup>1</sup> and alternately expanded and constricted throughout their length (Plate III and Fig. 9). They are from three and four-tenths to four and five-tenths microns in diameter, and many of them extend from the dento-enamel junction to the surface of the enamel. They are of the *same diameter at their outer and inner ends*. This last statement is emphasized, as the direct opposite is stated in some standard text-books of histology. In the formation of the tissue they are arranged so that the expansions in adjoining rods come opposite to each other, and do not

<sup>1</sup>This statement of the shape of the enamel prisms must be taken as a general statement, just as columnar epithelial cells are described as five-sided in cross-section. In the enamel prism, as in the epithelial cell, the form is the result of mutual pressure, the outlines are never regular, and unevenness in the distribution of the pressure, or lack of balance in direction will modify the form of the prisms. For further study of the form and relation of the enamel rods the student is referred to *The Microscopic Anatomy of the Teeth*, by J. Howard Mummery, Chapter II.

---

#### DESCRIPTION OF PLATE III.

Drawings from teased preparations of enamel from elephant, except Figs 5, 6, 7 and 8, which are from sections

FIG. 1—Double-grooved prisms (elephant). *r*, ridges, *g*, grooves. The ridges are often seen projecting beyond the extremities of fragments.

FIG. 2—Single-grooved prisms (elephant). *r*, ridge, *g*, grooves.

FIG. 3—Two double-grooved prisms, transverse above (elephant).

FIG. 4—Fragments of prisms in transverse fracture (elephant).

FIG. 5—Four prisms from a section (elephant), showing surface marking and prominence of the ridge at *r*.

FIG. 6—From elephant bridges in transverse section. The interprismatic substance appeared dark and the bridges are very conspicuous as white lines.

FIG. 7—Elephant. From a section, showing a wing process in the enamel.

FIG. 8—Elephant. From a section, showing ridges and grooves. *r*, ridges, *g*, grooves.

FIG. 9—Two prisms from elephant, showing needle-splitting (*n*) and intercolumnar bridges (*b*).

FIG. 10—Fragment of elephant enamel in transverse section. Two entire double concave prisms are seen projecting, with feather edges and intercolumnar bridges (*b*).

FIG. 11—Fragments of prisms seen obliquely (elephant).



interlock with the constrictions so that there is alternately a greater and a less amount of cementing substance between them.

It is evident that the outer surface of the enamel is much greater than the surface of the dentin at the dento-enamel junction. This greater area is obtained in two ways:

1. The rods are at right angles to the dentin at the dento-enamel junction but are seldom at right angles to the outer surface. This may be illustrated by bending the leaves of a book or cutting a stack of paper obliquely. The sheets of paper are of the same thickness but when cut at right angles to the sheets the area of the cut surface is not so great as when the leaves are cut diagonally.



FIG. 9.—Enamel rods isolated by etching. (About 500 X)

2. Many of the enamel rods undoubtedly extend from the dento-enamel junction to the surface of the enamel, though it is difficult to follow individual rods through this distance, but there are also short rods which extend from the surface part way to the dentin. These short rods end in tapering points between converging rods that extend the entire distance. The short rods are specially numerous over the more convex portions of the surface as over the tips of the cusps, occlusal ridges and marginal ridges. These areas therefore become of special importance in connection with the formation of enamel walls, as will be considered in detail here on (Fig. 10).

**Differences between Enamel Rods and Cementing Substance.**—While the cementing substance and the substance of the rods are both entirely inorganic, or, more correctly, are composed entirely of inorganic salts, they differ in physical and chemical properties as follows:

1. The cementing substance is not as strong as the prismatic substance.

2 The cementing substance is more readily soluble in dilute acids than the rod substance.

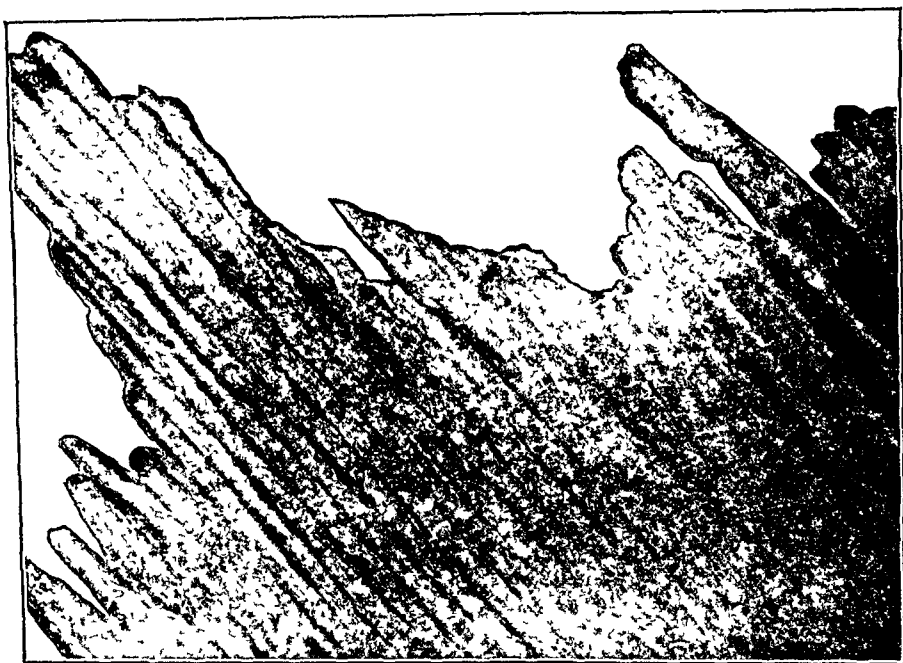


FIG 10 —Enamel rods in thin etched section (About 800 X)

3. The cementing substance is of slightly different (greater) refracting index than the substance of the rod. The author wishes to emphasize these statements, as the exact opposite is found in some of the standard texts, at least concerning the first and second statements. The facts are, however, so easily demonstrable that anyone may satisfy himself without difficulty.

**Relative Strength of the Enamel Rods and the Cementing Substance.**—The cementing substance is not as strong as the substance of the rods. The most striking characteristics of the enamel, and the first to attract the attention of the student and the operator, are its hardness and its tendency to split or cleave in certain directions.

On examination it is found that this is determined by the direction of the rods and is caused by the difference in strength between the two substances. Sections ground at right angles to the rod direction are very difficult to prepare because of the tendency of the section to break to pieces.

If a section that is beginning to crack (Fig. 11) is studied the crack is found to follow the line of the cementing substance running around the rods. In some places a rod may be split through its center but most of the rods remain perfect and the cementing substance breaks. In the same way a section cut in the direction of the rods shows the crack following the lines of the cementing substance (Fig. 12) here and there breaking across a few rods and then fol-



FIG. 11.—Transverse section of enamel rods. (Altit No. 2)

lowing the direction again, but the rods separate on the line of union not at the centers of the rods. This fact becomes fundamental in the cutting of enamel and in the preparation of strong enamel walls.

**Relative Solubility of Enamel Rods and Cementing Substance.**—If a thin section of enamel cut parallel with the direction of the enamel rods is mounted in water and hydrochloric acid (2 per cent) is allowed to run under the cover glass and the action observed it will be seen to attack the cementing substance more rapidly dissolving it out from between the enamel rods and attacking their sides. If the action is stopped the ends of the rods will be seen projecting like the peaks of a fence as shown in the photograph.

(Fig. 13). The more dilute the acid the greater will be the distance to which the cementing substance is removed before the rods are destroyed

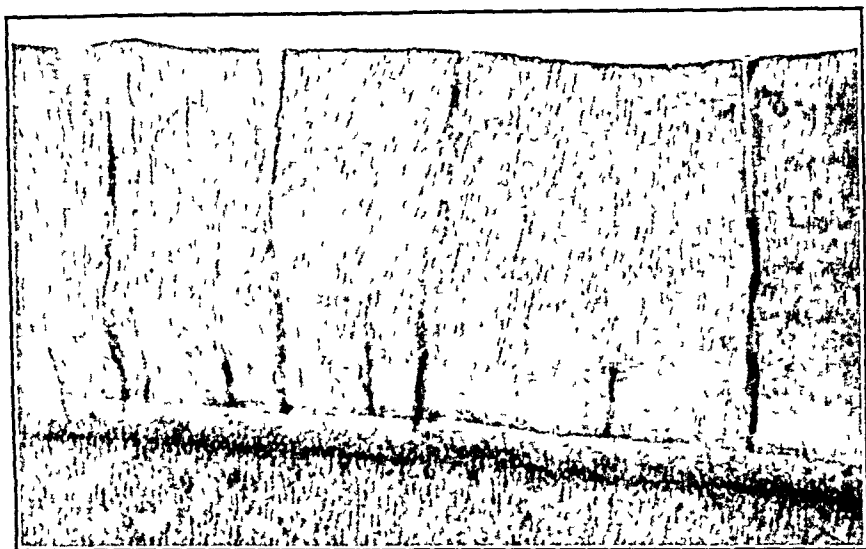


FIG 12 —Enamel showing direction of cleavage (About 70 X)

*Etching* —If a section of enamel is ground at right angles to the direction of the rods, mounted in glycerin and photographed, the outline of the rods will be seen with difficulty (Fig. 14) The refracting index of the two substances is so nearly the same that the section seems of almost uniform transparency. The thinner the section,

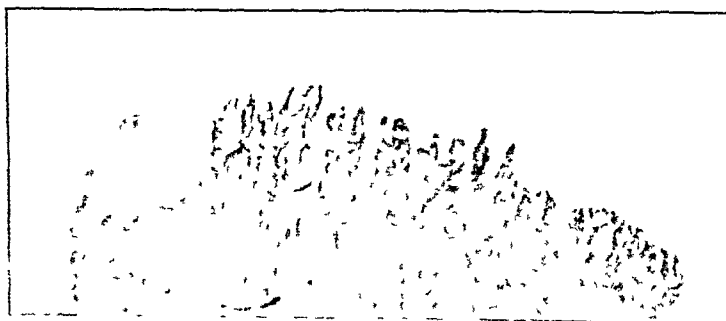


FIG 13 —The effect of acid on a section of enamel.

the greater will be the difficulty of recognizing the rods. Oblique illumination and the use of a small diaphragm will, however, resolve them. If the section is washed and treated with 2 per cent hydro-

chloric acid for a few seconds, washed and remounted in glycerin the rods are distinctly outlined (Fig 15) The acid attacks the cementing substance and the surface of the section is etched as if an engraving tool had been run around the rods The fine grooves on the surface refract the light and outline the rods The difference in appearance in longitudinal sections, that is, sections parallel with the direction of enamel rods, is quite as striking For the study

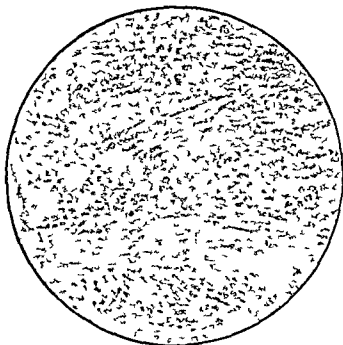


FIG 14 —Enamel ground at right angles to the rods Not treated with acid  
(About 500  $\times$ )

of enamel rod directions this etching is of the greatest importance Only one side of the section should be acted upon by the acid and the section should be mounted etched side up If etched upon both surfaces the grooves in the lower surface cannot be in focus at the same time as those of the upper surface and will blur the definition

The difference in the solubility of the rods and cementing substance is beautifully illustrated in the effect of caries on the structure of the enamel and caries of the enamel cannot be understood unless these fundamental facts are remembered The question, 'What causes the difference in solubility between the enamel rods and

the cementing substance?" cannot be satisfactorily answered at the present time. While both the rods and the cementing substance are normally composed entirely of inorganic salts, there may be different salts in the two substances, or the salts may be in different physical condition. There is great need for careful work in this field. Recent work has strongly emphasized the distinctness of the two structural elements of the enamel.

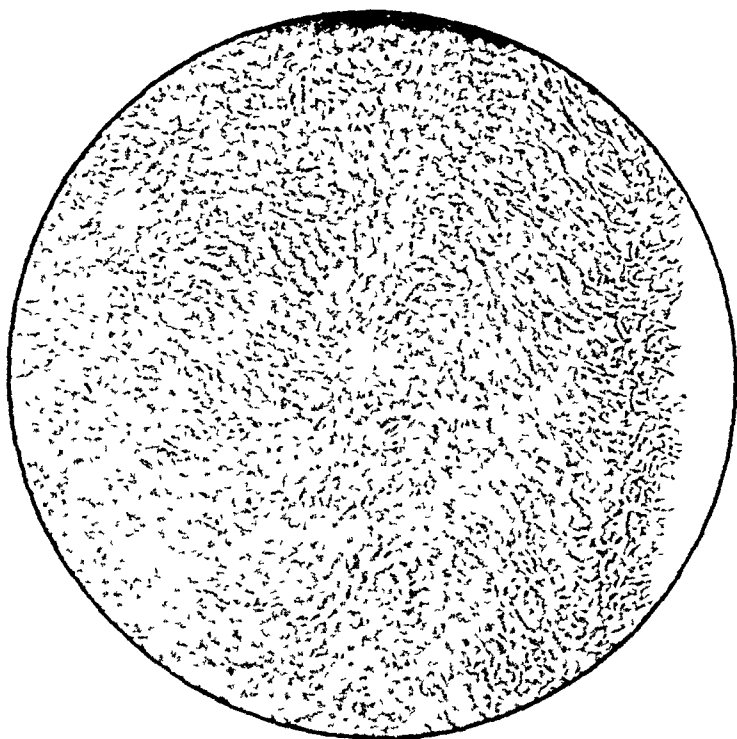


FIG. 15 —The same section as Fig. 14 after treatment with acid (About 500 X)

First, the study of the beginnings of caries of the enamel, and the effect of caries upon the structure of the enamel, brought out the difference in solubility in acids and showed the extent of tissue injury before a cavity is formed. Later, the study of hypoplasia developed the fact that certain pathologic or abnormal conditions may hinder or entirely prevent the formation of the rods while the cementing substance is formed, and still more recently the investigation of dy-trophies of the enamel occurring in certain prescribed localities, showed perfect rod formation and entire absence of the cementing substance. These facts suggest the hypothesis that the

chloric acid for a few seconds washed, and remounted in glycerin, the rods are distinctly outlined (Fig 15) The acid attacks the cementing substance and the surface of the section is etched as if an engraving tool had been run around the rods The fine grooves on the surface refract the light and outline the rods The difference in appearance in longitudinal sections that is sections parallel with the direction of enamel rods is quite as striking For the study

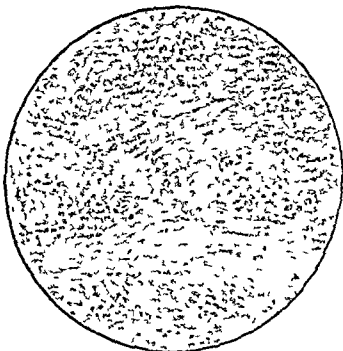


FIG 14 — Enamel ground at right angles to the rods Not treated with acid  
(About .000 X)

of enamel rod directions this etching is of the greatest importance Only one side of the section should be acted upon by the acid and the section should be mounted etched side up If etched upon both surfaces the grooves in the lower surface cannot be in focus at the same time as those of the upper surface and will blur the definition

The difference in the solubility of the rods and cementing substance is beautifully illustrated in the effect of caries on the structure of the enamel and caries of the enamel cannot be understood unless these fundamental facts are remembered The question What causes the difference in solubility between the enamel rods and

the cementing substance?" cannot be satisfactorily answered at the present time. While both the rods and the cementing substance are normally composed entirely of inorganic salts, there may be different salts in the two substances, or the salts may be in different physical condition. There is great need for careful work in this field. Recent work has strongly emphasized the distinctness of the two structural elements of the enamel.

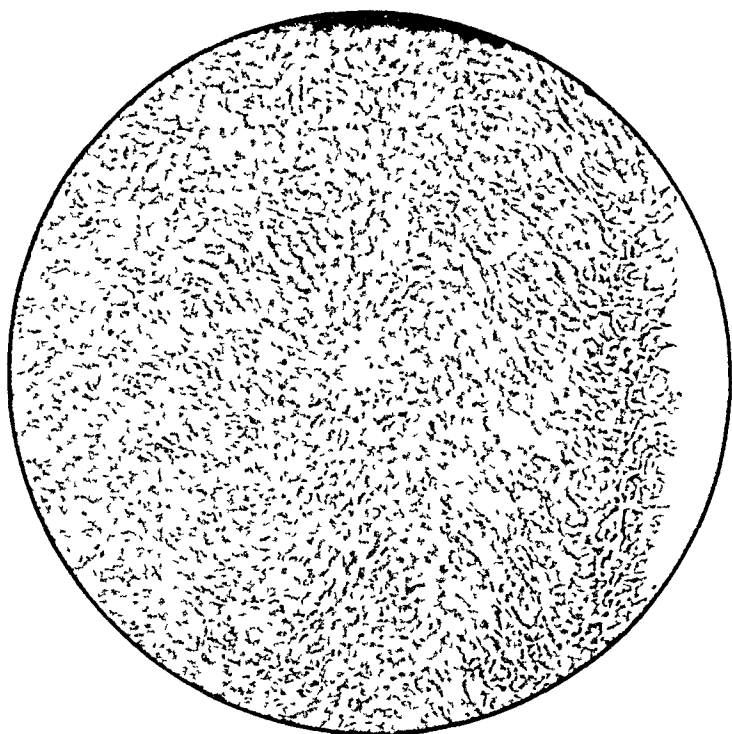


FIG 15 —The same section as Fig 14 after treatment with acid (About 500 X)

First, the study of the beginnings of caries of the enamel, and the effect of caries upon the structure of the enamel, brought out the difference in solubility in acids and showed the extent of tissue injury before a cavity is formed. Later, the study of hypoplasia developed the fact that certain pathologic or abnormal conditions may hinder or entirely prevent the formation of the rods while the cementing substance is formed, and still more recently the investigation of dystrophies of the enamel occurring in certain prescribed localities, showed perfect rod formation and entire absence of the cementing substance. These facts suggest the hypothesis that the



enamel rods and the cementing substance have a different origin, or are formed by different cells and that pathological conditions may prevent the formation of one and not the other. In view of these factors it is very necessary that a new investigation of the process of enamel formation be undertaken as present knowledge of the process does not explain such conditions.

**Difference in Refracting Index between the Rods and the Cementing Substance**—The cementing substance is of slightly greater refracting index than the substance of the rods. If it were not for this it would be impossible to see the rods in unetched sections, either longitudinal or transverse. The appearance of striation seen in longitudinal sections is also dependent upon this difference in action on transmitted light.

### THE EFFECT OF CARIES ON THE STRUCTURE OF THE ENAMEL

At this point the effect of caries on the structure of the enamel should be studied as a demonstration of the difference in solubility between the enamel rods and the interprismatic substance.

During the last ten years of his life the work of the late Dr. G. V. Black was largely devoted to the study of the beginning of caries of the enamel and the extent of tissue injury before an actual cavity is produced. This has placed a tremendous emphasis upon the value for the preservation of the teeth, of the treatment of caries in its early rather than in its later stages. It is safe to say that if caries progresses until a patient is aware of a cavity, the tooth has been injured more than is necessary in the most radical treatment of the same cavity in its beginning stages. One who has not studied carefully the effect of caries on the structure of the enamel so as to recognize the extent of injury to the structure of the tissue by its appearance to the naked eye can never be considered fit to prepare cavities as a treatment for the disease. The beginnings of caries must be divided into two classes: (1) Those occurring in natural defects of structure, (2) those beginning upon smooth surfaces.

**Caries Beginning in Natural Defects of Structure**—These are the positions in which caries first appears and in which it presents the greatest intensity because they offer ideal conditions. Such open grooves and imperfectly closed pits in the enamel as are illustrated in Chapter IX become filled with food debris, which furnish ideal culture media for acid-forming bacteria. At the opening of the defect the acid is washed away by the saliva as fast

as it is formed, but at the bottom of the groove it is confined and acts upon the enamel, dissolving out the cementing substance from between the rods and following the rod direction toward the dento-enamel junction. The form of the disintegrated tissue in such positions is always that of a cone or wedge, with the apex at the opening of the pit or groove and the base toward the dento-enamel junction. The formation of acid in these positions is often so rapid and the confinement so perfect that the carious process here manifests its greatest intensity, the action often dissolving the rods as well as the cementing substance and progressing across the rods. But even when the action follows the rod direction, the form will be broader toward the dentin, as the rods are inclined

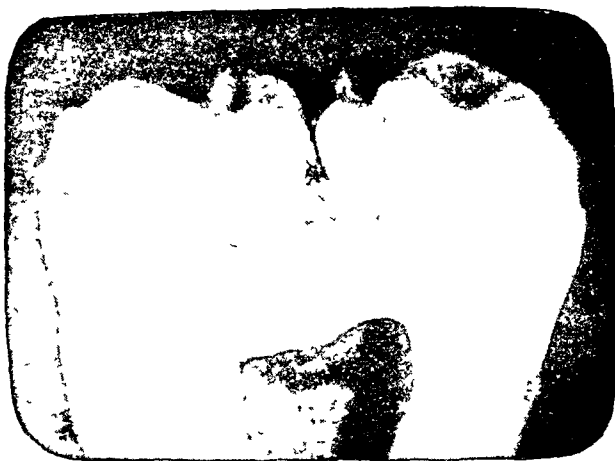


FIG 16 —A split tooth, showing caries beginning in an occlusal groove

toward the defect. Figs 16 and 17 show split teeth illustrating the disintegration of the enamel around occlusal defects. The disintegration area appears white by reflected light because the cementing substance has been removed from between the rods and the resulting air spaces refract the light. As soon as this disintegration reaches the dento-enamel junction, the acid formed passes through the now porous enamel and acts much more rapidly upon the dentin. Because of the branching of the dentinal tubules at the dento-enamel junction, the action upon the dentin spreads rapidly along this line. Soon some of the loosened rods between the bottom of the defect and the dentin are either entirely dissolved or displaced or dislodged, and the microorganisms are admitted to the dentin. The decalcified dentin matrix becomes food material

preventing its dissipation in the saliva and allowing it to combine with the inorganic salts of the tissue elements. This is not the place to consider the bacteriology of caries but the effect upon the structure of the enamel cannot be understood without a clear conception of the microbic plaques. A growth of masses of micro-organisms upon the surface of a tooth does not constitute a plaque. Many very filthy mouths are found where most of the surfaces of the teeth are covered by thick furry masses, and where there is little or no attack of the enamel. Either acid is not formed or it is at once lost by solution in the saliva. Caries shows the greatest intensity in comparatively clean mouths, in which something in the nature of the saliva causes the bacteria to produce a tough zooglyon, which attaches them to the tooth surface and confines the products of their activity. This zooglyon presents some of the phenomena of a drying membrane. Through it the micro-organisms receive their food materials and their products are neutralized by chemical action on the surface upon which the colony is growing. Colonies lodge in the most favorable spots and extend from these points into areas that are less liable to maintain their attachment. The more perfect the confinement of the acid and the more rapid the rate of its formation the greater will be the intensity of the destructive process. The more easily the colony is able to maintain itself in its position and extend upon the surface the greater is the liability. As the colony becomes thickest at the point of beginning it is evident that the most acid is formed here and it is therefore the point of greatest intensity. It is also the point at which the growth began and therefore the spot where the action on the tissue has been longest in operation. It is also apparent that there may be great intensity with limited liability and great liability with very low intensity, and the effect upon the tissue will be different in the two cases.

The appearance of the tissue becomes an index for estimating the intensity and liability in a given case. The character of the effect of the disease on the appearance of the enamel as well as the direction of the extension upon the surface of the tooth become most important factors in the diagnosis of any case and the diagnosis is the basis for the treatment required. The increased appreciation of the extent of disintegration of the enamel before an actual cavity is apparent in a tooth has been one of the most important results of Dr. Black's study of caries of the enamel. The author has been intimately associated with this work, and has

been amazed at the extent and character of the effect of caries upon the structure of the enamel in what may be called the early stages of the disease.

**Progress of Caries.**—A colony of bacteria becomes attached to the proximal surface of an incisor just to the gingival of the contact point, and remains there some time. If the surface of the tooth can then be examined, a white spot will be seen at Fig. 21, the area appears white because the cementing substance has been removed from between the enamel rods, as will be seen later, and the air that occupies the spaces diffuses the light. If a tooth is split through such a spot and viewed from the surface, the appearance will be as shown in Fig. 20. If a section were ground through the spot and the tissue preserved, the ends of the enamel rods

FIG 20

FIG 21

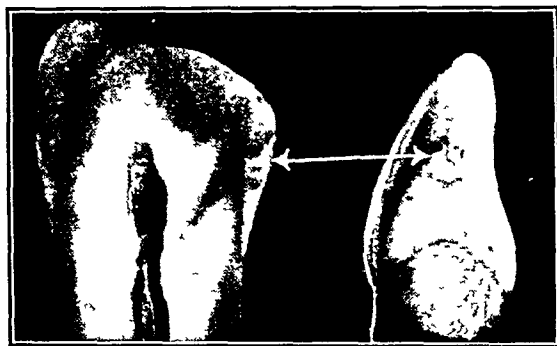


FIG 20—A split tooth cut through such a white spot as is shown in Fig 21.

FIG 21—A superior central incisor, showing a white spot just to the gingival of the contact point

would be seen pointed and projecting like the pickets of a fence, giving the same appearance as that produced by the action of acid upon a ground section, as illustrated in Fig 15

The surface of the enamel is therefore no longer smooth, but roughened. The roughness may often be felt by passing a very fine-pointed steel explorer over the surface. If the colony be dislodged at this stage it is evident that it is much easier for a new one to become attached. These whitened areas are often invisible unless the tissue is dried, because the saliva fills the spaces. If the surface is dried the refraction of the light by the air whitens the affected area.

A good comparison is furnished in a very familiar phenomenon. Snow is white because the air and the microscopic ice crystals

are of different refracting index and the light is diffused by passing from air and ice crystals. If a snowball is saturated with water it loses its whiteness and becomes translucent because the water which is nearly of the same refracting index as ice fills the spaces between the ice crystals and the light is not diffused. If the white area of such a tooth is split through the center with an aluminum disk charged with emery powder, the enamel rods will be found

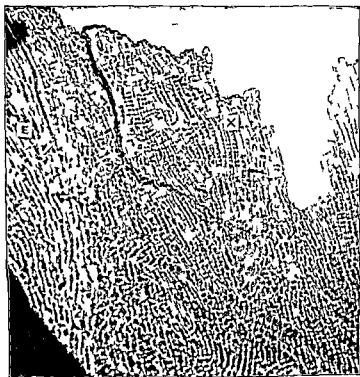


FIG. 99.—A thin section of carious enamel ground on the cover glass with balsam. E sound enamel. Y carious enamel in which the cementing substance had been dissolved from between the rods.

entirely separated by the solution of the cementing substance, and the cross striation will be much more apparent because the unevenness in the diameter of the rods has been increased by the action of the acid.

Formerly it was impossible to grind a section through such a spot and preserve the tissue. Until methods were devised by Dr. Black, it was impossible to preserve the tissue and examine its

condition. These methods demonstrate definitely that in the disintegrated area the cementing substance is dissolved in large areas before any of the rods are dissolved or destroyed. The first sections



FIG 23 —Carious enamel ground on the cover-glass by the shellac method In the region X the cementing substance dissolved from between the rods has been replaced by shellac

of such areas were obtained by polishing the surfaces and cementing the split tooth to the cover-glass with balsam, completing the grinding and mounting without loosening the section. In this way the

are of different refracting index, and the light is diffused by passing from air and ice crystals. If a snowball is saturated with water, it loses its whiteness and becomes translucent because the water, which is nearly of the same refracting index as ice fills the spaces between the ice crystals and the light is not diffused. If the white area of such a tooth is split through the center with an aluminum disk charged with emery powder the enamel rods will be found

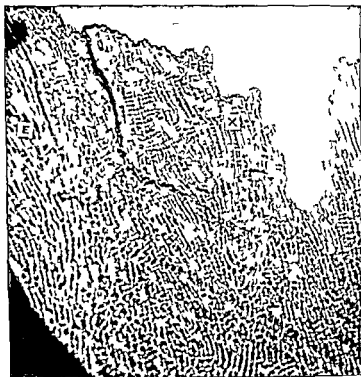


Fig. 11. — A thin section of carious enamel ground on the cover glass with bal an. F. 100x. Enamel. A carious enamel in which the cementing substance had been dissolved from between the rods.

entirely separated by the solution of the cementing substance and the cross striation will be much more apparent because the unevenness in the diameter of the rods has been increased by the action of the acid.

Formerly it was impossible to grind a section through such a spot and preserve the tissue. Until methods were devised by Dr. Black, it was impossible to preserve the tissue and examine its

condition. These methods demonstrate definitely that in the disintegrated area the cementing substance is dissolved in large areas before any of the rods are dissolved or destroyed. The first sections

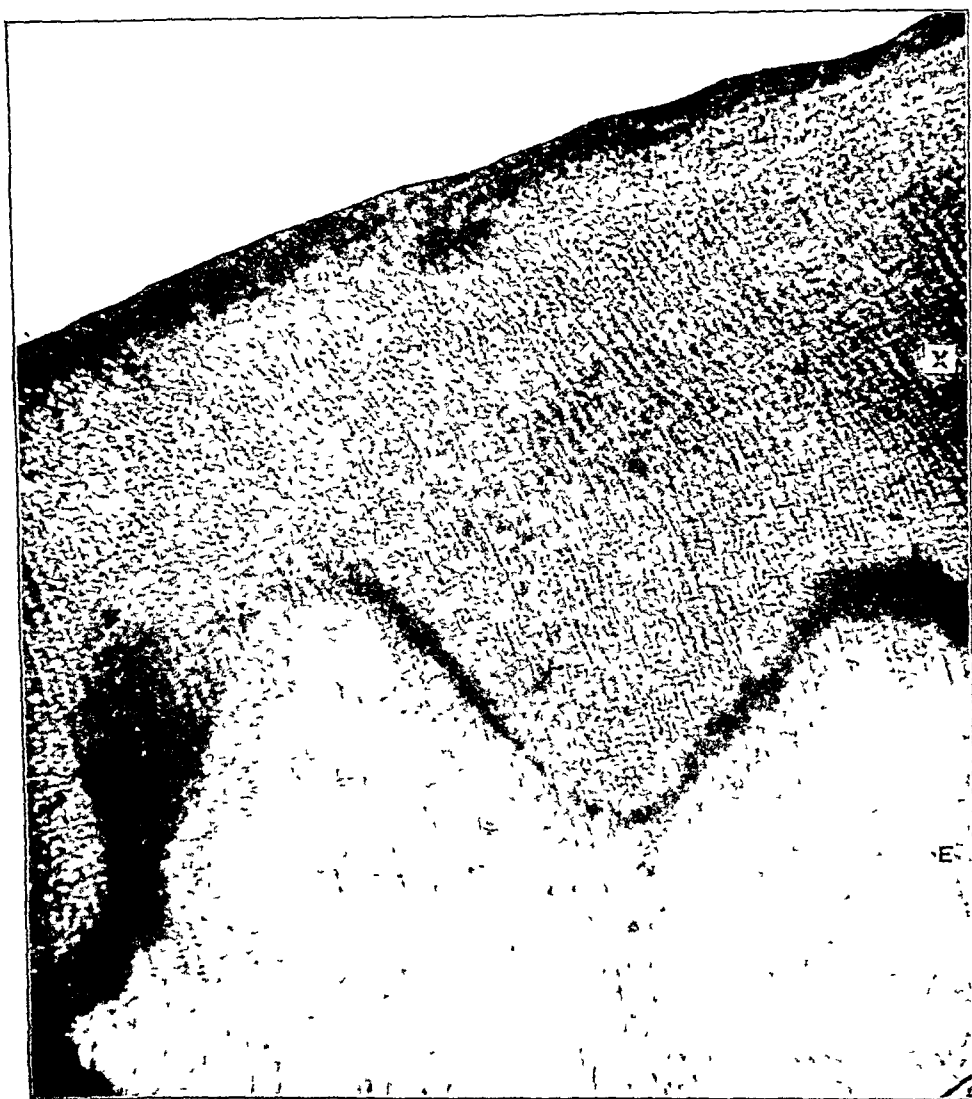


FIG 23 —Carious enamel ground on the cover-glass by the shellac method. In the region X the cementing substance dissolved from between the rods has been replaced by shellac

of such areas were obtained by polishing the surfaces and cementing the split tooth to the cover-glass with balsam, completing the grinding and mounting without loosening the section. In this way the



spaces between the rods were filled with balsam and so were held in place. Fig. 22 shows a photograph of a section made in this way, and the spaces between the rods and the distinct cross striation are seen. Later it was found that by dehydrating and immersing in a solution of brown shellac, the shellac could be made to take the place of the lost cementing substance, then the polished surface of the sawed-out section could be fastened to the cover glass with shellac, and the specimen handled more easily. Fig. 23 shows a photograph of carious enamel made in this way. The rods are preserved in place and the dark shellac marks the disintegrated area very clearly.

**Stages in the Progress of Caries**—The progress of caries on smooth surfaces of the enamel may be divided into three periods according to its effect upon the structure of the tissue.

1 From the lodgement of the colony until the action reaches the dento-enamel junction.

2 From the reaching of the dento-enamel junction until the rods begin to fall out.

3 After a cavity is produced.

*First Period*—The form of the disintegrated tissue in the first period is always that of an irregular cone. Its base is on the surface of the enamel; its outline is the boundary of the colony, and the apex is toward the dentin in the direction of the enamel rods from the starting point of the colony. The inner boundary of the area is never even but shows flame-like extensions toward the dentin in the direction of the rods. This is more marked in some cases than in others, and sometimes suggests that the presence of a colony on the surface has been intermittent (Plates IV, V, VI).

The boundary between the perfect and the disintegrated area is usually marked by a darker area, the significance of which is not now understood. If the disease progresses continuously the affected tissue always appears white by reflected light but if the progress has been intermittent especially if there have been considerable periods in which no colony has been attached to the surface the area darkens becoming brownish or almost black. This is produced by organic materials filling the space between the enamel rods and decomposing with the probable formation of sulphides of dark color in the spaces. If immunity to caries is attained before the effect upon the tissue has penetrated to the dento-enamel junction this will occur and the spot changes from a white to a brownish or black color. Such spots will be found in some places

PLATE IV



A Section through a Carious Spot in the First Period  
Showing extension of

spaces between the rods were filled with balsam and so were held in place. Fig. 22 shows a photograph of a section made in this way and the spaces between the rods and the distinct cross-striation are seen. Later it was found that by dehydrating and immersing in a solution of brown shellac the shellac could be made to take the place of the lost cementing substance, then the polished surface of the sawed-out section could be fastened to the cover glass with shellac and the specimen handled more easily. Fig. 23 shows a photograph of carious enamel made in this way. The rods are preserved in place and the dark shellac marks the disintegrated area very clearly.

**Stages in the Progress of Caries.**—The progress of caries on smooth surfaces of the enamel may be divided into three periods according to its effect upon the structure of the tissue.

1 From the lodgement of the colony until the action reaches the dento-enamel junction.

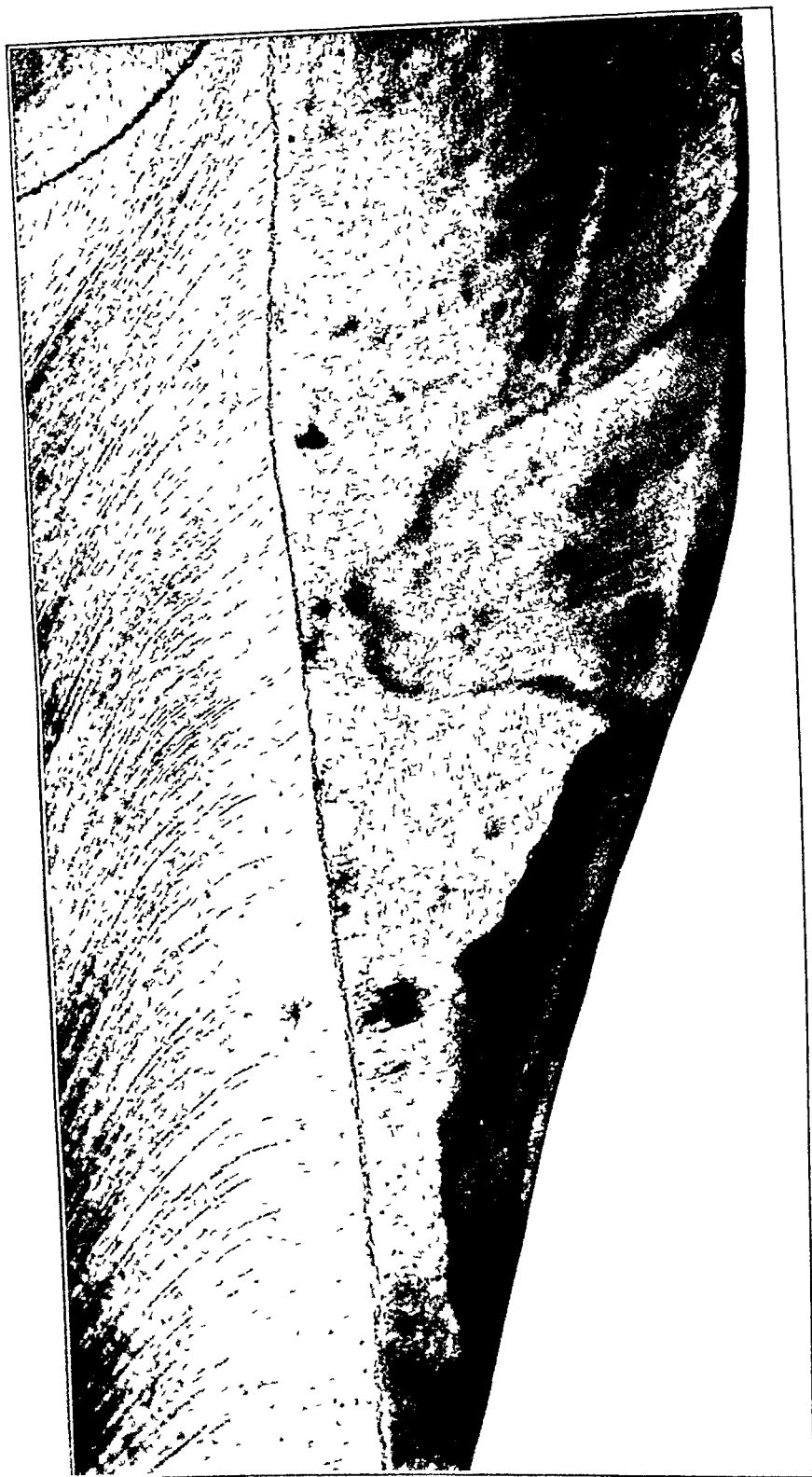
2 From the reaching of the dento-enamel junction until the rods begin to fall out.

3 After a cavity is produced.

**First Period.**—The form of the disintegrated tissue in the first period is always that of an irregular cone. Its base is on the surface of the enamel; its outline is the boundary of the colony, and the apex is toward the dentin in the direction of the enamel rods from the starting point of the colony. The inner boundary of the area is never even but shows flame-like extensions toward the dentin in the direction of the rod. This is more marked in some cases than in others and sometimes suggests that the presence of a colony on the surface has been intermittent (Plates IV, V, VI).

The boundary between the perfect and the disintegrated area is usually marked by a darker area the significance of which is not now understood. If the disease progresses continuously the affected tissue always appears white by reflected light but if the progress has been intermittent especially if there have been considerable periods in which no colony has been attached to the surface the area darkens becoming brownish or almost black. This is produced by organic materials filling the space between the enamel rods and decomposing with the probable formation of sulphides of dark color in the spaces. If immunity to caries is attained before the effect upon the tissue has penetrated to the dento-enamel junction this will occur and the spot changes from a white to a brownish or black color. Such spots will be found in some places

PLATE IV



A Section through a Carious Spot in the First Period  
Showing extension of the attack on the surface toward the gingiv



# PLATE V



A Section through a Carious Spot in the Second Period

X, disintegrated area, showing swelling of the surface. Y space between enamel and decalcified dentin, Z, secondary caries of the enamel, E sound enamel, D dentin.



on most teeth extracted from immune persons. Work of Dr. Miller has indicated that such spots are more resistant to the progress



FIG 24—A section through a white spot in the first period of attack X, disintegrated enamel, E, sound enamel, D, dentin.



of caries than perfect enamel surfaces. At any time during the first period therefore the destruction may be arrested by the coming of immunity, which prevents the attachment of colonies to the tooth surface by the formation of plaques.



FIG. 75.—A section through a carious spot in the first period. The attack has apparently been slow and intermittent. *V*, disintegrated enamel; *E*, sound enamel; *D*, dentin.

*Second Period*.—This period extends from the time when the action of the acid reaches the dento-enamel junction until the rods are destroyed or fall out. As soon as the solution of the cementing substance reaches the dento-enamel junction at the point of the advancing cone the solution of the inorganic salts

from the dentin matrix begins. It must be remembered that the acid is formed by the microorganisms on the surface of the



FIG. 26.—A section through a carious spot in the first period, showing the flame-like projections toward the dentin. *X*, disintegrated enamel, *E*, sound enamel, *D*, dentin.

enamel and filters through the spaces between the enamel rods. The decalcification of the dentin may be considerable while the surface of the enamel is still preserved. In this period the swelling of the surface is always noticeable. This results in increasing the area of the contact and therefore allowing the colony to extend its limits increasing the extent of the surface attack. This is especially noticeable toward the gingival, and is shown in Plate IV, which is, however shown in the first period of caries. In the disintegrated area in this stage as well as in the first stage the diameter of the enamel rods is always considerably reduced and the striation rendered more apparent. In caries of great intensity

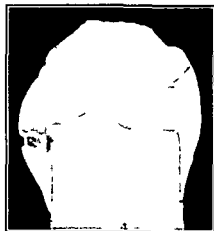


FIG 2 — A tooth split through a spot showing great intensity but low liability



FIG 28 — A tooth split through spots showing low intensity but great liability

but low liability the reduction in the diameter of the enamel rods is rapid and they are soon destroyed, while the area of the surface attacked is small (Fig 27)

In caries of low intensity but great liability the diameter of the rods is slowly reduced, while the area of surface attacked and consequently the area of disintegration is large (Fig 28). These conditions should be studied in the macroscopic appearance of caries at the chair.

The decalcified dentin matrix shrinks and more or less of a space is formed under the enamel.

The action of the acid follows the tubules of the dentin toward the pulp, and spreads through their branches laterally near the dento-enamel junction so that the form of the disintegrated dentin is always that of a cone, with the base at the dento-enamel junction and the apex toward the pulp chamber. It is important, however, to remember that in this stage no microorganisms have entered the tissue, and the effect upon it is the result of the action of substances formed upon the surface. The extent of enamel disintegration and decalcification of dentin, in this stage, is much greater than anyone supposed before such specimens as the present illustrations were made.

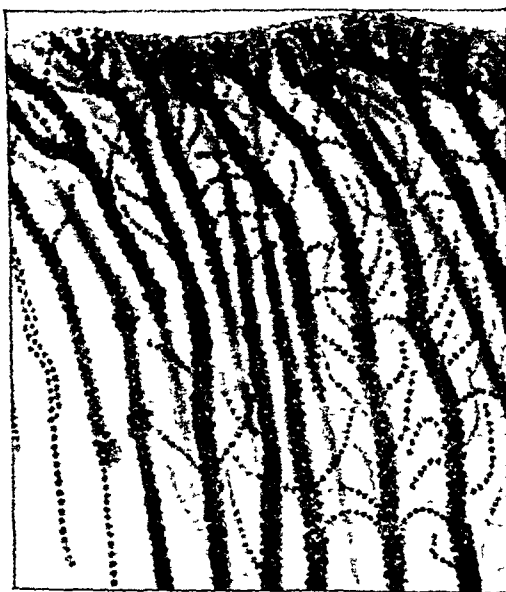


FIG 29 —A drawing showing the microorganisms of caries growing through the dentinal tubules (G V. Black)

*Third Period.*—This embraces the period after the enamel rods have begun to fall out and an actual cavity is apparent. As soon as this occurs the surface of the tooth at the point where the formation of the colony began is destroyed and the protected point is lost, and the extension of surface attack ceases. The microorganisms are admitted to the dentin, where they grow through the dentinal tubules, spreading rapidly at the dento-enamel junction (Fig 29). The dentin is always decalcified in advance of the penetration of the microorganisms. The acid formed within the cavity attacks the cementing substance between the enamel rods,

**Straight Enamel**—Upon the axial surfaces of the teeth the rods are usually straight and parallel with each other, and most of split extend from the dentin to the surface. Such enamel will split or cleave in the direction of the rods with comparative ease and breaks down very readily when the dentin is removed from

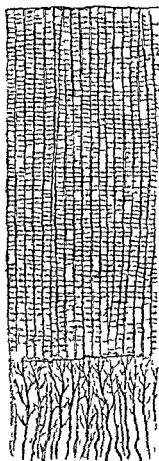


FIG. 31.—Straight enamel rods

under it. It will usually cleave through its entire thickness and break away from sound dentin when properly attacked with sharp hand instruments. Such enamel is called straight enamel, as contrasted with gnarled enamel. It is best illustrated by cutting sections labiolingually through the incisors though there is considerable variation in different teeth (Figs 12 and 31).

**Gnarled Enamel**—Upon the occlusal surfaces of the molars and bicuspsids, and especially over the tips of cusps and marginal ridges the rods are seldom straight and parallel through the thickness of the enamel but are wound and twisted about each other, especially in the deeper half toward the dento-enamel junction. This is known as gnarled enamel, and its appearance is in marked contrast with straight enamel.

Toward the surface the rods are usually straight and parallel for a longer or shorter distance but as the dento-enamel junction is approached they become twisted. This is true of most of the occlusal surfaces of molars and bicuspsids but the gnarled condition extends farther toward the surface over the tips of the cusps, or the point at which the rods were first completed

in the growth of the crown. As cleavage is caused by the difference in the strength of the rods and cementing substance it is easy to see that gnarled enamel will not split or cleave easily when resting upon sound dentin. This is often encountered in extending occlusal cavities. The straight portion will split but where the rods begin to

twist they break off, leaving a portion resting on the dentin which will resist the attack of any cutting instrument from the surface (Figs. 32, 33, and 34)

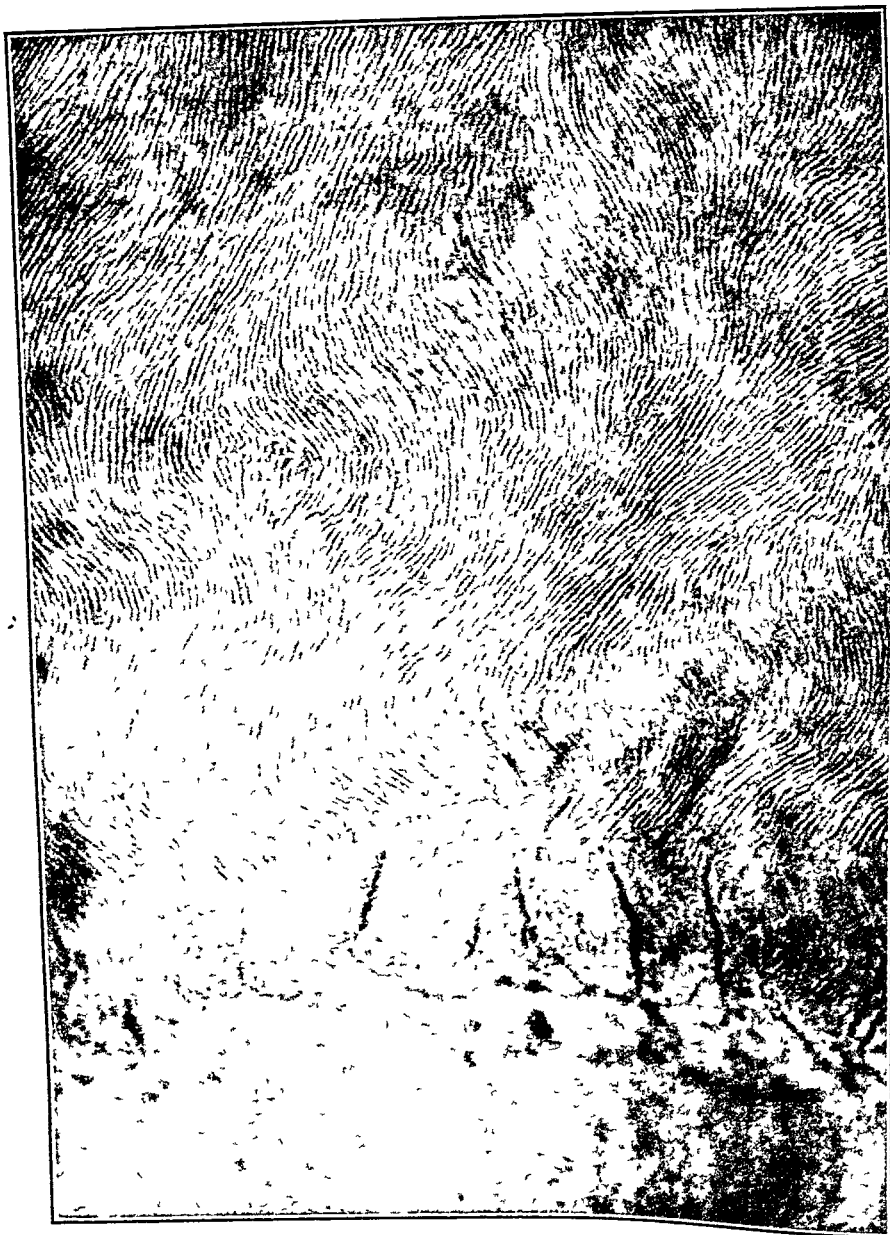


FIG 32 —Gnarled enamel. (About 80 X)

The Effect of Structure on the Cutting of Enamel.—The two kinds of enamel may be compared to straight-grained pine wood and a

pine knot. The first will split easily in the direction of the fiber, the latter will split only in an irregular way and with the greatest difficulty. This difference in the arrangement of the structural elements leads to the difference in the feeling of various teeth to cutting instruments and is the basis for the clinical experience of hard and soft teeth. It is not a matter of degree of calcification but



FIG 33—Gnarled enamel

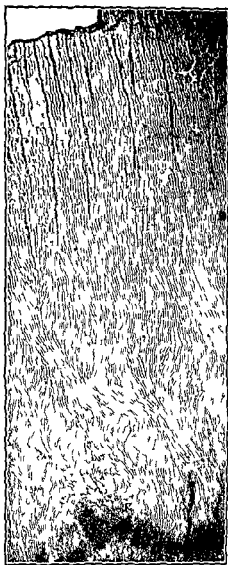


FIG 34—Gnarled enamel from etched section  
(About 100 X)

the arrangement of the structural elements and gnarled enamel will break down as rapidly under the effect of caries as will straight enamel.

From a study of the positions in which the rods are usually twisted about each other, and those in which they are usually straight, it seems probable that the twisting is due to movements in the dental papilla and the enamel organ during the formation of the tissue. These movements may be produced by variations in the blood-pressure which cause oscillations, or shiftings of the tissues on each other. These differences in the arrangement of the structural elements of the enamel must be constantly kept in mind, and will be referred to many times in connection with the use of cutting instruments on the enamel and the preparation of cavity walls.

### APPEARANCES CHARACTERISTIC OF ENAMEL.

**Striation.**—Striation is the appearance of fine light and dark markings occurring alternately in the length of the enamel rods. This is not unlike the striation of voluntary muscle fibers, and has a similar cause. It is seen both in thin sections cut in the direction of the rods, and in isolated enamel rods. It is caused by the alternate expansions and constrictions of the rods and the difference in the refracting index between the rods and the cementing substance.

If isolated rods (Fig. 35) are observed with a  $\frac{1}{6}$  or  $\frac{1}{12}$  objective, they will be seen to be marked by alternate light and dark areas across the rods; on changing the focus up and down, the light and dark areas will change places, just as in looking at a red blood corpuscle the center may appear dark and the rim light, or the center light and the rim dark, depending upon the exactness of focus. This is caused by the refraction of the light as it passes through the convex and concave portions of the rod. If the cementing substance were of exactly the same refracting index as the rods, when the rods were fastened together in the tissue there would be no appearance of striation, but as it is not, refraction of light occurs in passing from rod substance to cementing substance, and the striation is apparent in sections. There is considerable difference in the distinctness of striation in different sections of enamel. This is probably due to the fact that the cementing substance has more nearly the same refracting index as the rods in some specimens. When the formation of enamel has been studied it will be found that the enamel rods have been formed by globules which are deposited one on top of the other



to form the rods and the cementing substance fills up the space. The globules in the adjacent rods come opposite each other so that there is alternately a greater and a less amount of cementing substance between the rods. Each cross mark therefore represents a globule deposited in the formation of the rod and striation may be said to be a record of the growth of the individual rods (Figs 36 and 37).

Imperfections in the cementing substance render the striation more apparent because they increase the difference in refraction



FIG 35.—Isolated enamel rods (About 1000 X)

between the two substances. The action of acid either upon isolated rods or upon sections renders striation more apparent because it attacks the cementing substance faster than the globules forming the rods and therefore increases the refraction. Von Beber has claimed that the appearance of striation was caused by the action of acid on the section and that even in mounting in balsam the acidity of the balsam affected the tissue. It is true that any action of acid increases the distinctness of the cross striation but it is not the cause of it.

**Stratification or the Bands of Retzius**—If longitudinal sections of moderate thickness are observed with the low power brownish bands are seen running through the enamel which suggests the

appearance of stratification in rocks. These were first described by Retzius and were named after him—the brown bands or striæ of Retzius. A better name would be incremental lines.

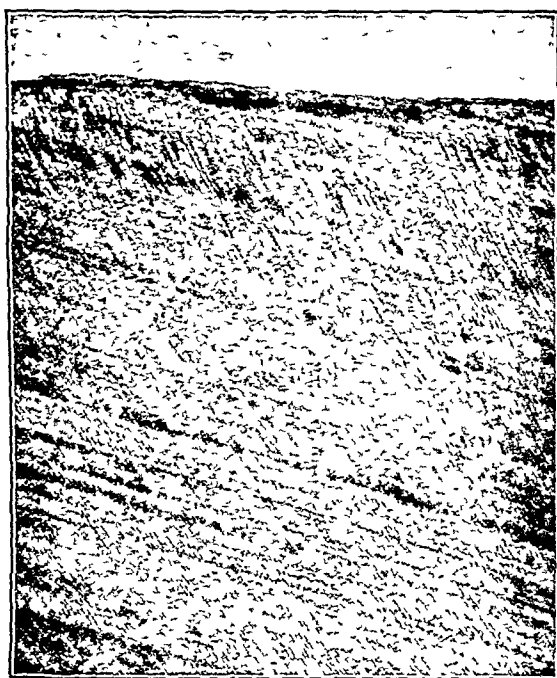


FIG 36 —Enamel showing both striation and stratification. (About 80 X)

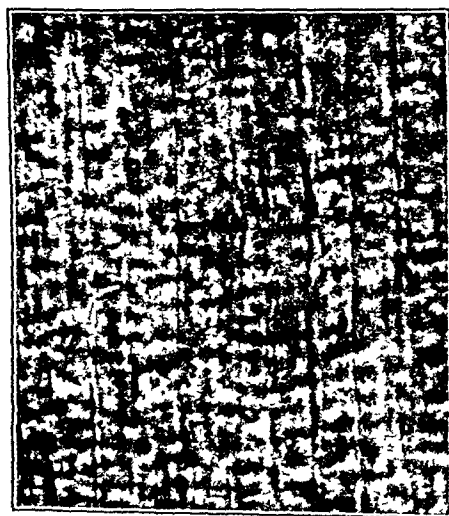


FIG 37 —Enamel showing striation (About 1000 X)

The bands of Retzius, or incremental lines, are caused by actual coloring matter which is deposited with the inorganic salts in the

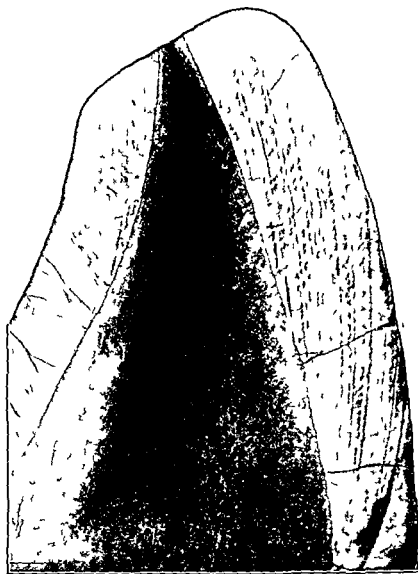


FIG. 38.—Tip of an incisor (About 50 X)

formation of the tissue. They are therefore best seen with low powers and in sections that are not too thin. In sections that are thinner than the diameter of a single rod or less than four microns,

they become almost invisible. For the study of the bands of Retzius sections should be ground labiolingually through the incisors, buccolingually through the bicuspids and molars, striking the center of the cusps. They may be studied also in mesiodistal sections, but the sections should be in such a direction as to be at

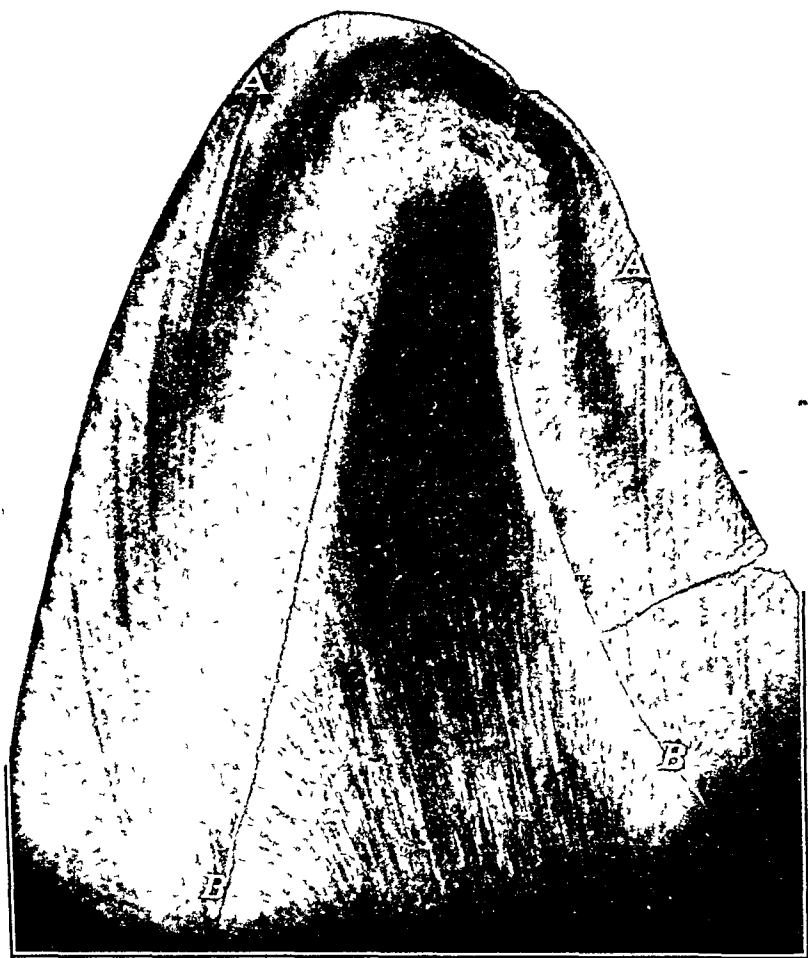


FIG. 39 —Incisor tip showing stratification or incremental lines. Rods at A were fully formed at the time the rods at B were beginning to form (About 50 X)

right angles to the zones. Fig. 38 shows the tip of an incisor in which the bands are very well marked. They are seen to begin at the dento-enamel junction on the incisal edge, and sweep in larger and larger zones around this point. Each band represents what was at one time the surface of the enamel already formed, and the line upon which formation was progressing. They are therefore

truly incremental lines. The zones reach the surface of the enamel first at the point over the center of beginning calcification and the succeeding bands extend from the surface of the enamel near the occlusal to the dento-enamel junction much farther apically.



Fig. 40—Stratification of enamel the edge of a lacus. *D* dento-enamel junction. *Ed* enamel defect showing in the heavy stratification band. *Ig* intergrowth of large spaces in the dentin. (About 40 X)

and corresponding lines are seen on opposite sides of the section. In Fig. 39 the band which is at the surface at *A* and *A* reaches the dento-enamel junction at *B* and *b*. This means that when the enamel rods which form the surface at *A* were completed the rods

at *B* were just beginning to be formed at the dento-enamel junction. A layer of functioning ameloblasts occupied this position. The bands of Retzius are always curved and usually pass obliquely across the enamel rods, but are parallel neither with the dento-enamel junction or the surface of the enamel. As they pass toward the gingival the angle which they form with the axis of the tooth becomes greater. Any disturbance of nutrition which affects the formation of enamel is always shown in the increased distinctness of the bands (Fig. 40).

The bands of Retzius therefore form a record of the formation of the tissue, and by their study the points of beginning calcifi-

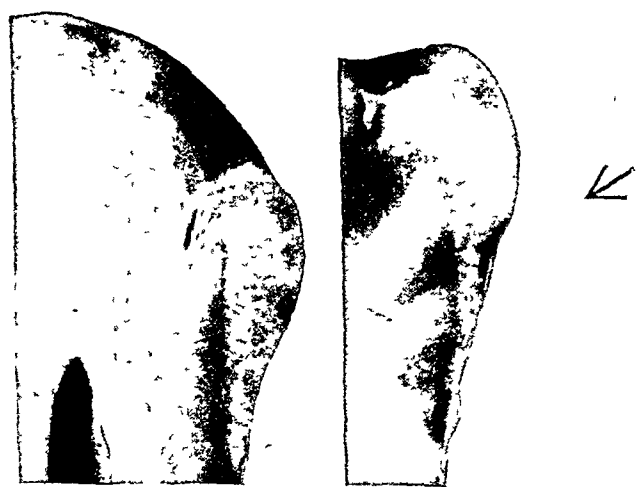


FIG. 41 —Lines of Schreger (About 5 X)

cation and the manner of the development of the tooth crown may be followed. This will be considered again in connection with the grooves, pits, and natural defects of enamel.

**Lines of Schreger.**—These are lines appearing in the enamel extending from the dento-enamel junction to or toward the surface. They are caused by the direction in which the enamel rods are cut. They may be seen in sections, but are best shown by photographing the cut surface of the enamel by reflected light and with very low magnification. The rods are twisting about each other, and in one streak they are cut longitudinally, in the next obliquely, and the alternations of these directions cause the appearance of the lines (Fig. 41).

**Nasmyth's Membrane (The Enamel Cuticle)**—There has been a vast amount of writing and fruitless speculation in regard to this structure. The facts which have led to all this speculation can be simply stated. If a freshly extracted tooth, that has not been exposed to wear, is decalcified or treated with dilute nitric acid



FIG. 42

(other acids may be used) a membrane can be floated from its surface which is found to be made up of two layers. (1) A clear structureless layer which was in contact with the surface of the enamel and bears the imprints of the ends of the enamel rods on its surface. (2) An outer cellular layer made up of a layer or layers of epithelial cells. Unfortunately the study of Nasmyth's membrane seems to have been made from extracted teeth and not from sections which retained the teeth and all of the supporting tissues in relation.

Two distinct explanations have been given to this structure

(1) Owen and Tomes considered it as not epithelial but a deposit of coronal cementum on the surface of the enamel before the eruption of the tooth as occurs in the teeth of ungulates (2) Huxley, Lent, Kolliker, Waldyer, Paul, Mummery and others have recognized its epithelial origin and described its structure in detail All



FIG. 43

have considered it as in some way related in origin to the enamel organ but as to the way in which it is formed or the nature of the relationship there is no agreement.

In the opinion of the writer, coronal cementum occurs on the enamel surface and in the grooves of the crowns of many human



teeth but is in no way related to the structure described as Nasmyth's Membrane. On the other hand while the structure is undoubtedly of epithelial character, he does not believe that it is related to the enamel organ or the formative epithelium of the enamel in origin.

On the eruption of the tooth the epithelium of the gingival fold at least on the deeper portions is held firmly against the surface of the enamel by the pressure of the surrounding tissues and the surface cells are quite firmly adherent to the surface of the enamel. The multiplication of epithelial cells in the deep portion of the gingival fold causes the epithelium to be pushed outward along the surface of the enamel and the layer separated from the surface of the enamel by the action of acid is this layer which has been separated from the epithelium lining the gingival space. In this connection decalcified sections with all of the tissues in relation should be studied and attention is called to the comparison of the structure of the gingival fold of the tooth and the nail fold of the finger nail.

*Nasmyth's membrane* undoubtedly has some important relations to normal and pathologic conditions especially those beginning in the gingival space.

**Enamel Spindles**<sup>1</sup>—Especially in the region of the cusps and the points where enamel formation begins in the calcification of the tooth peculiar spindle-like spaces are seen extending from the dento-enamel junction into the enamel. These have often been described, and much has been written in regard to them but there is no agreement among investigators as to their cause or significance. They are apparently spaces in the interprismatic substance and between the enamel rods. They appear to communicate with dentinal tubules. In some cases at least they appear to be filled with granular material. They are easily demonstrated but not so easily explained.

<sup>1</sup> For further discussion of these structures the student is referred to *Microscopic Anatomy of the Teeth* by Mummary p. 78 et seq.

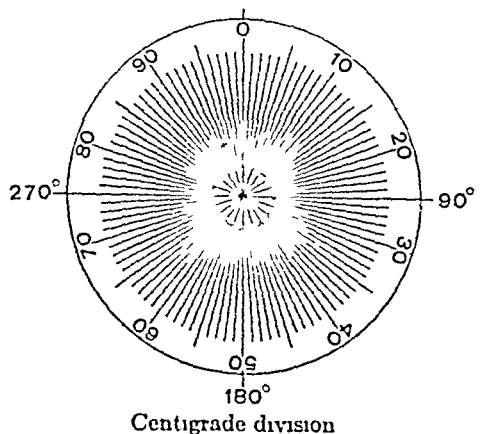
## CHAPTER VI

### THE DIRECTION OF THE ENAMEL RODS IN THE TOOTH CROWN.

IN describing the direction of the enamel rods and their arrangement in what may be called the architecture of the tooth crown, they are always considered as extending from the dento-enamel junction outward. This is not only convenient, but logical, as they are formed in that way, beginning at the dento-enamel junction and being completed at the surface. Enamel is formed from within outward, the cells which produce it lying outside of the tissue already formed, and there are many things about the arrangement of the rods and their relation to each other that are understood only when this is borne in mind.

The direction of the enamel rods is described by referring them to the horizontal and axial planes, which have been previously defined (page 35). The centigrade scale, that is, the division of the circle into one hundred equal arcs, is used because those familiar with instrument nomenclature are already familiar with these angles, and readily picture them.<sup>1</sup> When a rod is said to be inclined 12 centigrades occlusally from the horizontal plane, it means that if a plane at right angles to the long axis of the tooth is passed through the end of the rod at the dento-enamel junction, the rod

<sup>1</sup> In the centigrade division the circle is divided into one hundred parts, each called a centigrade. One centigrade is equal to 3.6 degrees of the astronomical circle, 25 centigrades to 90 degrees, 12½ centigrades to 45 degrees. The cut gives a comparison of the two systems of measuring angles.



will lie to the occlusal of it and form an angle of 12 centigrades with it. In the same way, if a rod is said to be inclined 12 centigrades buccally from the mesiodistal plane, it means that if a plane parallel with the axis of the tooth, and extending from mesio to distal, is passed through the end of a rod at the dento-enamel junction, the rod will lie to the buccal of it, and form an angle of 12 centigrades with it. By a little practice with these terms the direction of the enamel rods can be very easily and clearly pictured to the mind.

**The General Direction of Enamel Rods**—The general direction of the enamel rods has been variously described by different authors, but all of these general statements are very imperfect and often misleading. For instance, they are sometimes said to radiate from the center of the crown or the pulp chamber, but it will be seen that this does not apply to the rods which form the lingual slopes of the buccal cusps or the buccal slopes of the lingual cusps of bicuspid and molars.

Again, they have been said to be in general, perpendicular to the surface but it will be found from the study of sections that there are very few places upon the surface where this is true and that in many places they are far from perpendicular to the surface. From a study of sections it will be seen that the general arrangement of enamel rods, in the architecture of the tooth crown is such as to give the greatest strength to the perfect tissue and to furnish the greatest resistance to abrasion in the use of the teeth for mastication. In a buccolingual section through a bicuspid (Fig 44), beginning at the gingival line the enamel is normally slightly overlapped by the cementum, and in the gingival third the rods are inclined more or less apically from the horizontal plane. The degree of inclination varies considerably. It may be as much as 12 centigrades but is usually not more than 6. In general, the more convex the surface the greater will be the inclination. At some point between the junction of the gingival and middle thirds and the middle of the middle third of the surface they are in the horizontal plane and at right angles to the axis of the tooth and at this point they are usually very nearly perpendicular to the surface. Passing occlusally from this point, they incline more and more occlusally until in the occlusal third they reach an inclination of 18 to 20 centigrades occlusally from the horizontal.

The rods which form the tip of the buccal cusps do not reach the tip of the dentin cusp, but the buccal slope of the dentin. This

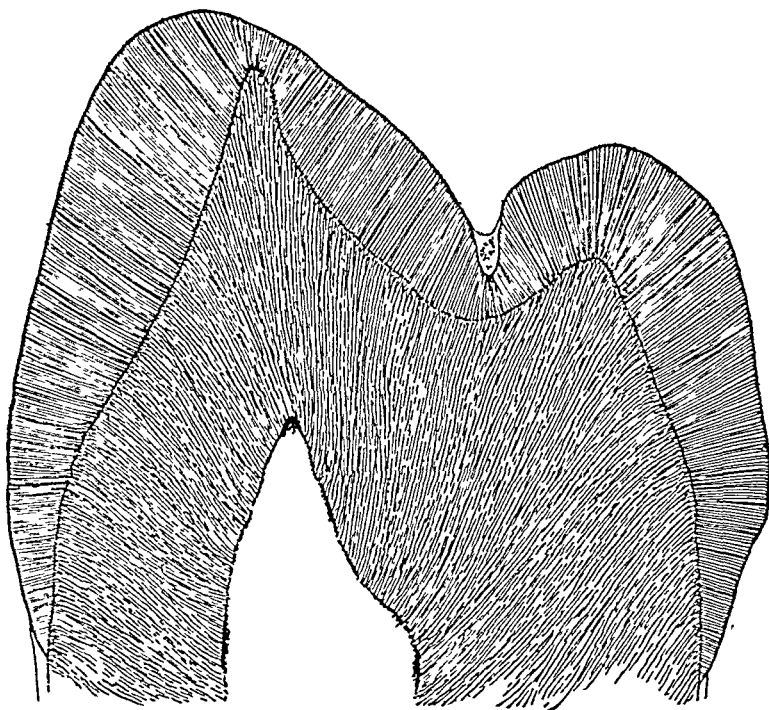


FIG 44 —Diagram of enamel rod directions, from a photograph of a buccolingual section of an upper bicuspid

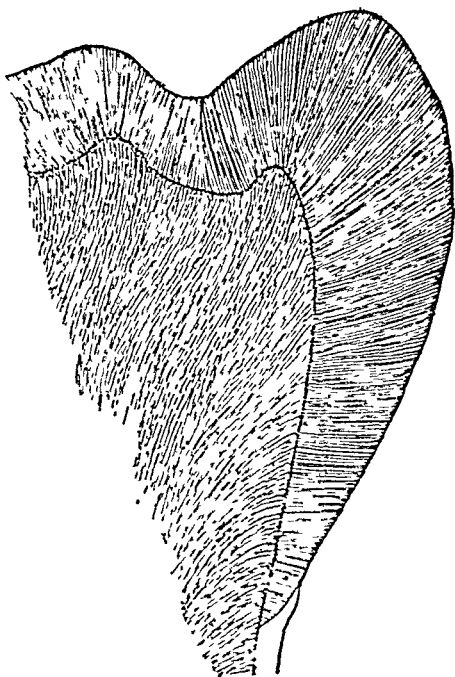


FIG 45 —Diagram of enamel rod directions, drawn from a mesiodistal section of a bicuspid.

becomes important, as will be seen later. Over the tip of the dentin cusp the rods are in the axial plane but in this position they are usually very much twisted. Passing down the lingual slope they become more and more inclined lingually from the mesio-



FIG. 46 —Disturbance of enamel rod directions on labial surface of a cusp  
(About 60  $\times$ )

distal axial plane, and the degree of inclination is related to the height of the cusp—the taller the cusp, the greater the inclination. At the developmental groove or pit they meet the rods of the lingual cups, which are inclined in the opposite direction



FIG. 47 —Disturbance of enamel rod directions on lingual surface of same tooth as Fig 48. (About 80 X)

In a mesiodistal section (Fig 45) the plan of arrangement will be seen to be the same the tip of the marginal ridge corresponding to the tip of the cusp In an incisor the arrangement is similar the lingual marginal ridge corresponding to a rudimentary cusp This general plan should be studied in several sections of the various classes of teeth before the rod direction is studied more minutely

**Effect of Hypoplasia**—Whenever a hypoplasia groove appears upon the surface the rod directions will be found to be more or less disturbed Fig 46 shows a position on the labial surface of a cuspid In this position the disturbance of the enamel rod direction is very marked The rods tend to be in whorls and the structure is more or less deficient On the lingual side of the same section (Fig 47) the disturbance in structure is so great that it is difficult to make out the rod direction Many such areas will be found in sections Some condition which has affected the nutrition of the enamel forming cells results in a local disturbance of the structural elements

### SPECIAL AREAS

**The Gingival Third**—There is much variation in enamel rod direction in different teeth as the gingival line is approached The inclination apically from the horizontal may be very great, as much as 12 to 15 centigrades in some instances, as in Fig 48 but this is exceptional It may be very slight or the rods may be almost in the horizontal plane The direction of the rods in these areas become very important in the preparation of the gingival wall of proximal cavities and cavities in the gingival third of buccal and labial surfaces

**The Tips of the Cusps**—In studying the rod directions in the region of the cusps and marginal ridges, it must be borne in mind that the formation of enamel begins at the dento-enamel junction at separate points and that the growth is recorded in the tissue by the bands of Retzius, each band having been at one time the surface of the enamel cap then formed In a buccolingual section the formation of the buccal and lingual cusps will be shown (Chapter IX) While the little cusps are growing they are being carried apart by the growth of the dental papilla and enamel organ, until the calcifications unite at the dento-enamel junction When this occurs the dental papilla has reached its maximum mesiodistal diameter The enamel organ however, will continue to grow, and

as the rods are completed first just over the tip of the dentin cusp, the continued growth causes an increase in the inclination of the

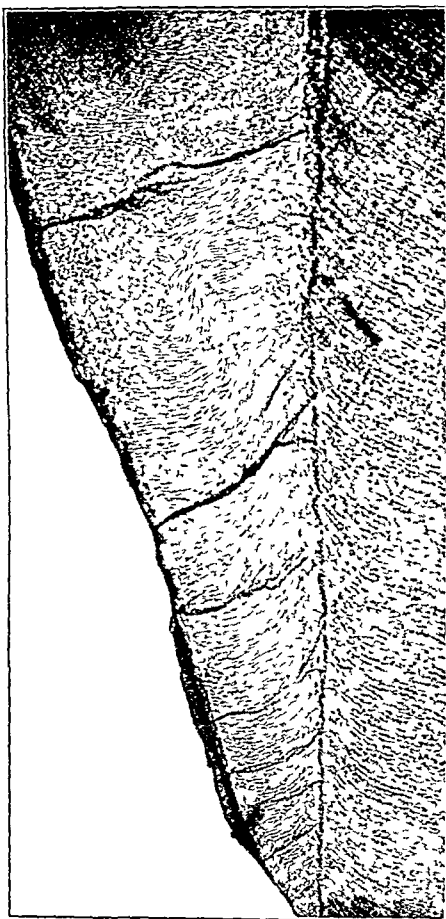


FIG 48 —Direction of enamel rods in the gingival third

rods in their outer portion This often leads to a curving of the rods at their outer portion.



## CHAPTER VII

### THE RELATION OF THE STRUCTURE TO THE CUTTING OF THE ENAMEL

THERE are two methods of cutting enamel—to chop or cleave it, and to shave or plane it

**Cleaving or Chopping Enamel**—In the cleavage of the enamel the action of the instrument more nearly resembles that of splitting ice than that of splitting wood. The ax for splitting wood is strongly wedge-shaped and the edge pries the fibers apart. In splitting ice a small nick is made on the surface and then a sharp blow cracks the ice in the direction of the cleavage. In a similar way the chisel applied to the surface of the enamel makes a slight scratch or bearing on the surface, and the force applied at a slight angle to the direction of the rods cracks the tissue through in the rod direction. The bevel of the instrument is designed to give strength and keenness of edge not to act as a wedge. In order to cleave the enamel it is always necessary that there be a break or opening in the tissue, and usually that the dentin be removed from under it. Only a small portion can be split off at a time. The edge of the chisel should be placed on the enamel a quarter or half a millimeter from the opening, rarely more and so piece after piece is split into the cavity. Fig 49 shows a section of enamel. The edge of the chisel is placed at 1 with the shaft in the relation to enamel rod direction indicated, a tap of a steel mallet will split off a piece and the chisel is moved back to position 2 and a second piece is split off. Undermined enamel will split easily in this way. As soon as a point is reached where the enamel rests on sound dentin, it is recognized by the resistance. Straight enamel can be split off from sound dentin without difficulty if attacked in the proper way but if the inner portion is gnarled and twisted it can only be cleaved by removing the dentin from under it. Such enamel, if resting on dentin will split as far as the rods are straight but where they begin to twist they will break off leaving a portion which is very difficult to remove by attacking it from the surface. If the dentin is removed from under gnarled enamel it will crack

through in an irregular way, following the general direction of the rods.

In preparing teeth for crowns it is often necessary to remove a large amount of enamel. This is always more efficiently accomplished by the intelligent use of sharp instruments than by force alone. The enamel on axial surfaces, especially in the gingival

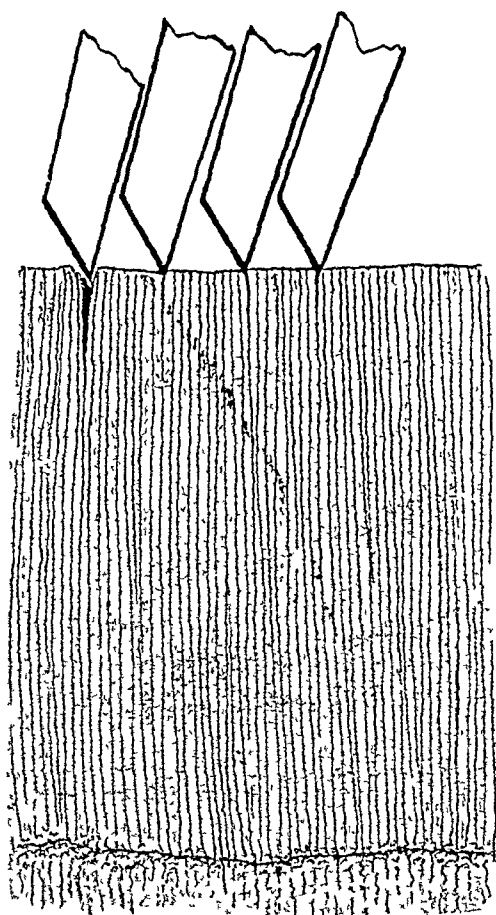


FIG 49 —Position of chisel in cleaving enamel

half of the crown, is usually straight, and if a cleavage line can once be established, the enamel can be more easily and rapidly removed by splitting it off piece after piece than in any other way. In doing this a straight or contra-angled chisel is often the most efficient instrument, and it must be remembered that the "root trimmers" are more properly called "enamel cleavers," and that

they are used to cleave the enamel, not to scrape or hoe it off their form being adapted to give a strong palm grasp of the instrument

Fig 50 illustrates the use of the enamel cleaver for the removal of gingival enamel from an axial surface. The line of cleavage being established, the edge of the instrument is placed on the

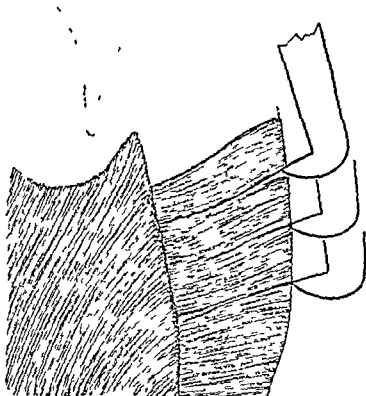


FIG 50—The use of enamel cleaver in removing enamel

enamel half a millimeter from the broken edge, and the force which should be strong, quick and sharp, is applied in the direction indicated and piece after piece is split off progressing from the occlusal toward the gingival. In preparing the wall of a cavity the outline form should be attained by cleavage and this is the first step in the preparation of the cavity.

After the enamel has been removed by cleavage to the point

where the margin is to be laid, the wall must be completed by cutting the enamel in an entirely different way.

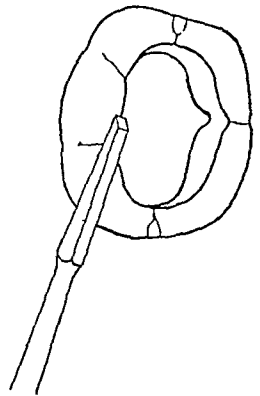
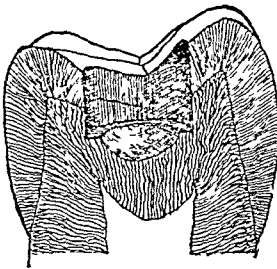
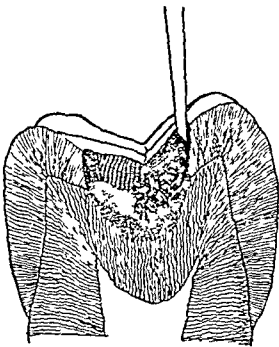
**Planing or Shaving Enamel.**—In this manner of cutting enamel the tissue is removed without reference to the rod direction, and without injury to its structure (Figs 51, 52, and 53) The chisel is used like the blade of a plane. The cutting edge is placed against the surface with the shaft of the instrument almost parallel to it, and the tissue is shaved away. In this way the rods that have been cracked apart by the cleavage are removed, and the walls arranged in terms of its structural elements so as to gain the required strength of margin.

**Sharp Instruments.**—Chisels and hatchets for use in cleaving or planing enamel must be keenly sharp. If a dull edge is placed on

FIG 51

FIG 52

FIG 53



Figs 51, 52, and 53 —The use of the chisel in planing or shaving enamel (Black)

the surface of the enamel it will rest across the ends of many rods, and force applied will only crumble them, but will not split the tissue. The edge must be keen (Fig 54), so as to engage between the rods and so start the cleavage. Cutting instruments as furnished by dental supply houses are not tempered hard enough to hold an edge. There is no fault to be found with the supply houses for this, for they make them as the dentist wants them, and any dealer will furnish hard-tempered instruments if they are ordered. To use hand instruments successfully in cutting enamel, the stock instruments must either be retempered or they must be ordered hard tempered. The cutting edge of the blade of an enamel instrument should be straw-colored when tempered.

The chisel and hatchets are the instruments for removing enamel.

## 55 RELATION OF STRUCTURE TO CUTTING OF ENAMEL

The burr is the instrument for removing hard dentin. When the burr is used on enamel it should be remembered that it is used as a revolving chisel. It is by the thoughtful use of hand instruments

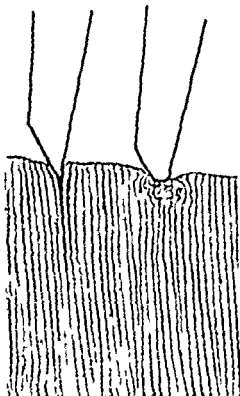


FIG. 54 The relation of the edge of a sharp and a full chisel

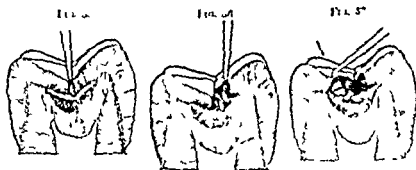


FIG. 55 A, B, C — The use of the chisel in carving enamel. Opening an occlusal cavity (Black)

that knowledge of enamel rod direction is gained, and only by the use of them can the enamel walls be prepared in terms of their structural elements. In cleaving undermined enamel the edge may be used either with a pulling or a pushing motion. For instance, in opening a cavity in the occlusal surface of a bicuspid, the buccal portion of undermined enamel is split off by placing the instrument as shown in Figs 55 and 56. The bevel of the blade is held toward the cavity and the shaft of the instrument at a slight angle to the rod direction, and the force is applied in the direction of the shaft. The lingual portion may be removed by placing the instrument as indicated in Fig 57, the bevel of the blade away from the cavity and the force applied in the direction of the bevel by a pulling force in the direction of the shaft. This is the way in which force is applied on enamel cleavers. The pitch of the bevel in an enamel cleaver and its relation to the shaft of the instrument is extremely important, and the efficiency of an instrument may easily be ruined by careless honing. Every time a cutting instrument is applied to the enamel it must be done with a knowledge of the relation of the cutting edge and the force to the direction of the enamel rods, until it becomes entirely automatic. The author emphatically believes that the acquirement of this knowledge and skill will do more to increase facility and success in the preparation of cavity walls than any other manipulative factor. The preparation of enamel walls requires the continual application of the knowledge of enamel structure. Enamel is a very hard tissue, but it is composed of structural elements, and walls prepared without reference to them will prove their own weakness.

## CHAPTER VIII

### THE STRUCTURAL REQUIREMENTS FOR STRONG ENAMEL WALLS

FROM the consideration of the physical character of the enamel its structural elements and their properties, it is evident that the strength of any enamel wall is dependent upon the arrangement of the rods in the tissue which makes up the walls and their relation to the dentin. Certain requirements for strength can be clearly stated and these are applicable to all enamel walls. They cannot always be secured with equal facility or perfection, but in proportion as these principles are observed and attained the wall will be strong, as they are imperfectly attained or ignored the wall will be weak and unreliable. When these conditions are understood very many failures can be clearly seen to have been the result of their neglect.

**Structural Requirements**—1 The enamel must rest upon sound dentin.

2 The rods which form the cavosurface angle must have their inner ends resting upon sound dentin.

3 The rods which form the cavosurface angle must be supported by a portion of enamel in which the inner ends of the rods rest on sound dentin and the outer ends are covered by the filling material.

4 The cavosurface angle<sup>1</sup> must be trimmed or bevelled so that the margin will not be liable to injury in condensing the filling material against it (Fig. 58).

These requirements should be considered one by one.

**The Enamel Must Rest upon Sound Dentin**—That is the enamel plate must have the support of sound dentin, and all portions which are undermined by the removal of dentin must be cut away. When the inner ends of the rods which form the enamel plate rest upon sound dentin the elasticity of the dentin gives to the enamel a certain degree of elasticity but the enamel itself without this support

<sup>1</sup> The cavosurface angle is defined as the angle formed by the surface of the tooth and the wall of the cavity.

is extremely brittle. A force that causes it to give will crack it through its entire thickness. No filling material or substitute for the lost dentin can restore the original conditions. Figs 58 and 59 illustrate these requirements. The enamel plate *a, b, c, d* rests upon sound dentin. The rods which form the cavosurface angle at *b* run uninterruptedly to the dentin, and their inner ends rest on it.

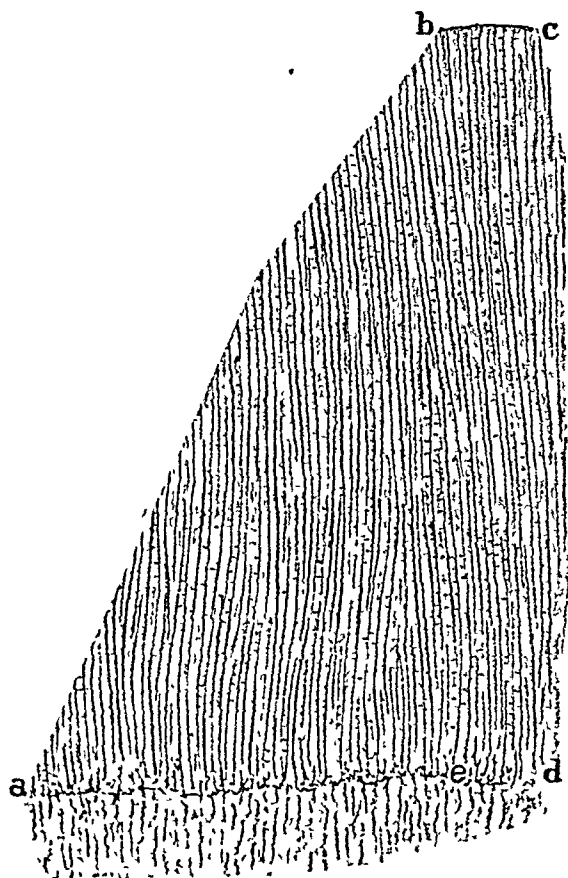


FIG. 58 —The structural requirements for a strong enamel wall.

at *c*. The rods, *b, c* are also supported by a portion of enamel, *a, b, c*, made up of rods whose inner ends rest upon the dentin and whose outer ends are covered in by the filling material, altogether supporting the marginal rods like a buttress. And the cavosurface angle is bevelled, including from  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the enamel wall, so as to remove the sharp corner which would be in danger of crumbling under an instrument. An enamel wall should be considered no



stronger after the filling is inserted than it was before. Moreover, when the dentin has been decalcified or destroyed by the action of caries, the acid which has decalcified the dentin has also acted upon the enamel, dissolving the cementing substance from between the rods, from within outward, often to a great extent and the structure is very imperfect. Enamel that has been so weakened

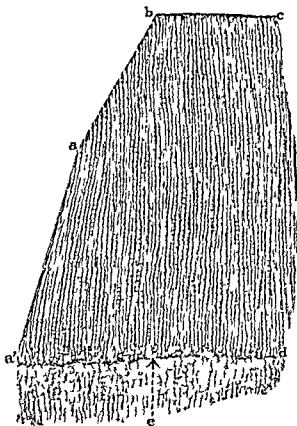


FIG. 59.—The structural requirements for a strong enamel wall. *a b* the level of the cavosurface angle. The rods forming the margin of the cavity at *b* reach the dentin at *e* and are supported by the portion *a b e*.

will not withstand the force of mastication and sooner or later will crack or break away from the filling material. It should be removed and the wall formed in tissue whose structure is perfect. Occasionally cases arise where an operator decides to leave some unsupported enamel but its weakness and the possibility of restoring it if it

breaks away without destroying the original operation must always be considered. It is sometimes supposed that it is only necessary to have sound enamel resting on sound dentin, but by looking at Figs. 60 and 61 it will be seen that the first requirement may be present, but not the second. In these illustrations the enamel plate is resting on sound dentin, but the tissue has been cut in such

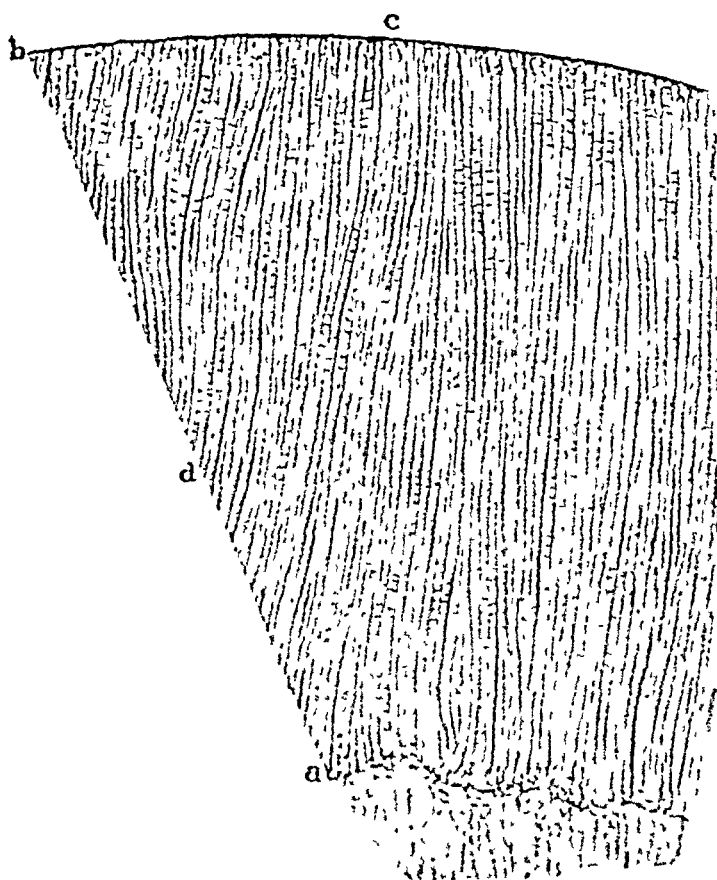


FIG. 60.—Illustration by prepared enamel wall. The portion *a, b, c* has the inner ends of the rods cut off and they do not reach the dentin.

a way that the inner ends of the rods have been cut off. The rods that form the cavo surface angle do not extend to the dentin but run out on the cavity wall at *d*, and the portion *a, b, c* is held together only by the cementing substance. This is not strong enough to sustain the force necessary to condense the filling material or the force received upon the surface of the tooth after the filling is completed. It will crack on the line of the cementing substance

and chip out. The inclination of the entire wall must be increased to a little more than to reach the rod direction. Such a wall as this may easily be made in preparing a cavity wall with a stone or a burr but would not be liable to be formed with hand instruments. Such walls as this account for the chipping of many margins

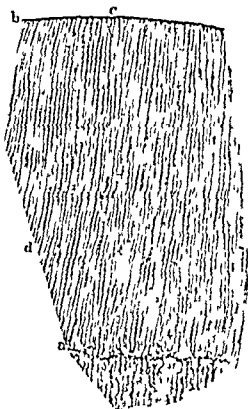


FIG. 61.—In properly prepared enamel wall. The portion *a b c* is not supported by dentin.

and the failure of fillings along the gingival wall. The tissue is cracked to pieces in inserting the filling material and the pieces fall out later. This occurs often in the gingival walls of compound cavities.

**The Rods Forming the Cavo-surface Angle Must be Supported**—This is the key to strong enamel walls. The more perfect the support the stronger the wall. If an enamel wall is cut exactly in the direction of the rods as in Fig. 62 the rods forming the margin

are held together only by cementing substance, and a comparatively slight force on the surface in the direction toward the cavity will break them off. If the same wall is trimmed, as indicated by the line, the same force would do no damage, as the rods which receive it are supported by the portion which is covered by the filling

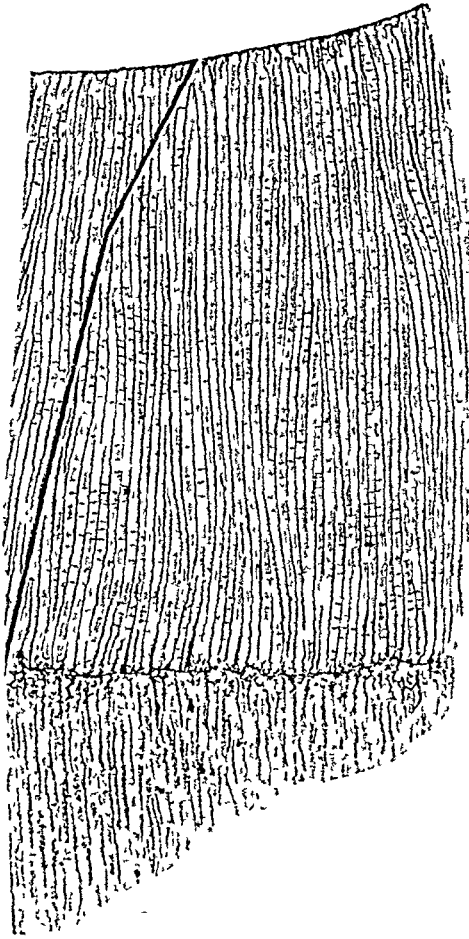


FIG 62 —Enamel wall cut in the direction of the rods The marginal rods are not supported It should be trimmed in the line indicated

material It is interesting to note that in the wearing down of the enamel by use, nature provides the same support for the rods which form the angle of the worn and tooth surfaces. Fig. 63 shows the tip of a worn incisor The rods at *A* reach the dentin at *C* and are supported by the portion *A, B, C*. When caries occurs on an abraded surface it starts by the rods at the dento-enamel

junction chipping out and forming a protected niche for the lodgement of a colony

**Bevel the Cavo-surface Angle** —It is not always necessary to bevel the cavo-surface angle where the rods are inclined toward the cavity. In such places the rods forming the margin are well supported and the angle need not be bevelled unless it is so sharp that it would be in danger of being injured

There are two reasons for bevelling the cavo-surface angle (1) To protect a sharp angle from injury, (2) to gain support for the

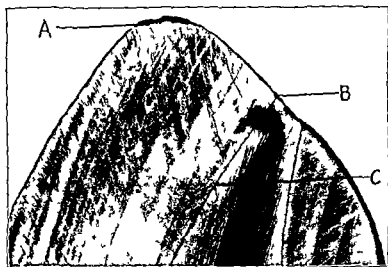


FIG. 63 —The tip of a worn incisor. The rods forming the angle at A reach the dentin at C and are supported by the piece A B C

marginal rods. The first occurs where the enamel rods are inclined toward the cavity, the second where they are inclined away from the cavity.

**Classes of Cavities** —From a consideration of the direction of the enamel rods in the tooth crown and the positions where caries begins on the enamel enamel walls may be divided according to their structural type into two classes (Fig. 64)

1 Those in which the enamel rods are inclined toward the cavity characteristic of cavities on occlusal surfaces and cavities beginning in fissures and pits

2 Those in which the enamel rods are inclined away from the cavity characteristic of cavities on smooth surfaces

In the first class it is comparatively easy to obtain a strong margin, and this is fortunate, for when the filling is completed the margin will be subjected to the full force of mastication. In the second it is comparatively difficult to obtain a strong margin, but only sufficient strength is required to withstand the force of condensing the filling material, as after the filling is completed it will be obliged to withstand little force from mastication.

From a careful observation of the failures of fillings (his own and those of other operators), the author believes a very large

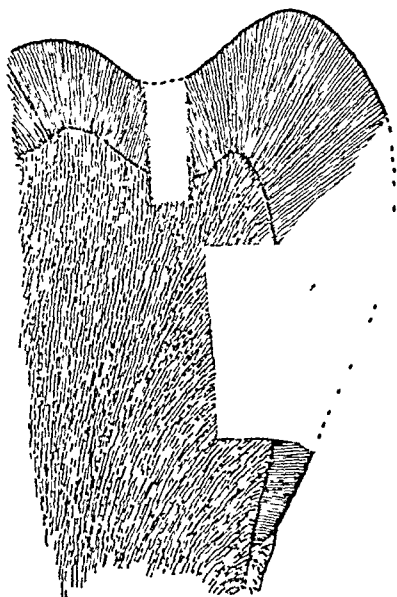


FIG. 64 —The two classes of cavities. Those with the rods inclined toward the cavity, and those with the rods inclined away from the cavity.

number are due to structurally imperfect enamel walls. A study of enamel structure as related to cavity preparation will do more to improve the quality of the operation and to increase the facility of its execution than any one factor. This study is a clinical study guided by examination of the microscopic structure of the tissue. In operating at the chair the detail of enamel rod direction as it is applied to cavity preparation is learned, but to do so hand instruments must be used and a sufficient knowledge of the tissue must have been acquired to think of it always in terms of its structural elements.

*The steps in the preparation of an enamel wall are*

- 1 The cleavage of the enamel until the outline form of the cavity is reached
- 2 The trimming of the enamel walls
- 3 The preparation of the margins



FIG. 65.—Occlusal fissure in an upper bicuspid showing direction of rods  
(About 80 X)

Every enamel wall should be prepared according to these steps. The first not only removes the tissue more or less disintegrated and weakened by caries, but also places the margin of the filling in a position where it is not likely to be covered by the growth of

a colony of bacteria. It also determines the direction of the enamel rods so that the walls can be completed in terms of its structural elements

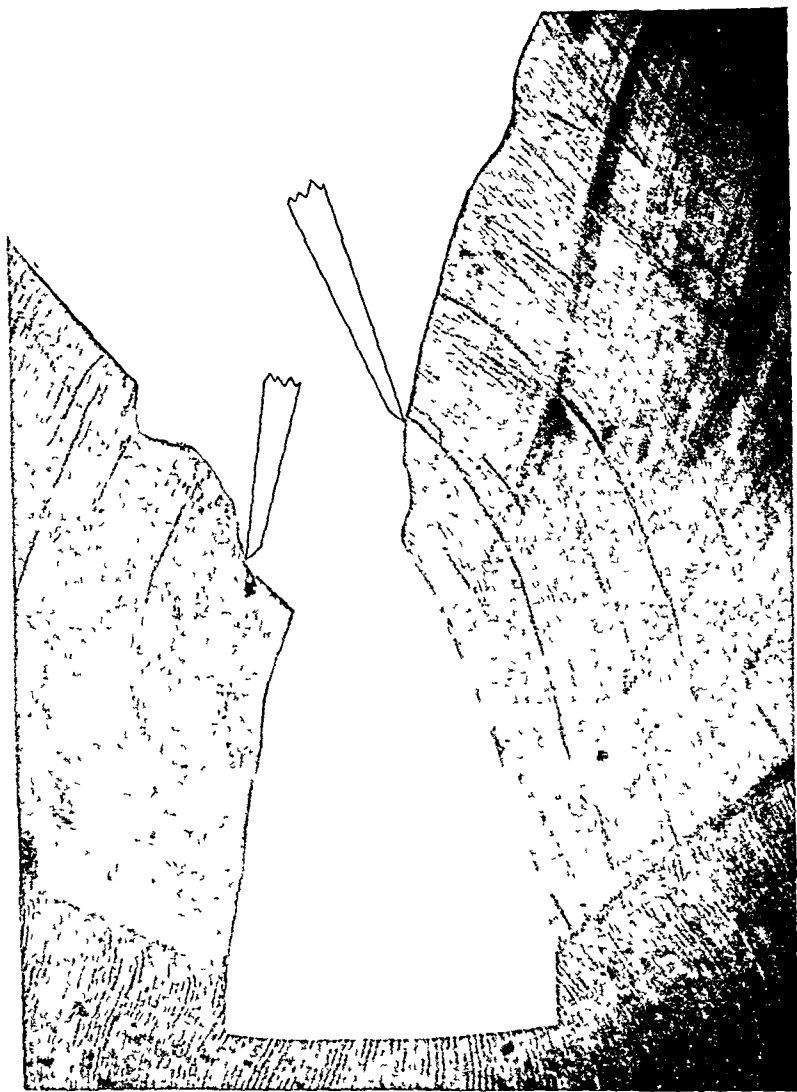


FIG 66 —The same section as Fig 65, showing the position of the chisel in cleaving the enamel to open the cavity

The second step is accomplished by the shaving or planing process, and should always increase the inclination of the entire enamel wall slightly, so as to extend a little beyond the rod directions, and remove the portions that have been cracked or splintered by



the cleavage. After cleavage the enamel wall will usually have a more or less whitish look. This is caused by the cracking of the cementing substance between the rods. The light is refracted by

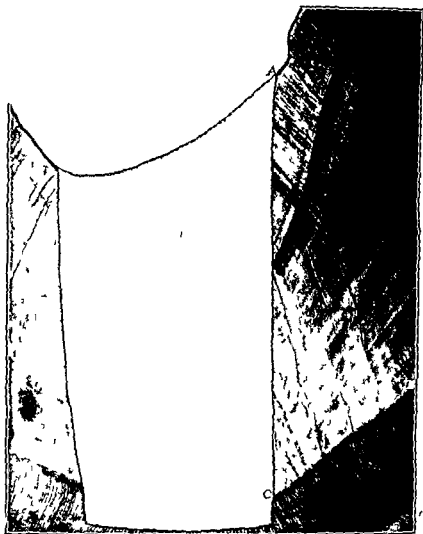


FIG. 67.—Preparation of enamel walls in occlusal fissure cavities (the same as Figs 64 and 66).

the air in these microscopic spaces and imparts this whitish or snowy look to the tissue. These portions are removed by planing or shaving and the tissue obtains its bluish, translucent appearance.

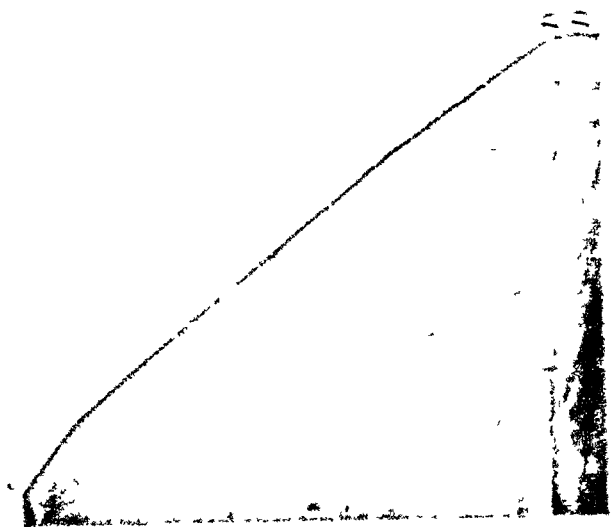
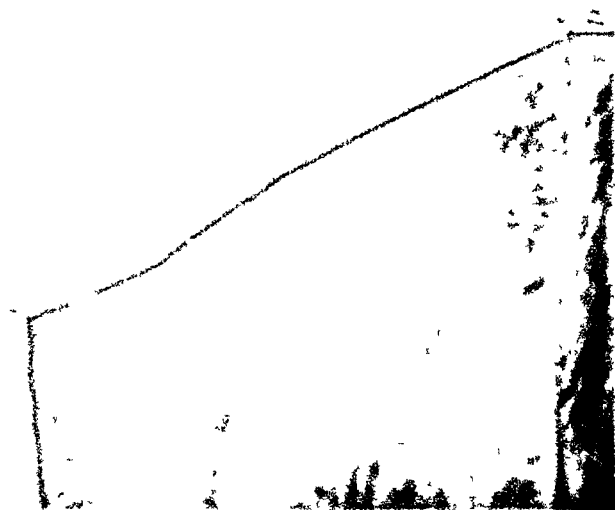


FIG. 100. A Curved Wall in Straight Channel.

The photograph shows a curved wall in a straight channel. The wall is on the right, and the water is on the left. The wall has a slight curve and is topped with a railing. The water is calm and reflects the sky. The photograph is taken from a low angle, looking up at the wall. The wall is made of concrete and has a smooth finish. The water is clear and blue. The sky is a pale blue with some light clouds. The overall scene is peaceful and serene.



The third step is also accomplished by the planing process, and should be carried out with two objects in mind (1) To so form the cavosurface angle that the tissue will not be liable to injury in the condensation of the filling material against it, and (2) to leave rods whose outer ends will be covered by the filling material to support those which form the actual margin of the cavity.

The steps in the preparation of enamel walls may be made more clear by photomicrographs. Plate VII shows a portion of enamel close to a carious cavity which is to be extended to the left. The chisel is placed close to the margin and the portion is split off. The



FIG 68 —The relation of the cavity to the crown (the same as Figs 66 and 67)

wall then appears whitish, for, as is seen, the cementing substance has cracked in several places, disturbing the structure, and in several places rods have been broken across. The wall must now be planed so as to increase the inclination of the entire wall slightly, and finally the cavosurface angle must be bevelled, involving from  $\frac{1}{5}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the thickness of the enamel wall to give support to the rods forming the margins. In this case the rods are straight and parallel, but in Plate VIII they are twisted. If the dentin is removed from under this enamel and the chisel placed as indicated, the portion will be split out, but not only has the tissue been splintered,

but a considerable portion is left in which the rods have been broken across. By feeling of the margin with the chisel this can easily be determined and the angle of the wall must be increased by planing so as to leave the wall in the position shown in Plate VIII 3, and finally the cavosurface angle must be bevelled.

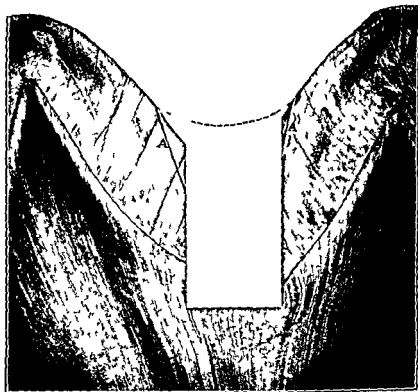
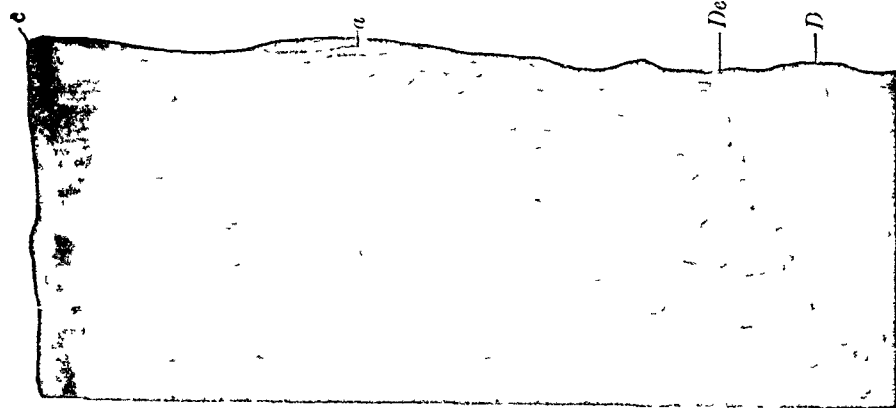


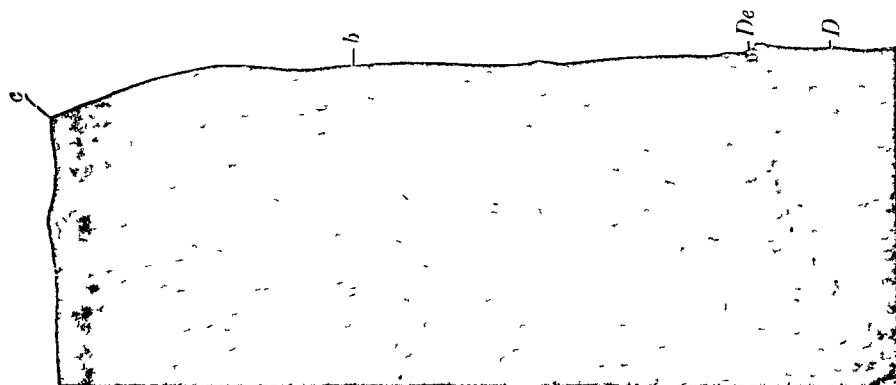
FIG 69.—The trimming of the walls instead of lapping the filling material on the slope of the cusps

**Preparation of Simple Occlusal Cavities**—Caries often begins in the mesial and distal pits of the upper bicusps and in preparing the cavities for filling they must be united. Fig 60 is a buccolingual section through a first superior bicuspid. Suppose caries has reached the dento-enamel junction in both the mesial and distal pits and they are to be united along the groove. A small spear drill is carried into the mesial pit until the dento-enamel junction is reached then a small inverted cone burr is carried into the dentin just under the enamel and drawn from the dentin to

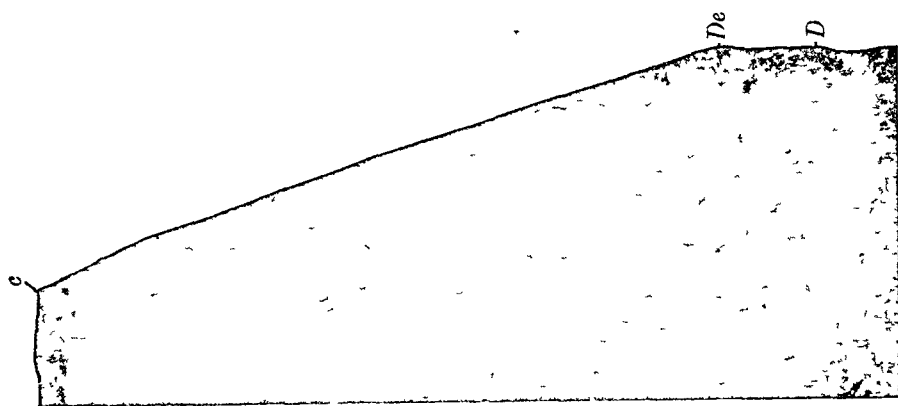
# PLATE VIII



1



2



3

Preparation of Enamel Wall in Gnarled Enamel

1, enamel wall as cleaved, showing breaking across rods and slivering at *a* 2, wall as smooth, but not extended to remove short rods whose inner ends are cut off at *b* 3, wall extended and trimmed to a position of strength *D*, dentin, *De*, dento-enamel junction, *c*, cavosurface angle, *b*, point where inner ends of rods are cut off, *a*, slivering of the tissue (About 80 X)



the surface of the enamel. When a narrow cut has been made from the mesial to the distal pit, a chisel placed at the edge of the opening will split out the enamel as indicated in Fig 71. Now the walls must be planed so as to bring the buccal and lingual walls into the axial plane, and the structural requirements will have



FIG 70—Caries beginning in an occlusal defect of a molar (About 80 X)

been completed (Fig 67). Fig 68 shows the relation of the cavity to the crown

It has often been advised to allow the filling to extend on to the natural slopes of the cusps, as indicated in Fig. 69. It will be seen, however, that a stronger enamel wall and a stronger edge



of filling material will be obtained if the enamel wall is bevelled to the point where the margin of the filling is desired and the filling finished to this position

Fig 70 shows a buccolingual section through a molar with a small cavity in a mesial pit. Caries has undermined the enamel

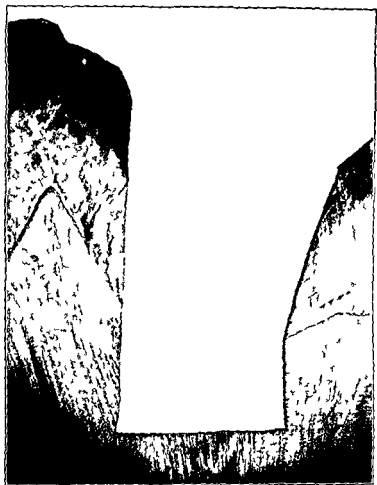


FIG 71 —The preparation of the enamel walls of the cavity shown in Fig 70

slightly toward the buccal but has attacked the enamel on the surface extending toward the lingual farther than the enamel has been undermined at the dento-enamel junction. Applying the chisel to the surface the undermined enamel is split away, as is indicated in Fig 71. The buccal wall is planed until it is in

the axial plane, and the cavosurface angle bevelled. It is not necessary to extend the cavity to the lingual beyond the point where sound dentin is reached, but the disintegrated enamel on



FIG 72 —The relation of the cavity to the crown (the same section was shown in Figs 70 and 71).

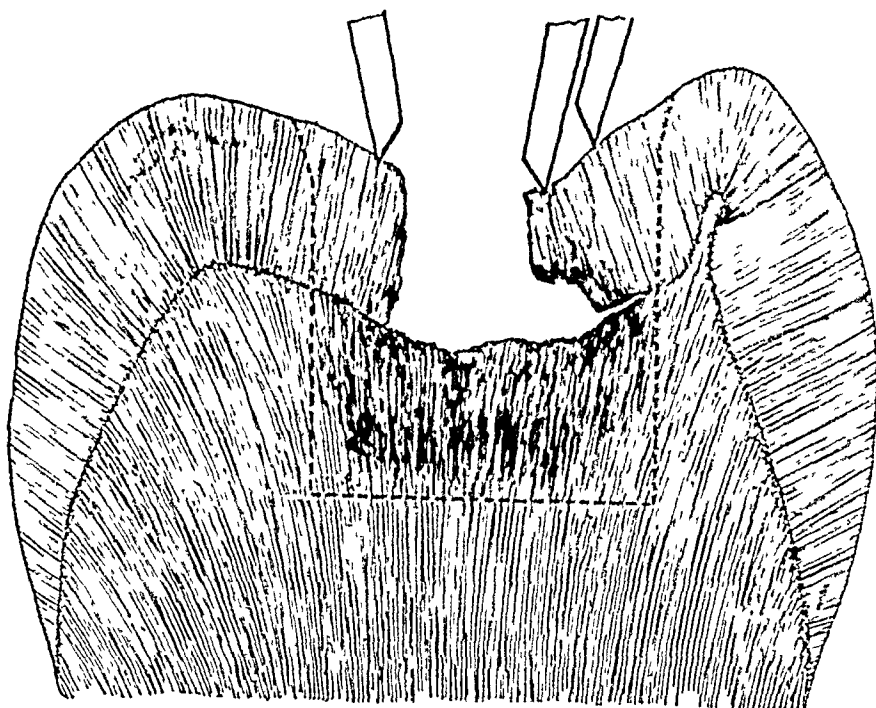


FIG 73 —A larger cavity in the occlusal surface of a molar The position of the chisel in opening the cavity.

the surface must be removed. The enamel wall is therefore inclined about 6 centigrades lingually from the axial plane, and it is not necessary to bevel the cavosurface angle. The rods are inclined toward the cavity, the rods forming the margins are



FIG. 74 —A gingival third cavity in a bicuspid showing the cleavage of the occlusal and gingival walls as cleaved

well supported, and the cavosurface angle is not so sharp as to be endangered in condensing filling material. Fig. 72 shows the relation of the cavity to the crown

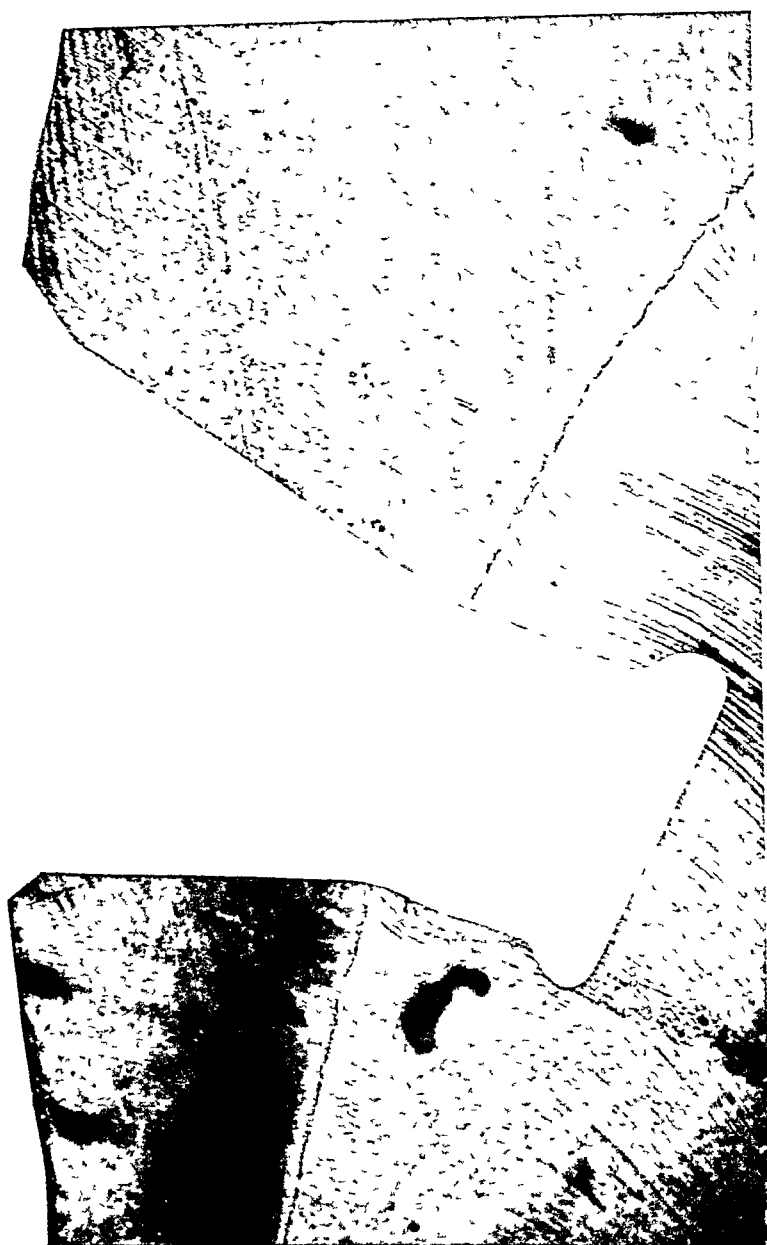


FIG 75 —The preparation of the cavity shown in Fig 74.

All occlusal defects should be filled as soon as the decay has reached the dento-enamel junction, as all progress of the disease

beyond that point requires sacrifice of tissue which otherwise would be saved, and the enamel wall becomes less and less strong. Fig. 73 shows a much more extensive occlusal cavity, one that has been neglected until the enamel has been broken in, and as a result there was much unnecessary loss of tooth structure. The chisel is applied to the surface as indicated and the undermined enamel broken down until the sound dentin is reached. On the buccal, the enamel wall is cut to the axial plane, and the cusp surface fac angle bevelled. If the decay in the dentin had reached the tip of the dentin cusp it would be necessary to remove the tip of the enamel cusp and incline the wall about 8 centigrades buccally.



FIG. 70 — A gingival third cavity in a molar

from the axial plane in order to obtain a strong wall and then the cusp would be replaced by filling material. On the lingual the undermined enamel is removed and the wall inclined slightly lingually from the axial plane and the cusp surface angle bevelled a little. Fig. 73 shows the relation of the cavity to the crown.

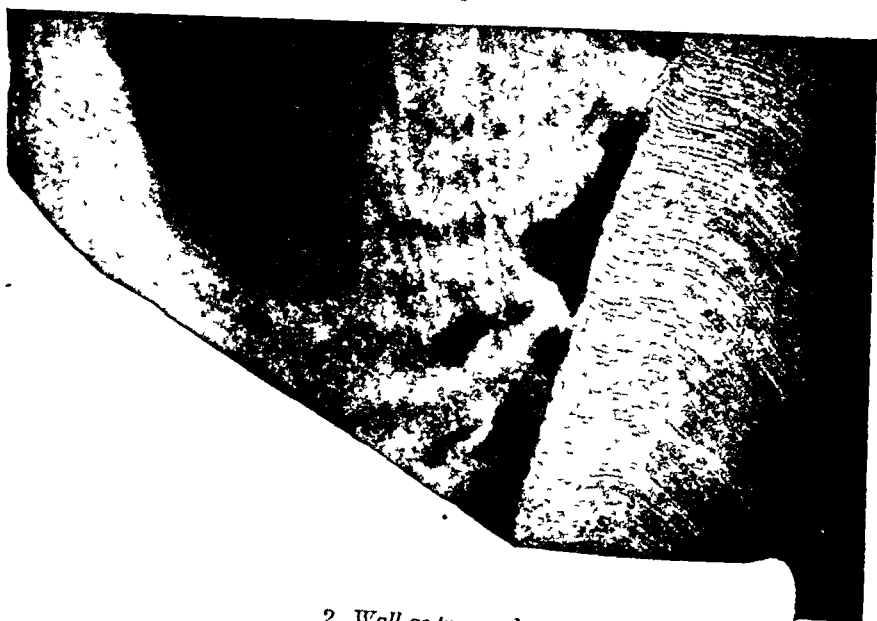
**Gingival Third Cavities** — Fig. 74 is a buccolingual section of a superior bicuspid showing a break in the enamel in the position of a gingival third cavity. The occlusal wall is elevated to find the enamel rod direction then planed to increase the inclination slightly, leaving it inclined about 8 centigrades occlusally from the horizontal plane and the cusp surface angle bevelled to obtain support.

FIG 77



1 Wall as cleaved.

FIG 78



2 Wall as trimmed.

FIGS 77 and 78 —Preparation of occlusal wall of Fig. 76. (About 70 X).

for the marginal rods. The lingual wall is prepared in the same way, inclined gingivally about 6 centigrades from the horizontal plane and the cavosurface angle bevelled. Fig. 75 shows the walls prepared.

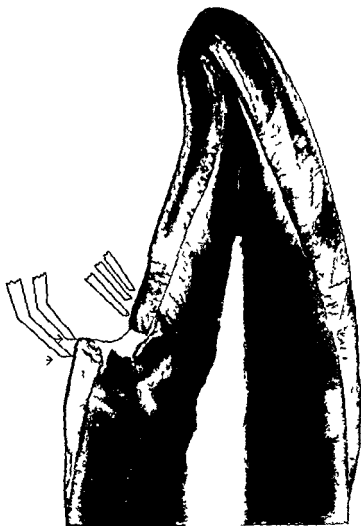


FIG. 75 — A cavity in the lingual pit of a lateral incisor. The position of the chisel in opening the cavity.

Fig. 76 is a similar section from a molar. After chopping away the occlusal wall until the cavity has been extended to the point of greatest convexity of the surface, the wall is seen to be in the

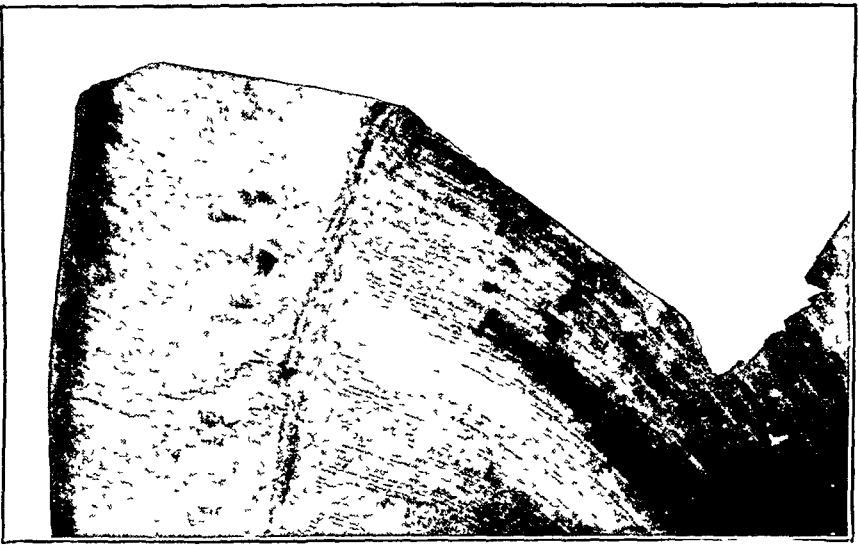


FIG 80 —The preparation of the gingival wall of the cavity shown in Fig 79.



FIG. 81,—The preparation of the cavity shown in Fig 79



condition shown in Fig 77. Near the surface the enamel has broken across the rods and near the dento-enamel junction the same thing has happened, but in the rest of the distance the cleavage has followed the enamel rod direction. The inclination of the wall is increased by planing until this roughness has been removed and then the cavosurface angle is bevelled to support the marginal rods, and preparation is complete, as shown in Fig 78.

Fig 79 shows a cavity in the lingual pit of a superior lateral incisor. Caries has undermined the enamel to a considerable extent and the cavity will have to be larger than would otherwise have been necessary. Placing the chisel close to the occlusal margin as indicated the enamel is chipped away in that direction and around the circumference. On the lingual wall the chisel may be reversed and used with a pulling motion, like a hoe. In this way the undermined enamel is chipped away and the tip of the marginal ridge removed. The wall is then planed into the horizontal plane and the cavosurface angle bevelled. Fig 80 shows the structure of the gingival wall and Fig 81 the relation to the crown.

## CHAPTER IX.

### STRUCTURAL DEFECTS IN THE ENAMEL

THE formation of enamel begins at the dento-enamel junction, and the tissue is laid down from within outward, so that the enamel in contact with the dentin is formed first and the surface of the crown last. Enamel formation begins at several points for each crown, the exact number and position of which has been the subject of much investigation. When enamel formation begins, these points are close together, but they are carried farther apart by the growth of the dental papilla, and are not united for some time. The separate enamel caplets unite first at the dento-enamel junction, and as the formation of the thickness of the enamel progresses at these lines of union, there is always more or less disturbance in structure. Even where the union seems perfect, sections will show more or less disturbance of enamel-rod direction, arrangement of the rods, and relation to the cementing substance.

Every operator and student of dental anatomy is familiar with the developmental lines. On the occlusal surfaces they are usually marked by well-defined grooves, but upon the axial surfaces the grooves may be very slight, scarcely more than slight depressions of the surface, and consequently they are not thought of. It will be found, however, that on these lines there is less perfect enamel structure, and consequently the tissue is not as strong, and these lines must be avoided in the preparation of enamel walls. The cause of disturbance of structure will be better understood after study of the development of the tooth germ and the formation of enamel in the chapter on Dental Embryology, but some details of the cause should be touched upon here. The study of the diagrams of the growth of the tooth crown will illustrate the conditions (see Chapter XXVI, Fig. 278), and shows a buccolingual section through the tooth germ of a bicuspid just before the formation of the dentin and the enamel begins. The odontoblasts (dentin-forming cells) and the ameloblasts (enamel-forming cells) are in contact at what will be the dento-enamel junction. The odontoblasts form dentin on their outer surface, beginning at the tip of

the dentin cusp, and progress from without inward and extend down the slopes of the cusps. The ameloblasts form enamel on their inner surface and progress from within outward and down

FIG 82



FIG 83



FIG 84



FIG 85



FIG 86



FIG 87



FIGS 82 to 87 —Diagrams showing the growth of the crown of a bicuspid

the slopes of the cusps. In this way little caplets of dentin covered by enamel are formed over the horns of the dental papilla, the caps are, of course, thickest where formation has been going on

longest. While these caps are forming, the dental papilla is increasing in size, and so they are carried farther and farther apart (Figs

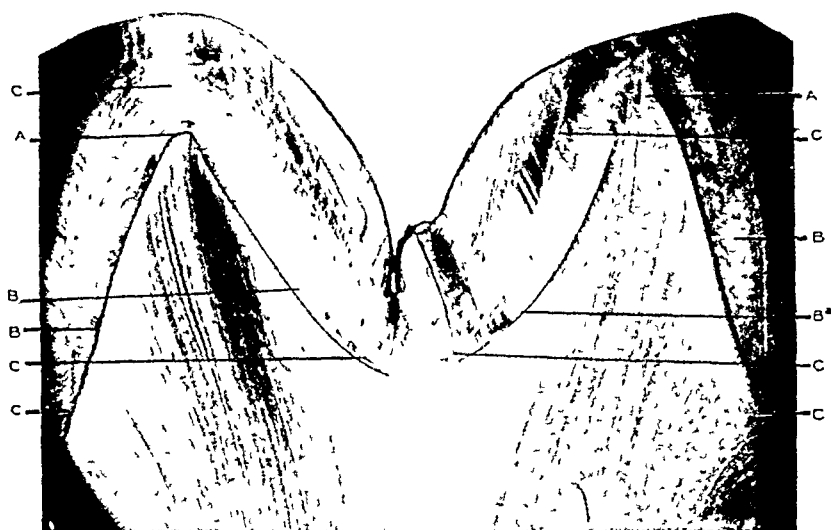


FIG 88 —The section from which Figs 82 to 87 were drawn A, tip of dentin cusp, B, lines showing little caps of enamel formed before calcifications from separate centres united, C, lines showing amount of enamel formed when calcifications united

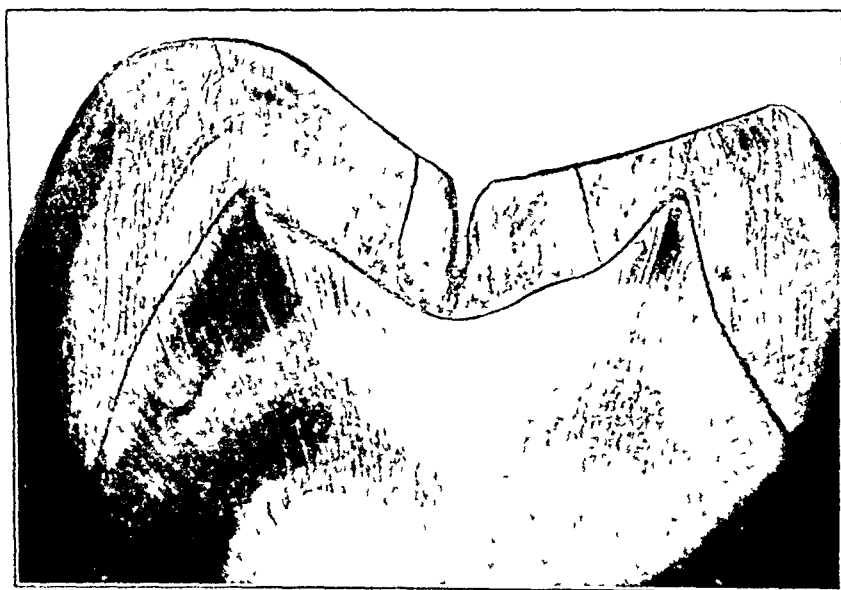


FIG 89 —Occlusal defects from an old tooth

82 to 87) As soon as the calcifications reach each other at the dento-enamel junction and unite, the increase in the diameter of

the dental papilla ceases. The layer of ameloblasts which are tall columnar cells now cover the surface of the enamel and receive



FIG. 90 — A deep open groove

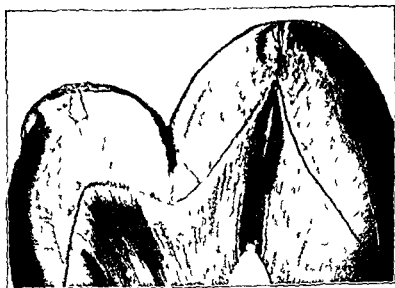


FIG. 91 — A shallow groove

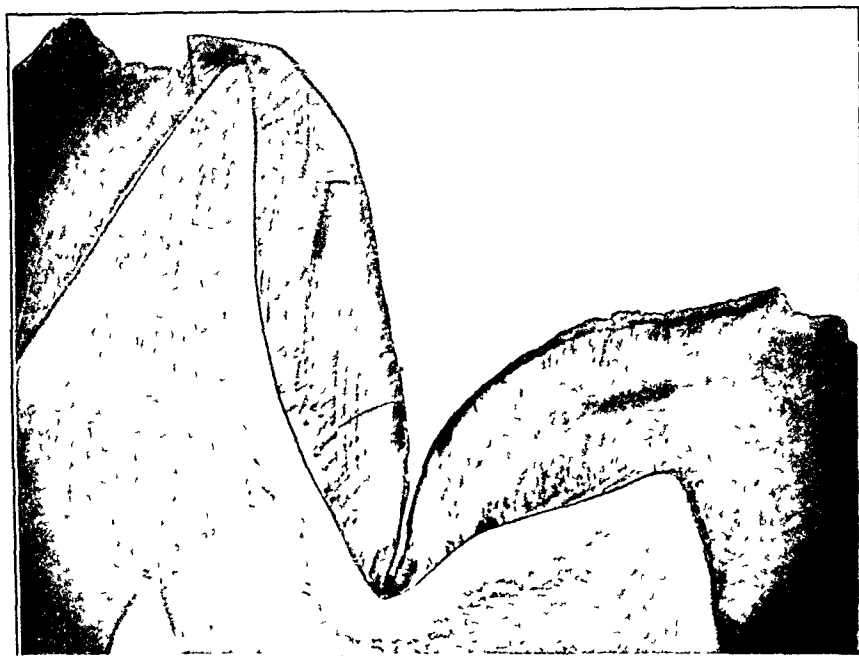


FIG 92 —A very deep groove, showing the effect of caries at the bottom



FIG 93 —The pit in a lateral incisor filled with coronal cementum Interglobular spaces are seen in the dentin

their nourishment and the materials for the formation of enamel from the blood supply through the stratum intermedium. As the blood supply comes from above it is evident that the cells high up along the slopes of the cusps will receive most while those

FIG 94

FIG 95



FIG 94 —Occlusal surface of the lower third molar showing the grooves

FIG 95 —The same tooth sliced for sectioning. I the piece from which the section shown in Figs 96 and 97 was ground

at the bottom of the groove get what is left. The formation is therefore more rapid along the slopes and less rapid at the point of union. As growth continues this difference in supply increases and accordingly formation at the bottom of the groove is first

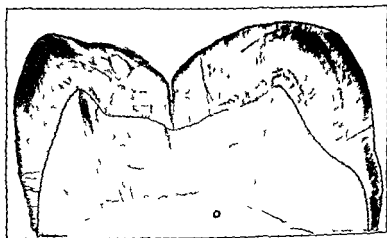


FIG 96 —The section ground from I Fig 95 showing the depth of the fissure

slowed and finally stopped and the result is a defect. The taller the cusps the greater will be the interference and the deeper the

defective groove In studying sections (Figs 88 to 92) it is very noticeable that teeth with long pointed cusps have more open grooves, and the defect often extends almost or quite to the dento-enamel junction



FIG 97 —Higher magnification of the fissure shown in Fig 96 (About 60 X)

The bands of Retzius, which are the incremental lines of the enamel about these grooves, should be studied It will be seen that they always dip down around the groove, and that more enamel has been formed between one band (Figs 98 and 99) and the next on the slope of the cusps than at the bottom of the groove In teeth with very flat, low cusps the closure of the grooves may be very perfect, leaving only a slight depression (Fig 91).



The importance of these defects as positions of beginning caries cannot be overestimated, as they furnish ideal conditions in areas that would otherwise be immune and they are the positions in which the attacks of caries are first manifested. These occlusal grooves appear in great variety. Some are simply shallow open grooves in which the surface of the enamel is perfect (Fig 88), some are very deep and entirely empty (Figs 89, 90, and 92) others are apparently filled with a granular more or less structureless calcified material which appears to have been deposited in the groove after the enamel was completed (Figs 93, 98, and 99). This is probably of the nature of cementum. It was formed after



FIG. 94.—An occlusal defect in a worn tooth. The fissure is filled with coronal cementum.

the enamel was completed, but while the tooth was enclosed in its follicle in the crypt in the bone. It is to be compared with the coronal cementum that is characteristic of the complex grinding teeth of the ungulates and other herbivorous animals. A study of these defects furnishes the basis for the operative rule that 'all grooves must be cut out to the point where the margin will be on a smooth surface. For if they are not a defect will be left at the margin of the cavity which offers ideal conditions for the beginning of a new decay. When caries begins in such a defect at the margin of a filling, it progresses at the bottom of the defect until the dento-enamel junction is reached and then extends in the dentin and may destroy the entire crown without showing upon the surface

(page 50) The extent of these defects is much greater than would be supposed from the observation of the teeth in the mouth Fig 94 shows the occlusal view of a lower third molar,



FIG 99 —Higher magnification of Fig 98 The fissure filled with granular calcified material Notice the direction of the bands of Retzius around the fissure

extracted because of disease of the peridental membrane, from a man aged about forty years Examining these grooves with a fine-pointed explorer, it would not stick any place No operator

would think of cutting them out and filling them. The crown was sawed through from buccal to lingual, as shown in Fig 95 and the piece marked 1 is shown in Figs 96 and 97. The grooves are open

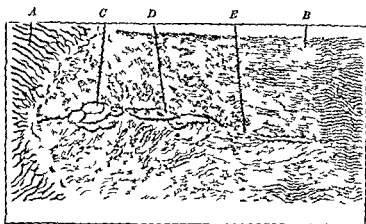


FIG 100—Structural defects in developmental grooves on axial surfaces (Black)

two thirds of the distance to the dento-enamel junction, and show slight action of caries. Suppose caries had started in the central pit, and a small round filling had been made open defects would

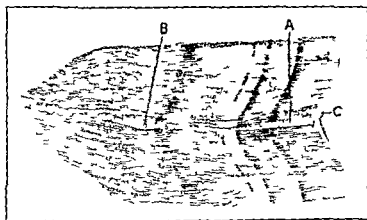


FIG 101—Structural defects in developmental grooves on axial surfaces (Black)

be left at the margin where every groove radiated from the central cavity and these would be just as liable to recurrent decay as they were originally, and if caries occurred, it would progress at

the depth of the groove, reach the dento-enamel junction, and progress in the dentin, until the occlusal enamel was so undermined that it would break in under the force of mastication. On the other hand, if the grooves are cut out to a point where the cavity margin will be on a smooth surface, there is no possibility of recurrent caries if the filling material is properly inserted. This one illustration, which might be duplicated a thousand times, therefore is the rational basis for the rule, "All grooves must be cut out to their ends"

Caries does not occur in all open grooves. Fig. 90 shows an open groove in a section from a tooth in which the wear indicates



FIG 102—Defects on the axial surface in the enamel

that it was not from a young person, but most of the grooves that escape are not open, but more or less entirely filled with structureless calcified matter or coronal cementum. Figs. 93, 98, and 99 are very good illustrations of this class of grooves.

The condition in pits from which grooves extend, as the lingual pits of incisors and the buccal pits of molars, show the same condition as the grooves, except that the defect is both broader and deeper. But pits that are sometimes found on the tips of cusps and on smooth surfaces show an entirely different structural condition, and are pathologic in character

In places where the union of the enamel plates seems perfect,

as, for instance, on the labial surface of the incisors or the buccal surface of the bicuspids, and the line of union is marked only by a slight depression of the surface, the section will show disturbance of structure. Fig 101 a drawing made by Dr Black a good many years ago, shows such a position. At the surface the rods and their arrangement seem very perfect, but from a point about one-third the distance to the dento-enamel junction there are no rods at all but apparently a number of calcospherites in a granular

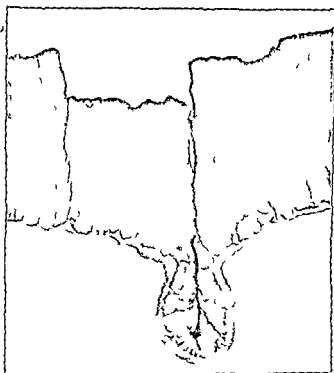


FIG 103 — A section through such a defect as that shown in Fig 102 (About 80 X)

calcareous substance. In Fig 101 another of Dr Black's illustrations the rods are very irregular and are separated by large areas of structureless calcified material. Grooves are often found in unusual or atypical positions. Fig 102 shows a groove running over the mesial marginal ridge and down on the mesial surface. Fig 103 shows a section through such a defect. Notice the folding of the enamel into the dentin and the disturbance of the rods about the groove and between its base and the dentin.

## CHAPTER X.

### SPECIAL AREAS OF WEAKNESS FOR ENAMEL MARGINS.

THERE are certain positions which in the perfect crown are areas of great strength, but which, because of the peculiar structure of the tissue in these places, become areas of weakness when cavity



FIG 104 —Buccolingual section of upper bicuspid Enamel is broken from grinding  
A to B, area of weakness for enamel margin (About 20 X)

margins are made in them. The treatment of beginning caries would lead to no failures in these positions for cavity margins would never be extended into them, except in the treatment of



FIG 105 —Enamel over tip of dentin cusp *D* dentin cusp (About 80 X) From same section as Fig 104

burrowing caries and neglected cases. The extension of caries at the dento-enamel junction often requires the extension of the margin into the area of danger. In considering these areas and in the preparation of cavities, as well as the areas of imperfect structure considered in Chapter IX, it is important to place as much emphasis on the necessity of **not extending cavity margins into the areas of weakness**, as on cutting away the dangerous area and leaving the margin in a safe position, when the area cannot be avoided.

In considering the relation of the enamel and dentin, and in studying the arrangement of the enamel-rod direction in the "architecture" of the tooth crown, it has been pointed out that the dentin cusps and the dentinal marginal ridges are not directly under the corresponding points on the surface of the enamel, but are nearer to the axis of the tooth. The areas on the surface of the enamel, from the point directly over the tip of the dentin cusp or ridge to the tip of the enamel cusps or ridges, become areas of weakness when a cavity is extended into them.

Fig. 104 is a photomicrograph of a buccolingual section of a superior bicuspid, and Fig. 105 is a higher magnification of the same, made to illustrate the condition. It will be seen that if decay has

extended at the dento-enamel junction to the tip of the dentin cusp, and the enamel walls were left in the axial plane, the rods which form the surface of the enamel from the margin of the cavity to the tip of the cusp "are not supported by dentin," and would be likely to be broken and fall away, leaving a defect at the margin of the filling. If decay beginning in the groove or pit has extended only to point *C*, Fig. 104, the wall may be trimmed in the axial plane and an ideal wall produced, but if it has reached point *D*, Fig. 104, it must be inclined buccally so as to remove the tip of the cusp, as indicated in the dotted line, and the cusp restored by the filling material. The region of the surface indicated by *A-B*,

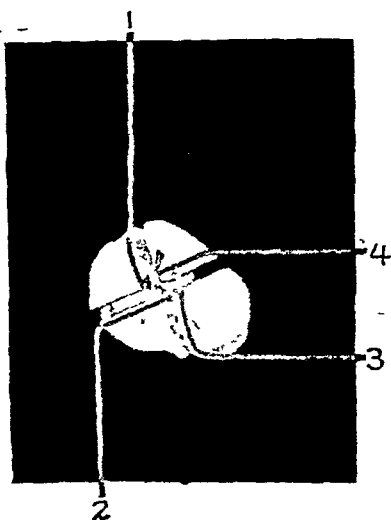


FIG. 106.—A bicuspid cut for sectioning. Sections were ground from the positions marked by the lines 1, 2, 3, 4, and 4 is also shown in Figs. 107, and 108.



while an area of strength in the perfect tissue becomes a position of weakness when cavity margins are extended into it. A careful

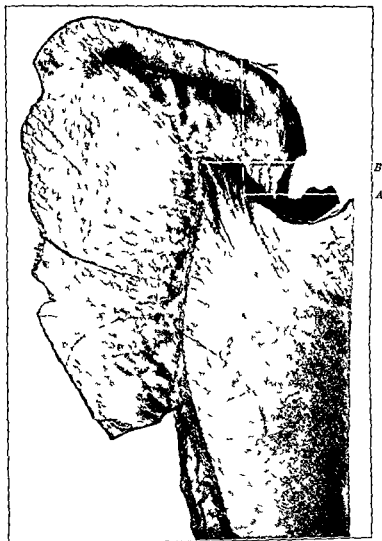


FIG. 10.—Section ground from Fig. 10 through mesial part and marginal ridge. If caries has extended at the dentino-enamel junction to *A* the wall may be in the axial plane. If it has reached *B* the wall must be inclined as indicated by the dotted line. (About 30  $\times$ )

observer will find many failures that are the result of bad enamel wall preparation in these areas. The same conditions exist in the

region of the marginal ridges. Figs 107 and 108 show the mesial marginal ridge of a superior bicuspid. If this is filled before the destruction of dentin has extended beyond the point *A*, the mesial wall may be cut in the axial plane as indicated, but if it has reached the tip of the dentin ridge at point *B*, it must be inclined mesially, so as to reach the tip of the enamel ridge. Figs. 109 and 110 show



FIG 108 —A higher magnification of Fig 107, showing enamel-rod directions in the region of the marginal ridge

the distal marginal ridge in a second molar. Notice the inclination of the rods from the tip of the dentin ridge. If decay has reached this point the wall must be inclined distally, so as to reach the rod direction, or a frail margin will be left and one which will not sustain the force of mastication. Neglected caries in the lingual pits of incisors often present the same conditions as found in the mar-

ginal ridges of the occlusal surface of molars and bicuspid. The same conditions are also often encountered in the preparation of simple cavities in the mesial or distal surfaces of incisors when



FIG 109—An upper molar showing the position of the section shown in Fig 110

caries has followed the dento-enamel junction toward the lingual. Fig 111 shows a superior central incisor from which sections were cut as indicated. Suppose caries to have begun in the region of the contact point and to have extended to the point *a*. If the lingual enamel wall were prepared at the line *A* (Fig 112) a very frail wall would result. Force coming upon this wall from the lingual by the occlusion of the lower incisors would be likely to break out

or crack a triangular piece of enamel, and the filling would fail along the lingual wall. If however the wall be laid in the line at *B*, a strong wall is produced against which gold can be properly condensed without danger and which will withstand the force of occlusion.



FIG 110—The section ground from Fig 109

Dentists are often tempted to prepare simple cavities in the mesial surfaces of first and second bicuspid and occasionally in the molars. If this is ever done, it must be with the full knowledge

both of the liability of recurrence of caries and the structure of the enamel, for experience shows that such operations usually fail, either by recurrence of caries at the buccogingival or linguogingival angles, or by the breaking out of the enamel of the marginal ridge. Fig. 115 shows the mesial surface of a superior bicuspid. There was a white spot on the contact point, but no actual cavity, as the enamel rods had not fallen out. A section was ground through this point, and Fig. 116 shows a photomicrograph of it. The enamel rods have fallen out of the disintegrated area, and the decalcification in the dentin is shown. If this had been treated as a simple cavity the occlusal wall would have required an inclination of 18 centigrades occlusally from the horizontal plane to reach the enamel-rod direction. There is very little support offered by the dentin for the enamel of the marginal ridge, and the portion over to the occlusal groove would be likely to be broken off by the force of mastication. The conditions of the occlusal wall are better shown in Fig. 117.



FIG 111 —A superior central incisor, showing the position of sections in Figs 112, 113 and 114

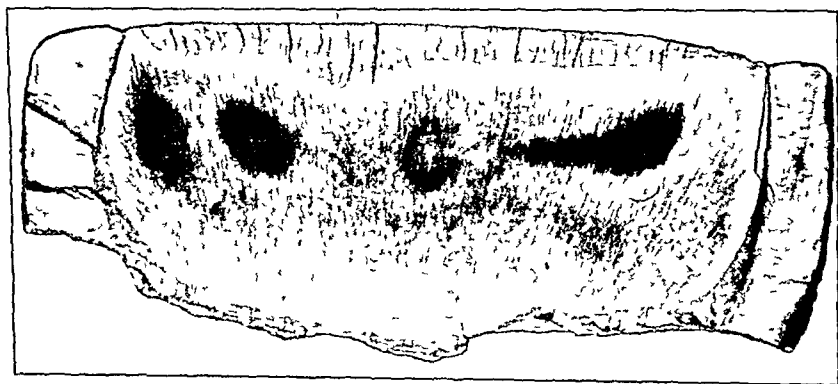


FIG 112 —Section 1, Fig. 111, showing the enamel worn from the marginal ridges

Any number of illustrations of these conditions might be made, but the subject may be summed up by saying. The surface of the enamel from the point directly over the dentin cusp or ridge to the tip of the enamel cusp or ridge, which is an area of great strength in the perfect crown, is a region of weakness for an enamel wall. It is fully as important not to extend into this area unnecessarily

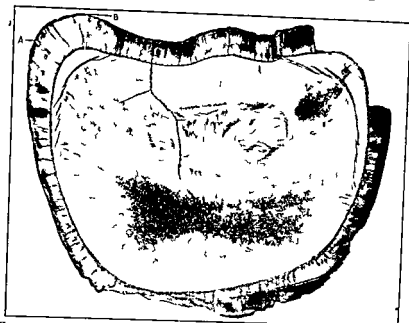


FIG 113 —Section 2 Fig 111 showing position of weak and strong lingual walls

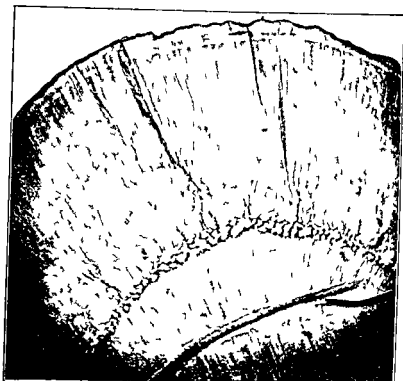


FIG 114 —A higher magnification of the mesial marginal ridge shown in Fig 113 (About 60 X)

as to form the wall proper when caries has extended so as to involve it. When caries of a smooth surface approaches a marginal ridge which receives the force of occlusion, the wall must



FIG. 115.—Occlusal and mesial views of a superior bicuspid, showing position of section. A beginning caries could be seen on the surface, but it does not show well in the picture. The section from the buccal piece is shown in the following illustration.

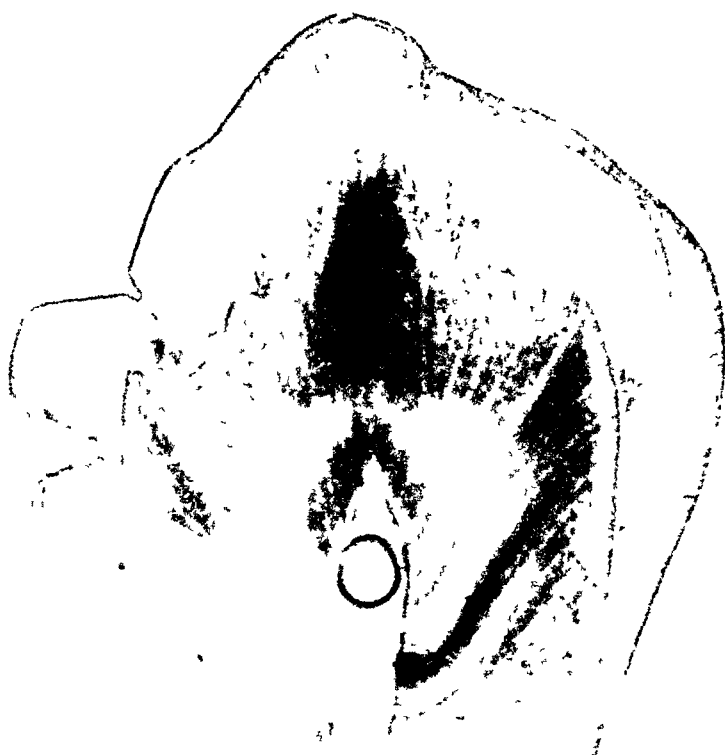


FIG. 116.—Section from the buccal piece of the tooth shown in Fig. 115.

be extended so that the enamel receives full support from sound dentin

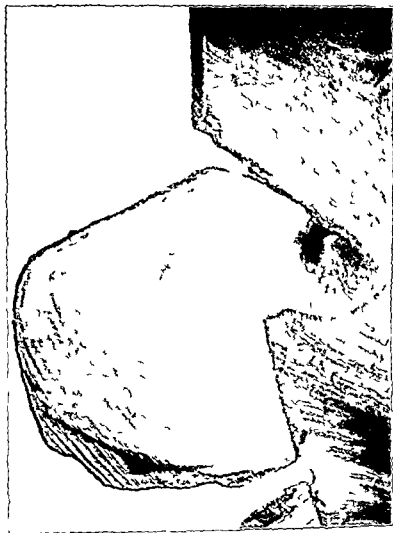


FIG 11 — Shows the relationship of the enamel margin to the oblique groove, how the margin is weakened by the local factors of preparation

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE DENTIN.

THE dentin may be defined as a connective tissue whose inter-cellular substance is calcified. It is apparently homogeneous in structure, but penetrated by minute canals, which contain protoplasmic projections from cells lying within a cavity enclosed by the tissue.

**The Function of the Dentin.**—The dentin makes up the mass of the tooth, giving to it its general form, each cusp and root being indicated in it. It gives to the tooth its elastic strength, and the enamel, being hard and very resistant to abrasion but extremely brittle, is dependent upon the elastic support of the dentin. This has been elaborated to a considerable extent in the chapter on the Dental Tissues. The fact that the dentin gives the strength to the tooth should never be lost sight of in operating, and sound dentin should never be sacrificed unnecessarily in the preparation of cavities.

**Structural Elements of the Dentin.**—The structural elements of the dentin may be stated as—

1. The dentin matrix
2. The sheaths of Newman and the dentinal tubules.
3. The contents of the dentinal tubules or the dentinal fibrils.

While these are the elements of which the tissue is composed, there are other characteristic appearances found in the dentin, caused by special conditions or arrangement of these elements which must be studied. These are the granular layer of Tomes, the interglobular spaces, the lines of Schreger, and secondary dentin.

**Origin of the Tissue (Histogenesis).**—The dentin, like all of the other calcified tissues except the enamel, is a connective tissue, and is formed by the dental papilla, which is a conical papilla of connective tissue rich in bloodvessels and covered on its surface by the layer of dentin-forming cells, the odontoblasts. The dentin is formed from without inward, leaving the remains of the dental papilla in the cavity of the formed dentin as the dental pulp. Before



the tooth is erupted, and up to the time that the full length of the root is formed, a characteristic thickness of dentin is formed, which is called the *primary dentin*. After this time dentin is formed by the pulp only intermittently, in response to irritations and trophic impulses producing *secondary dentin*. Secondary dentin is always more irregular in the arrangement of the tubules and more imperfect in structure than the primary dentin. The boundary line between two periods of dentin formation can always be picked out by changes in the direction or character of the dentinal tubules.

**The Dentin Matrix**—The dentin matrix is a solid apparently homogeneous and very elastic substance through which the dentinal tubules extend. It is translucent in appearance and slightly yellowish in color. In broken or split sections to the unaided eye it has a yellowish color by reflected light and a characteristic luster due to the refraction of light by the tubules. In ground sections, by transmitted light, under the microscope it is very translucent and shows no indication of structure.

The matrix consists of an organic basis of ultimately fibrous character, yielding gelatin on boiling, with which the inorganic salts are chemically combined. The relation of organic and inorganic matter in the dentin matrix is similar to the condition in the bone matrix and that of all calcified connective tissues. Apparently the organic basis is first formed, and then the inorganic salts are combined with it in a weak chemical union. If the dentin is treated with dilute acid the inorganic matter is dissolved and the organic basis is left retaining the form of the tissue. If the organic matter is burned out it leaves the inorganic matter in the characteristic form.

Von Bibra gives the following analysis of perfectly dry dentin

Organic matter	27.61
Fat	0.40
Calcium phosphate and fluoride	66.72
Calcium carbonate	3.36
Magnesium phosphate	1.08
Other salts	0.83

Mr. Charles Tomes pointed out that such analyses as this failed to take account of about 8 per cent. of water which is held as water of combination and which is driven off at about red heat.

It is evident that the organic matter in the dentin is of two kinds—the organic basis of the matrix which is of gelatin yielding character, and the protoplasmic contents of the dentinal tubules. Variations therefore in the proportion of organic and inorganic

matter in the dentin might be caused by differences in the proportions of organic and inorganic constituents of the matrix, or by variations in the size of the tubules and the amount of material contained in them.

If dentin changes in its degree of calcification with age, this might be brought about by the reduction in the size of the tubules, or by the adding of inorganic constituents to the matrix.

The amount of material contained in the dentinal tubules is much greater than is generally realized. If  $2\mu$  is considered the average diameter of the dentinal tubules, and they are separated by an average of  $8\mu$  of dentin matrix. Some idea of the relative volume of the dentin matrix and the contents of the tubules can be obtained, but this is greatly increased by the very numerous side branches which connect the neighboring tubules. This matter can be visualized by taking a lump of soft clay and boring it full of holes, making the holes two inches in diameter, and separated by eight inches of clay.

The ultimately fibrous character of the dentin matrix can be made out only in various stages of decalcification and decomposition. In the original condition no trace of the fibrous character can be seen. By maceration with acids and alkalies the intertubular material assumes a fibrous appearance, as if bundles of white connective-tissue fibers had been fused together. There is apparently no definite arrangement of these fibers and there is no indication of the arrangement of the substance in layers.

**The Sheaths of Newman.**—There has been much discussion as to the character of these structures, which were first discovered in 1863 by Newman. Some investigators have denied their existence entirely, explaining the appearance in some other way. These structures are in no sense a sheath surrounding the dentinal fibril and lying in the dentinal tubule, but are that portion of the matrix which forms the immediate wall of the tubule. That this material differs from that which occupies the rest of the space between the tubules is certain, and is shown by the examination of ground sections, the action of stains upon ground sections, and the action of the matrix when boiled with strong acids and alkalies. In Fig. 118, a photograph of a ground section, there is evidently a difference in the refracting index of the portion of the matrix immediately surrounding the tubules. Apparently the sheaths of Newman are composed of a material similar to that forming elastic connective-tissue fibers, and known as elastin. This substance

is very resistant to the action of acids and alkalis. After the remainder of the intertubular material has been destroyed by boiling with strong acid, the sheaths remain like hollow elastic fibers having the appearance of pipe-stems, which resist long-continued action of the boiling acid. Some authors have suggested that the great elasticity of the dentin was largely due to the presence of this substance.<sup>1</sup>

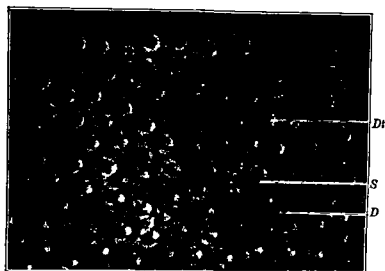


FIG 118 —Dentin showing tubules in cross section. *Dt* dentinal tubules *D* dentin matrix *S* shadow of sheaths of Newman (About 1150 X)

**The Dentinal Tubules**—The dentin matrix is penetrated everywhere by minute branching tubules which radiate from the central cavity or pulp chamber and extend to the outer surface of the dentin at the dento-enamel junction or the dento-cemental junction, where they end blindly or in irregular enlargements. These tubules are from 1.1 to 3 microns in diameter. One hundred measurements<sup>2</sup> made at random from ground sections gave the extreme measurement 3 largest 1.5 smallest and average 2.9. Fifty measurements from one longitudinal section of tubules at their pulpal extremity gave an average of 2.6 largest 3 smallest 1.5, and 50 measurements at the dento-enamel junction of the same section

<sup>1</sup> Hawazawa Tokyo. A Study of the Minute Structure of Human Dentin. Trans. Panama Pacific Dental Congress 1915 p. 80 and Dental Cosmos February and March 1917 vol. 12.

<sup>2</sup> Kolliker gives 5 microns also Schäfer Owen 2.5 microns.

gave the following. Average, 1.2; largest, 1.5, smallest, 0.75. These measurements were made with an eye-piece micrometer, using  $\frac{1}{12}$  oil-immersion objective and No. 3 ocular

At the present time there is a fertile field for investigation offered in regard to the size of dentinal tubules. Many statements have been made that have not been supported by tabulated measurements, and no definite statement can be made as to the variations and size of the dentinal tubules in different teeth, the teeth of different animals, or in the human teeth at different ages

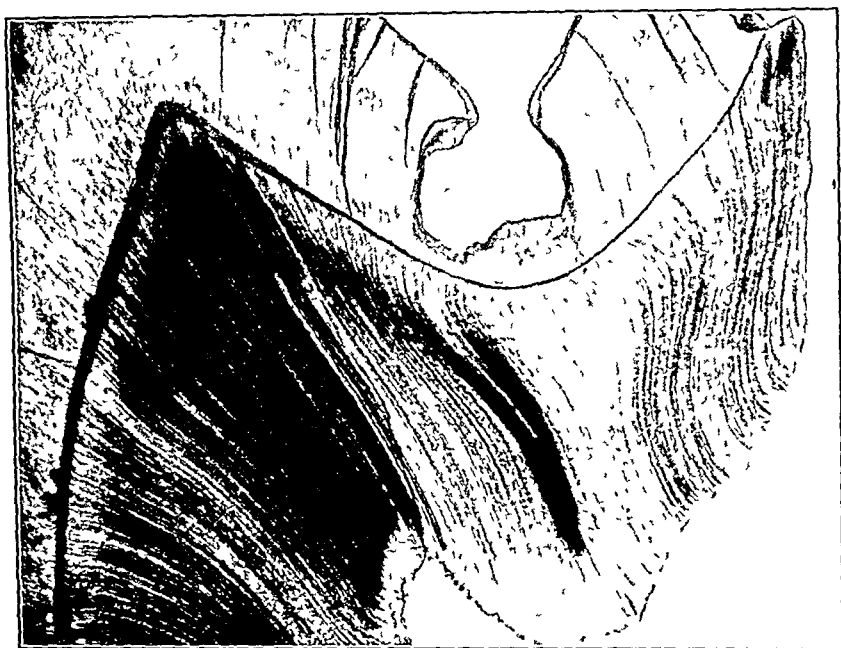


FIG. 119 —A section showing the primary curvatures of the dentinal tubules in the crown portion (About 20 X)

**Direction of Tubules in Crown Portion** —In the crown portion and the gingival portion of the dentin the tubules pass from the pulp chamber to the dento-enamel junction, or the dento-cemental junction, in sweeping curves, which were called by Tomes the primary curvatures. These have been described as *f*- or *S*-shaped (Fig. 119). The tubule tends to enter the pulp chamber at right angles to the surface, and to end at the dento-enamel junction at right angles to that surface. In the dentin forming the axial walls of the pulp chamber the tubules make two bends in passing from the pulp chamber to the surface of the dentin. In the first the convexity is directed apically, in the second it is directed occlusally.

The outer extremity of the tubule is therefore considerably farther to the occlusal than the point at which it opens into the pulp chamber.



FIG. 120—A section of the tooth showing the pulp chamber and root canal. (A) (120 X)

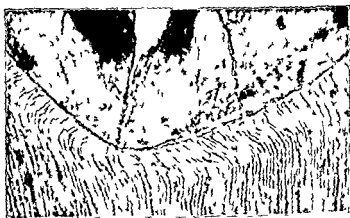


FIG. 121—A section of the tooth showing the pulp chamber and root canal. (A) (120 X)

ber (Fig 120) The outer part of this double curve is often complex instead of simple (Fig 121) The course of the dentinal tubules is not a direct one, but that of an open spiral This may easily be demonstrated by changing the focus up and down in examining sections cut at right angles to the direction of the tubules When examined in longitudinal sections this spiral course gives to the



FIG 122—Dentin at dento-enamel junction, showing tubules cut longitudinally. (About 760 X)

tubule the appearance of having little wavy curves throughout its length These have often been called the secondary curvatures Each wave represents a turn in the spiral. As many as two hundred have been counted in the length of a single tubule, or about one hundred in a millimeter of length

The dentinal tubules give off minute lateral branches, which extend from one tubule to another These are very minute, and

in the crown portion of the dentin are not at all conspicuous but in the region of the dento-enamel junction the tubules branch

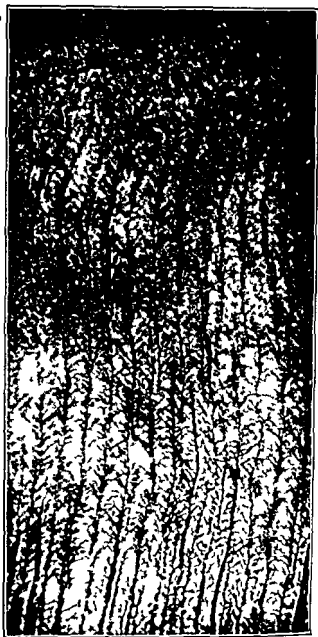


FIG 173.—Dentin from the root showing tubules cut longitudinally and the fine connecting branches (About 700 X)

dichotomously, each fork having about the same diameter as the original tubule (Fig. 122). These forkings of the tubules resemble the appearance of the delta of a river on the map. The branches anastomose with each other very freely. This anastomosis of the tubules at the dento-enamel junction is very important in determining the spreading of caries in this area. It probably also explains the sensitiveness of this area noticed in the preparation of cavities, which will be noted again in considering the sensitiveness of the dentin.



FIG. 121.—Granular layer of Tomes. *L*, lacune of cementum, *GT*, granular layer of Tomes, *Ig*, interglobular spaces. (About 200 X)

**The Dentinal Tubules in the Root Portion**—In the root portion of the dentin the tubules ordinarily show only the secondary curves, their general direction being at right angles to the axis of the pulp canal. Throughout their course they give off an enormous number of very fine branches extending from tubule to tubule. These are



so numerous that in suitably prepared sections they may be said to look like the interlacing twigs of a thicket or the rootlets of plants in the soil. Fig. 123 gives a very good idea of the appearance.

At the dento-cemental junction the tubules end in irregular anastomosing space which cause the appearance of the granular layer of Tomes (Fig. 124).

From a consideration of the preceding it will be seen that it is usually not difficult to determine whether a field of dentin seen under the microscope was taken from the crown or the root of a tooth. The structural characteristics of the two regions may be summarized as follows. In the *crown*, the tubules show both the primary and the secondary curves. In the *root* the tubules show only the secondary curves. In the *crown* the lateral branches are few and inconspicuous and the tubules branch in a characteristic way at the dento-enamel junction. In the *root* the lateral branches are very numerous throughout the length of the tubule and they end in the characteristic spaces of the granular layer of Tomes.

**The Dentinal Fibrils**—In life the dentinal tubules are occupied by protoplasmic projections of the odontoblasts known as the dentinal fibrils or fibers of Tomes. As the dentin matrix is formed and calcified under the influence of the odontoblasts a portion of their protoplasm is left in the tubules of the matrix as the dentinal fibril. These structures were first described by John Tomes who recognized their true character. They may be demonstrated in decalcified sections and they will be seen projecting from the odontoblasts when the pulp is removed from a freshly extracted tooth, by cracking it and picking the pulp out. In this way a portion of the fibril is pulled out of the tubules. The fibrils will be considered more especially in connection with the pulp to which they properly belong.

In the author's opinion very little is positively known about the contents of the dentinal tubules. While it is very apparent that in young forming dentin the tubules are filled by cytoplasmic projections of the odontoblasts it is by no means certain that all of the tubules of the dentin in an old tooth are still occupied by living cytoplasm. What the fate of the cytoplasmic contents of the tubules is when secondary dentin is formed is not known. Several things are theoretically possible but there is little or no direct evidence on the matter.

**The Granular Layer of Tomes.**—The granular layer of Tomes is the outer layer of the dentin next to the cementum. The granular appearance is caused by irregular spaces in the dentin matrix which connect with the ends of the dentinal tubules, and which are filled with protoplasm continuous with that of the fibrils. Tomes first called attention to this layer, and for this reason it bears his name.

With magnifications of from 50 to 100 diameter it is easily seen in ground sections, either longitudinal or transverse, and appears as a layer filled with little dark spots or granules, the spaces which have been filled with the debris of grinding. It is separated from the cementum by a thin, clear layer, apparently of structureless dentin matrix, which is more apparent in higher magnifications. The granular layer is sometimes seen in the crown portion just under the enamel, but it is never as well marked in this position.

The layer is seen in sections ground from freshly extracted teeth as well as from old dry teeth, showing that these are true spaces and are not produced by the shrinkage of partially calcified dentin matrix. Tomes called the spaces in the granular layer "interglobular spaces," but this term should not be used, as the structures generally known as the interglobular spaces are different in location and character, and will be considered later.

The granular layer is not seen in decalcified sections. So far as the author is aware, no one has called attention to this fact before. In decalcified sections stained with hematoxylin and eosin the position of the granular layer is always occupied by a clear layer which takes the stain in an entirely different way from the rest of the dentin matrix, and in which no indication of spaces can be seen. While the fibrils in the tubules through most of the dentin take the hematoxylin stain and can be easily seen, they cannot be followed into this clear layer, and no indication of protoplasmic contents of irregular spaces can be seen.<sup>1</sup>

Dr Skillen has worked out a method of demonstrating the granular layer of Tomes in decalcified sections which is reported in an article by Dr Newton G Thomas in the *Dental Cosmos* for June, 1920.

Most authorities state that the spaces of the granular layer communicate with the canaliculi of the cementum, as well as with the tubules of the dentin. Thus the author has been unable to

<sup>1</sup> The appearance of the tissue in decalcified sections had led to some doubt in the writer's mind as to the interpretation of the character of the layer by authors who have described it.



In the calcification of the dentin matrix the inorganic salts are combined with the organic matrix in spherical areas which become united. The boundaries of these areas of uncalcified matrix are

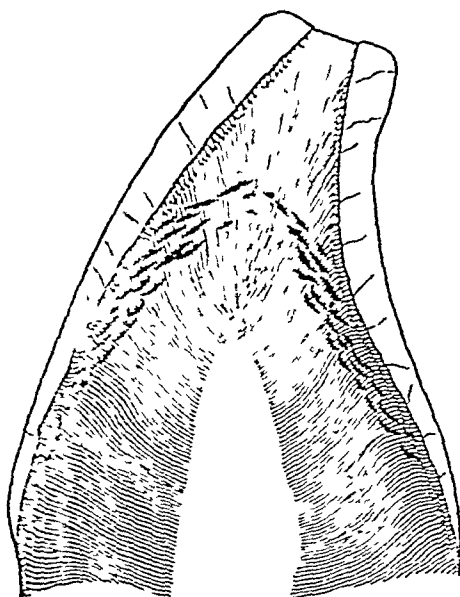


FIG. 125 —A drawing showing a zone of interglobular spaces in the dentin. (Black.)



FIG. 126 —Interglobular spaces in dentin. (About 60 X)

therefore very irregular, and made up of concave facets where they join the spherical surfaces of the fully calcified matrix (Figs. 126 and 127). A study of the illustrations and the appearance

of the laver of forming dentin next to the dental papilla of a developing tooth will make this intelligible

If the dentin is dried the organic matrix in these areas gives up



FIG 127—Interglobular spaces in dentin Some empty some filled with debris (About 80 X)

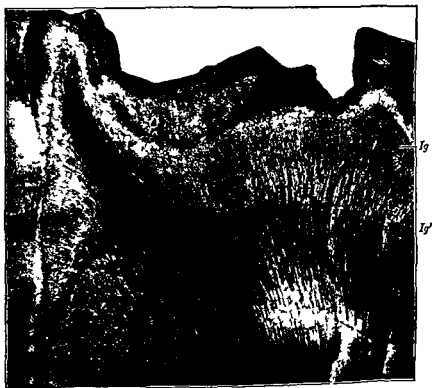


FIG 128—Interglobular spaces in dentin *Ig* first line of interglobular spaces  
*Ig'* second line of interglobular spaces (About 30 X)

water and shrinks, and the interglobular spaces become true spaces, partially filled with the shrunken matrix. In this condition they can be filled with colored collodion or any other material. If, however, they are studied in sections of teeth which have never been allowed to dry, no space appears, and the dentinal tubules continue without change of course or diameter through the area. While they are, therefore, not empty spaces, they are areas of the organic basis of the dentin which are bounded by globular surfaces of the fully calcified matrix, and their name is properly significant.

Zones of interglobular spaces may occur at any portion of the dentin, either in the crown or root, but they are more common in the crown and near the enamel. Often more than one zone can be seen, as in Fig. 128, which shows two disturbances in calcification, and disturbances in the structure of the enamel will be seen at corresponding positions.

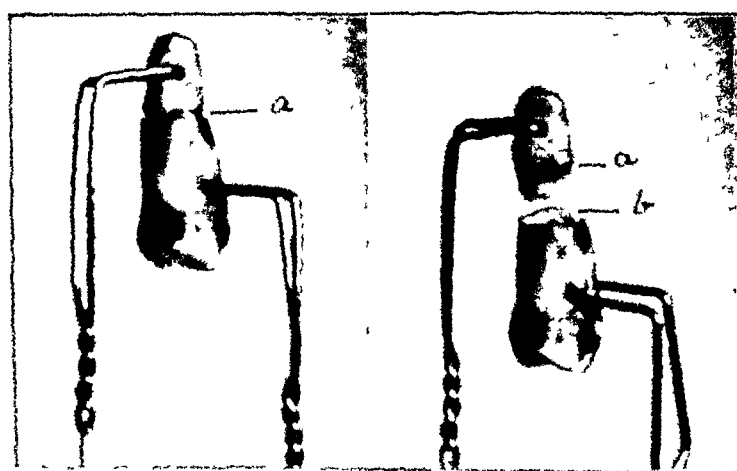


FIG. 128. A root section of a tooth of interglobular spaces. The tooth was extracted by Dr. A. P. Black, and was supplied with spaces extracted by the term of Dr. Black, and the spaces were the last of the tooth (A.P. 13).

The zone of interglobular spaces appear in all grades, from a complete band of uncalcified matrix to widely scattered patches. Fig. 129 shows a tooth in Dr. Black's collection which was broken in section, because of the presence of such a zone in the root.

The interglobular spaces are of great importance in modifying the dentin of the process of calcification in the dentin.

The Lines of Schreger. A number of the interglobular spaces, which are the lines of Schreger, are the lines of Schreger in the literature.

and certain structures which have very different meanings have been called the "lines of Schreger"

An arrest in the formation of dentin often occurs before the crown is completed. When the activity has begun again the dentinal tubules follow a slightly different direction. In a longitudinal section this change in the direction of the tubules produces a line. Several such lines may be seen in a single section, though they are by no means to be found in all longitudinal sections.

Schreger's lines have been most often confused with zones of interglobular spaces, and they seem to be identical with the incremental lines in the dentin described by Owen. It is unfortunate that these names should have been used for a thoughtful study of the tissue makes their interpretation perfectly evident, and they are of no great significance.

**Secondary Dentin**—It is by no means easy to define secondary dentin or to pick out any particular piece of dentin in a section and to say whether it is primary or secondary. In general, the tubules are smaller, fewer, and less regularly arranged in secondary than in primary dentin. In general, it seems that the smaller the remainder of the dental papillæ becomes, the more imperfect dentin it forms, until finally it simply throws down granular calcified material.

The formation of dentin begins at the dento-enamel junction at a number of points in each tooth, and progresses from without inward (strange to say, exactly the opposite statement has been made several times in papers by very prominent men). This matter will be taken up more in detail in the Chapters on Dental Embryology and Dentition. It is enough to say here that in studying all sections of dentin whether cut longitudinally or transversely, the formation of dentin begins at the dento-enamel junction and the dento-cemental junction and progressed toward the pulp chamber.

From the study of longitudinal and transverse sections it is apparent that a certain typical amount of dentin is formed before the tooth is erupted and while it is coming into full occlusion. This is primary dentin. In it the tubules are very regular in size and arrangement. From this time on the formation of dentin is intermittent, and apparently is the response to some outside condition. These conditions may arise in the tooth in which the formation occurs or the irritation of one tooth may cause tissue formation in all or part of the others. It has not been determined whether such reflex trophic stimuli are confined to the same lateral half or

the same nerve distribution. Apparently the formation of dentin proceeds again, after a pause, in all teeth. It will seem, therefore, that the mere exposure of the entire crown to conditions of thermo-change produces sufficient stimulus to the pulp tissue to cause a renewal of dentin formation. After the first period of rest the dentin formed in the second period is so nearly identical, and the direction of the tubules so nearly the same, that it is usually impossible to recognize the junction except at a few points in the circum-

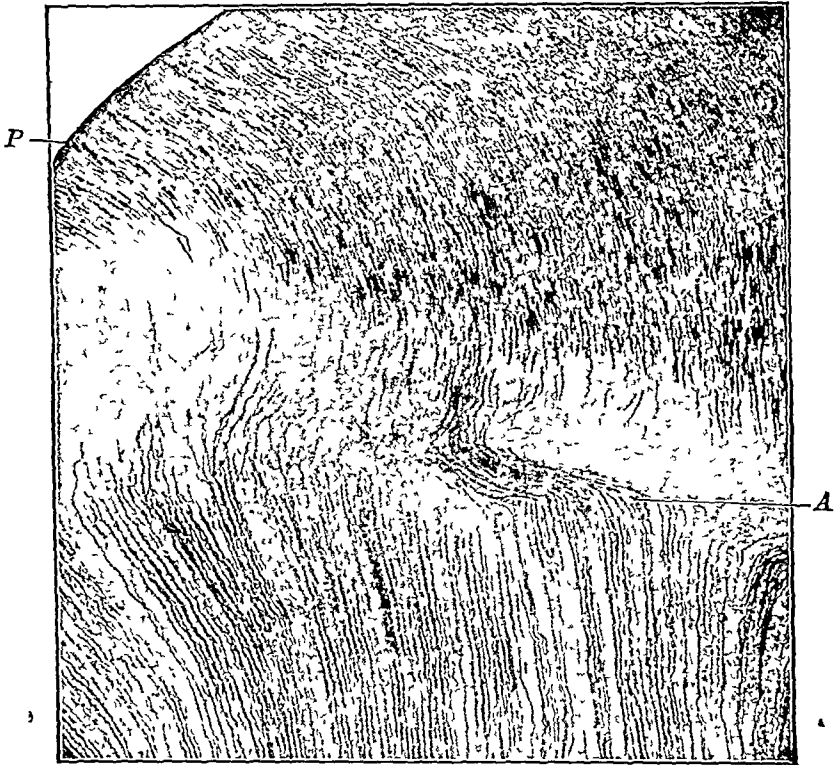


FIG 130 —Secondary dentin. *A*, margin of primary dentin, showing a few of the tubules continuing into secondary dentin, *P*, pulp chamber. (About 80  $\times$ )

ference of a transverse section. After each period of rest, however, the difference in structure between the succeeding portions becomes more marked. Fig. 130 shows an area from a longitudinal section when the line *A* was the pulpal wall of the dentin. There was probably a considerable period of rest, when for some reason a new formation of dentin was begun. But apparently only some of the odontoblasts took part in the new formation of dentin matrix, for not nearly all of the tubules are continued, and those that do continue show a sharp change in their direction and a difference in diameter and character (Figs. 131 and 132).



These characteristic changes in the structure of the dentin that is formed as the pulp becomes smaller seem to the author of great practical importance

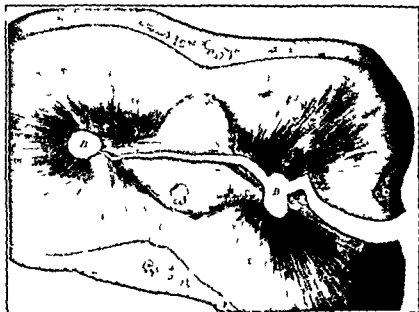


FIG. 131—A longitudinal section of a root showing the relation in the size of the pulp as the dentin formation proceeds. 'D' points at which the changes in the direction of the dentin tubules show dentin formed at different periods. 'C' cementum thicker and thinner in the thickness of the dentin also the number of lacunae, etc.

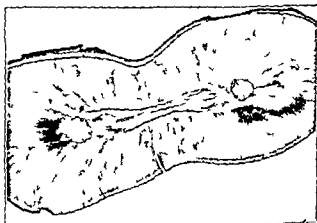


FIG. 132—A transverse section of a root showing changes in the form of the pulp cavity by the formation of secondary dentin.

Lady Doctor,  
*Walter Zenana Hospital,*  
UDAIPUR.

## CHAPTER XII.

### THE CEMENTUM.

THE cementum may be defined as a connective tissue whose intercellular substance is calcified and arranged in layers (lamellæ) around the circumference of a tooth root, the cells being found in spaces (lacunæ) irregularly placed in or between the layers.

Structurally the cementum is more closely related to the subperiosteal bone than any other tissue, the only differences being that in general the lacunæ in bone are much more uniform in size, shape, arrangement of the canaliculi, and their position with reference to the lamellæ than those in cementum. In bone the lacunæ are usually found between the lamellæ. In cementum the lacunæ may be between the lamellæ, but they are more often enclosed within their substance and they are found most often where the lamellæ are thick.

Some writers have described Haversian canals in the cementum, but the author has never seen anything that could properly be called an Haversian canal in the cementum from human teeth. Canals containing bloodvessels are not uncommon, but in these the lamellæ are never arranged concentrically around the canal, as they are in Haversian systems. For the last fifteen years the author has had under personal observation each year, in the course of class work, not less than 200 longitudinal sections, and 300 transverse sections of the root, ground from human teeth, and in that time he has never seen what could be called an Haversian canal. In the same time he has examined many hundreds of sections cut through the decalcified jaws of various mammals, including the sheep, pig, cat, and dog, with the same negative result.

**Function**—The function of the cementum is to attach to the tooth the connective-tissue fibers which hold it in position and support the surrounding tissues.

The formation of cementum begins as soon as the tooth begins to erupt, and continues, at least intermittently, as long as the tooth remains in place, whether it contains a live pulp or not.

The function of the cementum cannot be too strongly empha-

sized, and must be continually borne in mind. If, for any reason, the tissues are detached from the surface of the root, they can only be reattached by the formation of a new layer of cementum on the surface of the root, which will embed the surrounding connective tissue fibers. In order to accomplish this the tissues must be in physiologic contact with the surface of the root, and the connective-tissue cells must be actively functional.

That the tissues may be reattached to the surface of a root is both theoretically possible and clinically demonstrable but for it to occur biological laws must be observed and the conditions are very difficult to control especially with the old methods involving the excessive use of strong antiseptics. It is well to remember 'that a dentist can never cure a suppurating pocket along the side of a tooth root' but if the conditions can be controlled the cells of the tissue may form a new layer of cementum reattaching the tissues and so close the pocket. It is a biological problem, not a matter of drugs, except as they are a means of producing cellular reaction.

In view of its function therefore the cementum becomes not the least but the *most* important of the dental tissues for no matter how perfect the crown may be without firm attachment the tooth becomes useless and is soon lost.

**Histogenesis**—The cementum is formed by connective-tissue cells lying between the fibers of the tissue which clothes the surface of the root and which becomes specialized for this function. Their origin is undoubtedly similar to that of the osteoblasts but they are not osteoblasts either morphologically or functionally, as will be seen later in the study of the periodontal membrane, where the cementoblasts and the formation of cementum will be considered.

**Structural Elements**—The structural elements of the cementum are

- 1 The lamellæ
- 2 The lacunæ and canaliculi
- 3 The cement corpuscles
- 4 The embedded fibers of the periodontal membrane

**The Lamellæ of the Cementum and Their Arrangement**—The lamellæ of the cementum resemble those of bone but they are very much more irregular both in thickness and appearance. They may be extremely thin and almost transparent or they may be quite thick and coarsely granular. They are not nearly as easily observed as those of bone for in bone the lamellæ are marked off

by the lacunæ which lie between them, while in cementum the lacunæ may be entirely absent, and when present are irregularly placed.

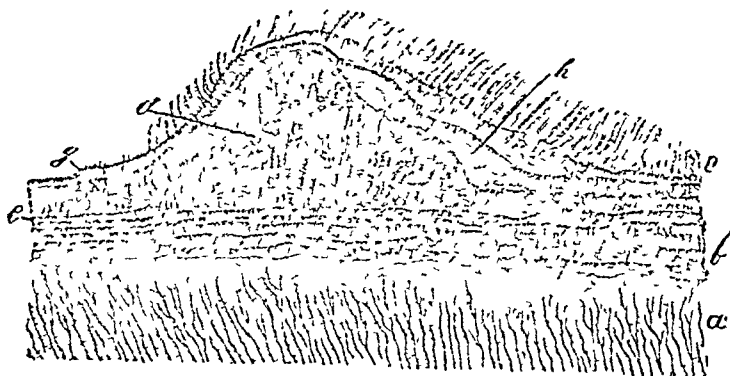


FIG 133—Hypertrophy of the cementum on the side of the root of a lower molar near the neck of the tooth. From a lengthwise section human, *a*, dentin, *b*, cementum, *c*, fibers of periodontal membrane. From *b* to *c* the cementum is normal and the incremental lines fairly regular, but at *d* one of the lamellæ is greatly thickened. At *c* this lamella is seen to be about equal in thickness with the others. The next two lamellæ are thin over the greatest prominence, but one is much thickened at *g*, and both at *h*. These latter seem to partially fill the valleys which were occasioned by the first irregular growth. (1 in. obj.)

In the gingival portion of the root the lamellæ are always thin and very transparent, and lacunæ are seldom seen. The entire thickness of the tissue is transparent, and the appearance of the

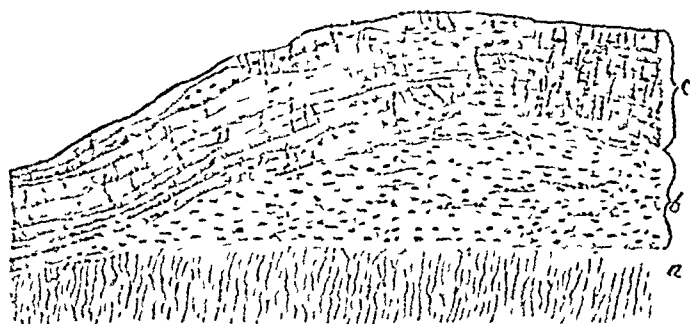


FIG 131—Hypertrophy from root of cuspid human, in which the irregularity is confined to the first lamella. *a*, dentin, *b*, thickened first lamella, *c*, subsequent lamellæ, which are seen to be fairly regular. (1 in. obj.)

lamellæ can be seen only by using a very small diaphragm or oblique illumination. In this position the tissue is largely made up of embedded connective-tissue fibers, which are, however, so perfectly

calcified that they cannot be demonstrated in ground sections. In decalcified sections they are very easily seen.

The cementum becomes gradually thicker in the middle third of the root, and is thickest in the apical third. It will be seen that this increase in thickness is caused chiefly by the greater thickness of each individual lamella. In longitudinal sections the cementum

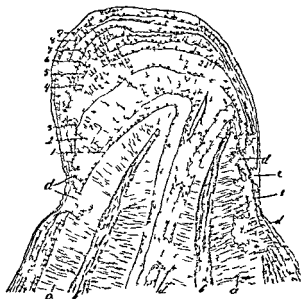


FIG. 135.—Apex of root of an upper bicupid tooth with irregularly developed cementum. *a a* dentin. *b b* pulp canals. The lamellae of cementum are marked 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9. *d d d* absorption areas that have been refilled with cementum. It will be seen that the apices of the roots were originally separate but became fused with the deposit of the second lamella of cementum and that in this the irregular growth began and was most pronounced. It has continued through the subsequent lamellae but in less degree. It will also be noticed that the absorption areas *d d d* have proceeded from certain lamellae. That between the roots has broken through the first lamella and penetrated the dentin and has been filled with the deposit of a second lamella. Other of the absorptions have proceeded from lamellae which can be readily made out. The small points *c* seem to have been filled with the deposit of the last layer of the cementum while others have on two or more layers covering them. (2 in. obj.)

is often found becoming suddenly thicker at a certain point, and if examined closely it will be seen that each layer is continued apically, but with greater thickness. Fig. 135 illustrates this condition near the apex of the root. From a study of the lamellae therefore it is apparent that the entire root is clothed with successive layers and that these layers are formed intermittently but continue to be formed as long as the tooth is in position. In a general way the

number of layers is an index to the age of the person at the time the tooth was extracted (Figs 136 and 137) The rate of formation is not uniform, for instance, a number of layers may be formed within a short time, and again; a considerable time may elapse between the formation of one layer and the next The time, however, does not seem to determine the thickness of the layer.

If a considerable number of teeth of persons of twenty years of age were sectioned, the lamellæ counted, and this number compared with the number found in teeth extracted from persons of forty,

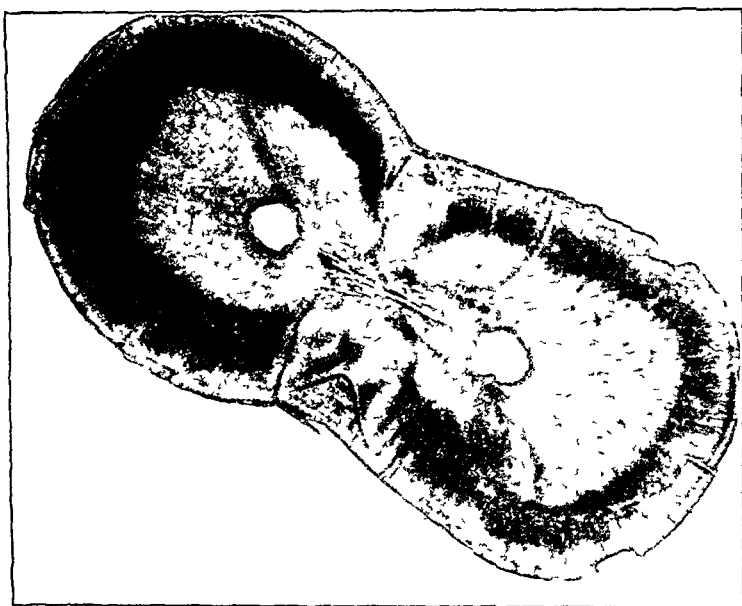


FIG 136 —A transverse section of a root extracted from a young person The cementum is thin, but is thicker in the grooves on the proximal sides

a fairly regular increase in the number of layers will be noticed, and so on, for fifty, sixty, seventy, or eighty years

It is important to remember in connection with this formation of cementum that the teeth move, more or less, under the influence of natural forces throughout life, and that every slight change in position must be accomplished by the formation of a new layer of cementum, to reattach connective-tissue fibers in new positions or adjust them to new directions of strain.

The first layer of cementum is formed while the tooth is still in its crypt, but apparently no connective-tissue fibers are calcified into it. This forms the first apparently clear and structureless

layer which lies next to the granular layer of Tomes (Fig 138). Even in the teeth the entire length of whose roots are formed before they begin to erupt there is no attachment until some stress comes upon the crown. The tooth is lying loose in its crypt and can be picked out with very little force. Bicuspsids are often accidentally extracted in the extraction of temporary molars. As soon as

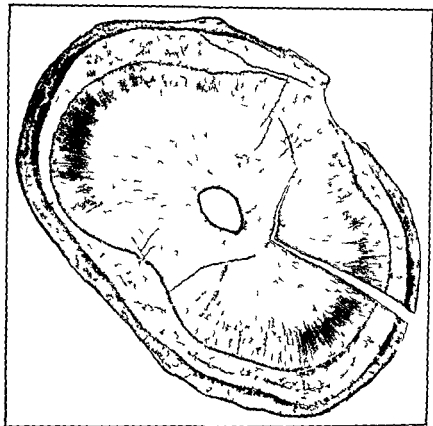


FIG 137 —A transverse section of a root from an old person. The root had carried a crown for many years. The section was cracked and one edge broken.

the tooth comes through the gum a new layer of cementum is formed over the entire root, attaching the fibers to its surface, and as the tooth moves occlusally layer after layer is formed. This will be considered again in connection with the periodontal membrane.

**The Lacunæ and Canaliculi** —The lacunæ of the cementum correspond with the lacunæ of bone. They differ from those of bone,

however, in that they are more irregular in shape, size, position, and relation to the lamellæ, and in the number and direction of the canaliculi radiating from them. In bone the lacunæ are fairly regular in shape, the long diameter exceeding the short diameter by about one-third. Sections cut through their long axis give an oval outline, the length of which is about three times as great as the width. Sections cut through their short axis give an oval outline, the long diameter being about twice that of the short. The spaces are therefore flattened between the lamellæ. In

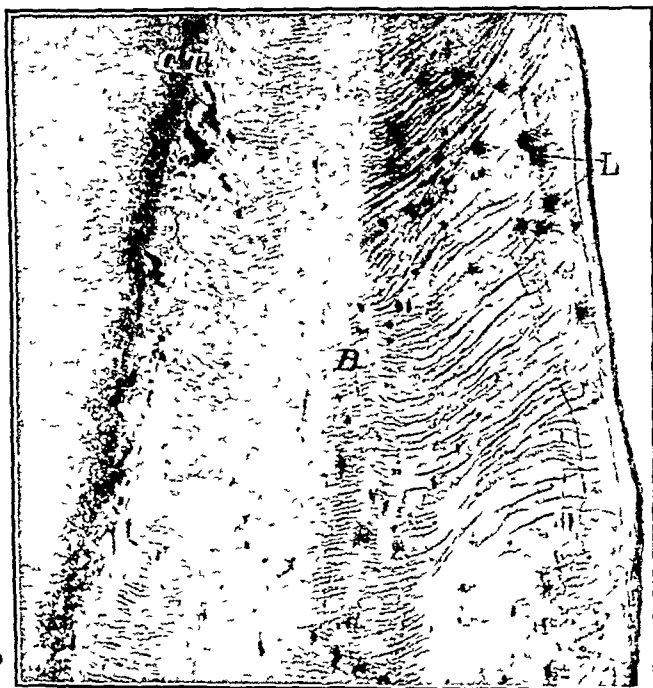


FIG 138 —Cementum near the apex of the root GT, granular layer of Tomes, L, lacunæ, B, point at which fibers were cut off and reattached (About 54 X)

cementum there is no regularity whatever, either in size or in shape. Some are a little larger than the lacunæ in bone, some are very much smaller. They may be almost exactly the shape of typical bone lacunæ or they may be distorted into almost any form, sometimes being almost stellate, often pear-shaped, sometimes round, and occasionally pyramidal. The lacunæ of bone are fairly uniformly placed, and lie between one lamella and the next<sup>1</sup>. There is no

<sup>1</sup> This is not absolutely correct, there being much more irregularity in the arrangement of the lacunæ in thick subperiosteal bone than in either cancellous or Haversian system bone. To be strictly accurate, the above statement must be limited to Haversian system bone (Plate XIII).



regularity in the relation of the lacunæ of the cementum to the lamella. They sometimes lie between one lamella and the next, but they are more often entirely in the substance of one. They occur only where the lamella are thick, and there may be large areas with considerable aggregate thickness of cementum in which there are no lacunæ at all.

The number and direction of the canaliculi which radiate from the lacunæ of cementum is extremely irregular, but in general there are more extending from the lacunæ toward the surface than toward the dentin.

**The Cement Corpuscles** — The cement corpuscles correspond exactly to bone corpuscles. They are the cells found in the lacunæ. These are simply embedded cementoblasts and are typical connective-tissue cells. They are made up of granular cytoplasm and contain a faintly staining nucleus. Extensions of the protoplasm undoubtedly extend into the canaliculi. These cells bear the same relation to the matrix of the cementum that bone corpuscles do to that of bone. What this is, is not known in any definite way, but it is known that when bone corpuscles are killed or die, the matrix becomes a foreign body, and is either absorbed or cut off from the portion in which the corpuscles are living to be absorbed or cast out as a sequestrum. The same conditions are true of cementum. For instance, there are many cement corpuscles in the lacunæ in the region of the apex of the root. If this portion be bathed in pus for a long time, the cement corpuscles are killed, and the tissue becomes saturated with poisonous materials, so that tissue cells cannot lie in contact with it and live. In order to restore a healthy condition the necrosed cementum must be removed mechanically until tissue is reached with which cells may lie in physiological contact without injury. Conditions which can only be understood through a knowledge of the structure of the tissue often arise in connection with the treatment of alveolar abscess. It should always be remembered that the treatment of an abscess is a biological problem.

**The Embedded Fibers of the Periodontal Membrane** — The embedded fibers of the periodontal membrane are in the strictest sense comparable with the fibers of Sharpe in bone. They are, however, in many places much more perfectly calcified. To appreciate the relation of the embedded fibers to the matrix, the tissue must be studied both in ground and decalcified sections. For instance, in the gingival portion from the study of ground sections, the presence of embedded fibers would never be suspected, but if decalcified

sections are studied it will be found to be almost entirely composed of calcified fibers. In the middle and apical thirds of the root, where the lamellæ are thicker, the calcification of these fibers is often not as perfect as that of the rest of the matrix. In the preparation of ground sections, therefore, the imperfectly calcified fibers

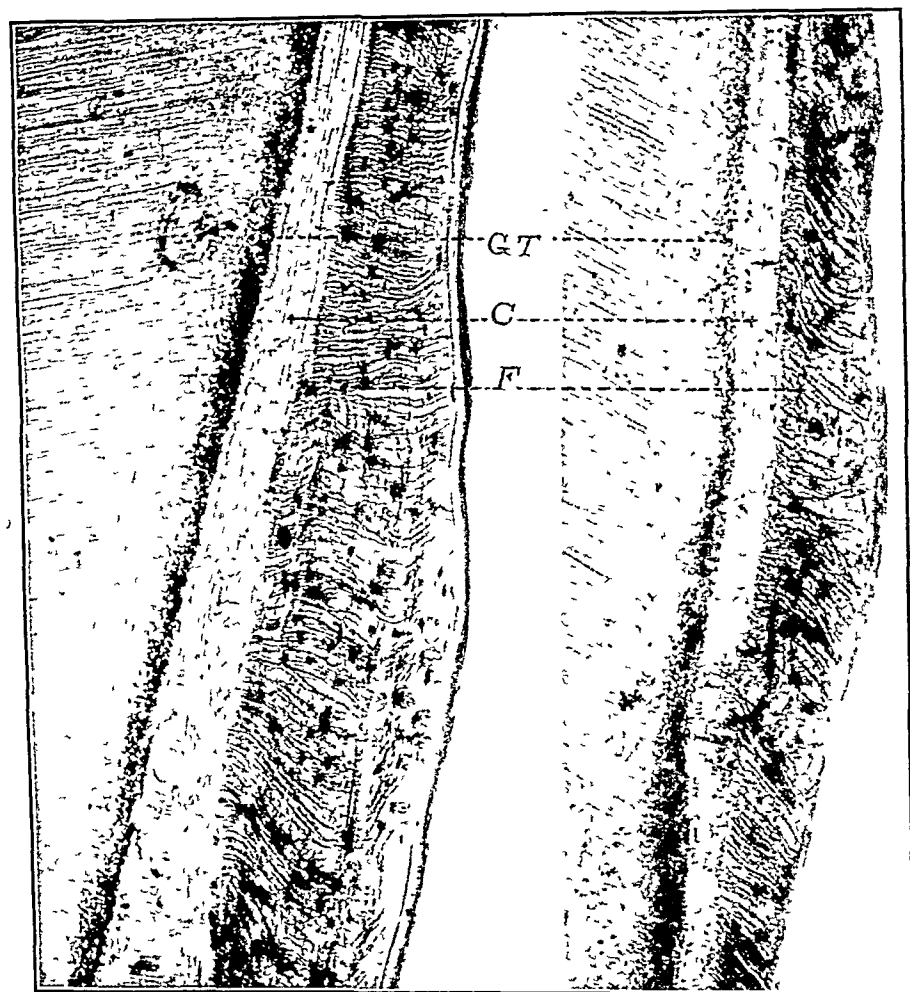


FIG. 139 — Two fields of cementum showing penetrating fibers. GT, granular layer of Tomes, C, cementum not showing fibers, F, penetrating fibers. (About 54 X)

shrink and consequently appear as canals in the cementum. In fact, they have often been mistaken for canals. They are usually not seen unless the section happens to cut in their direction. These will be seen in many of the illustrations of cementum. In Fig 138 several layers are seen next to the dentin, in which no fibers appear,

then in several layers the fibers are plainly seen and finally, the surface layers show no fibers. This probably means that before and after these layers were formed there was a change in the position

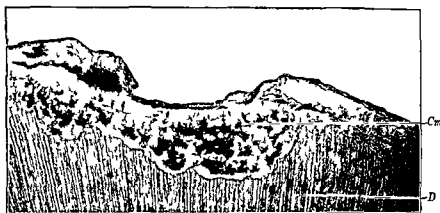


FIG 140—Record in the calcified tissue of an absorption repaired. *D* dentin. *Cm* cementum filling absorption cavity. (About 40 X)

of the tooth and the fibers were all cut off in this area and reattached in a new direction, adapting them to the new directions of strain



FIG 141—Thick lamellae of cementum with many lacunae filling an absorption in dentin. *L* lacunae. *H* Howship's lacunae filled. *D* dentin. (About 250 X)

It is often necessary to study ground sections very closely to determine whether certain appearances are embedded fibers or canaliculi radiating from the lacunae. The appearance of these fibers should

be studied in Fig. 139. It should be noted that wherever special stress is exerted upon a bundle of fibers the cementum is thick around them. This may be seen in decalcified sections in Figs. 204, 231 and Plate XVII and in ground sections in Figs. 138 and 139. When the next layer is formed, if the fibers are cut off, the additional thickness of the last layer is removed. The unequal thickness of the last formed layer is not usually seen in the layers beneath it to as great an extent.

**Absorption and Repair of the Cementum.**—From what has already been said about the cementum, it will be understood that this tissue is continually undergoing changes, that new layers are being added, and that often before an addition is made there is absorption enough of it at least to cut off the fibers. When an absorption occurs on the side of a root which cuts into the dentin, the excavation in the dentin may be filled by the cementum subsequently formed (Figs. 140 and 141). From a study of ground sections in class work such absorptions are not uncommon. They probably occur when the cusps first come into occlusion in eruption.

## CHAPTER XIII

### DENTAL PULP

**Definition**—The dental pulp may be defined as the connective tissue occupying the central cavity of the dentin

It is composed of embryonal connective tissue which is more closely related to the tissue occupying the spaces of cancellous bone than to any other

**Functions**—The functions of the dental pulp are

- 1 A vital function, the formation of dentin
- 2 A sensory function responding to thermal and chemical change and traumatic irritation

**Vital Function**—The vital function is the formation of dentin and is performed by the layer of odontoblasts. These cells also by means of their dentinal fibrils, maintain the same relation to the dentin matrix that the bone and cement corpuscles bear to the matrix of bone and cementum. When the pulp is removed from a tooth its dentin becomes dead dentin in the same sense that bone in which the bone corpuscles have been killed is necrosed bone. That there is a constant reaction between the protoplasm of the odontoblasts and the substance of the dentin matrix, or that the presence of the living protoplasm is necessary to prevent degeneration of the matrix is evidenced by the changes in the physical properties of the dentin after the pulp has been lost. That the tooth remains functional after the loss of the pulp is due to the fact that except at the minute foramina the dentin is not in physiologic contact with any tissue excepting enamel and cementum, and that the cementum attaches the tooth to the surrounding tissues, receiving its nourishment from the surface and not from the dentin.

When the pulp is removed and its place filled by a non irritating material the dentin becomes entirely encased in cementum the foramina probably being covered over as the subsequent lamellæ are formed. The author wishes to emphasize however, the vital relations of the pulp to the dentin matrix. Dead dentin is never as good as living dentin, consequently a tooth from which the pulp has been removed can never be considered just as good as one with the living pulp.

The production of the dentin matrix is, of course, the principal part of the vital function of the pulp. It is begun in the development of the tooth before the dental papilla is converted into the dental pulp, by being enclosed in the dentin formed. After the tooth is fully formed the pulp retains its ability to build dentin matrix as long as it retains vitality, but this function is exercised only in response to conditions of environment which are probably excited through the intervention of its sensory function responding to thermal change and chemical irritation. The sensory function causes a trophic impulse which is manifested by the production of another portion of dentin matrix reducing the size of the pulp chamber. That this is a reflex and not purely a local matter is indicated by the fact that formations of dentin occur in one tooth when the irritation is in another, and apparently the irritation of one tooth will excite dentin formation in all of the teeth on that side, at least in some instances. On the other hand, purely local responses are found where a few odontoblasts respond to the irritation of their fibrils by the formation of dentin.

This matter has been referred to under the heading of Secondary Dentin, and it is best studied by the record it leaves in the formed tissue.

*The Sensory Function.*—In regard to sensation, the pulp resembles an internal organ, as in its normal condition it is always enclosed in the cavity of the dentin. It has no sense of touch or localization, and responds to stimuli only by sensations of pain. The pain is usually located correctly with reference to the median line, but apart from that it is located only as it is referred to some known lesion. If several pulps were exposed on the same side of the mouth, and in teeth of both the upper and lower arches, so that they could be irritated without impressions reaching the peridental membrane, if the patient were blindfolded it would be impossible for him to tell which of the pulps was touched. This characteristic becomes extremely important in diagnosis.

The pain originating from a tooth pulp may be referred to the wrong tooth or to almost any point on the same side supplied by the fifth cranial nerve.

The dental pulp is especially sensitive to changes in temperature, amounting almost to a temperature sense, having no exact parallel in any other tissue of the body. This does not amount to a recognition of heat or cold as such, but a special resentment to sudden changes. For instance, if a tooth is isolated and so protected by

non-conductors that the soft tissues cannot be stimulated and a jet of hot and then cold water be thrown upon its crown it will respond to each with a sharp sensation of pain, but the patient cannot tell which is hot and which is cold. It is the sudden change that produces the reaction. This is the basis of very important differential diagnosis for as is true with most organs, in pathologic conditions its sensory function is exaggerated.

**Histogenesis** The dental pulp is the remains of the dental papilla the dental papilla for the temporary teeth appearing in the mesodermal tissue of the jaw arches very early in fetal life. The cellular elements are at first very closely placed and large but they grow smaller and take on the typical form of pulp cells as the intercellular substance is increased. By the sixteenth week the dental papilla for the temporary teeth are covered by a layer of tall columnar cells which will begin the formation of dentin about that time. After the beginning of dentin formation the transition from the dental papilla to the dental pulp is very gradual, and it would be impossible to draw any sharp line of demarcation between them.

**Structural Elements**—The structural elements of the dental pulp are

1. Odontoblasts
2. Connective tissue cells
3. Intercellular substance
4. Blood vessel
5. Nerves
6. Lymphatic vessels

**The Odontoblasts** The odontoblasts are tall columnar cells which form the outer layer of the pulp adjacent to the dentin and from which cytoplasmic fibrils extend into the dentinal tubules.

The character of the odontoblasts changes very greatly with the age of the tissue and the activity of dentin formation. While the primary dentin is being formed they are tall columnar cells, each containing a large oval nucleus rich in chromatin and located in the pulp at third of the cell. From the dentinal end of the cell cytoplasm is continued without any line of demarcation, into the dentinal tubule as the dentinal fibril. In some instances two fibrils may be sent from a single odontoblast. The character of the odontoblast is beautifully seen in Fig. 142 a photograph by Professor Rose.

After the tooth is erupted but while the formation of dentin is actively going on the odontoblasts while somewhat smaller

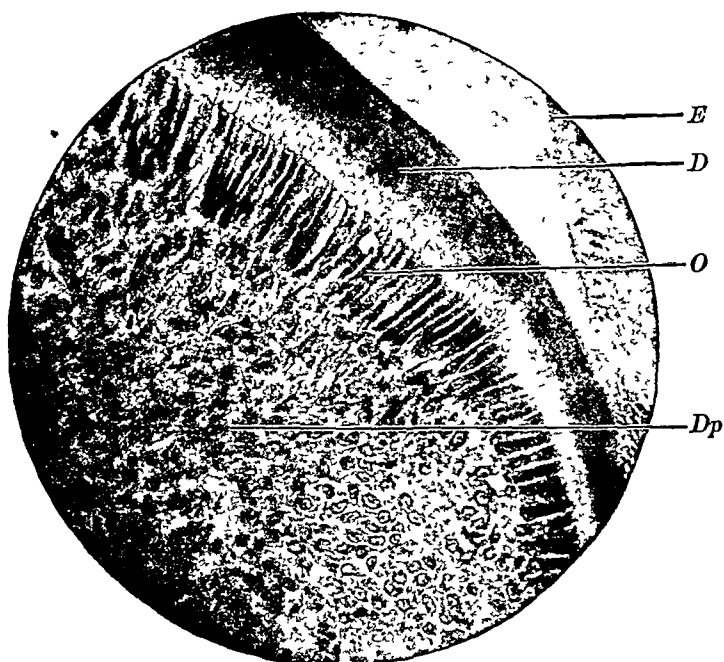


FIG 142 —Odontoblasts and forming dentin *E*, forming enamel, *D*, forming dentin, *O*, odontoblasts, *Dp*, body of dental papilla (From photomicrograph by Rose)

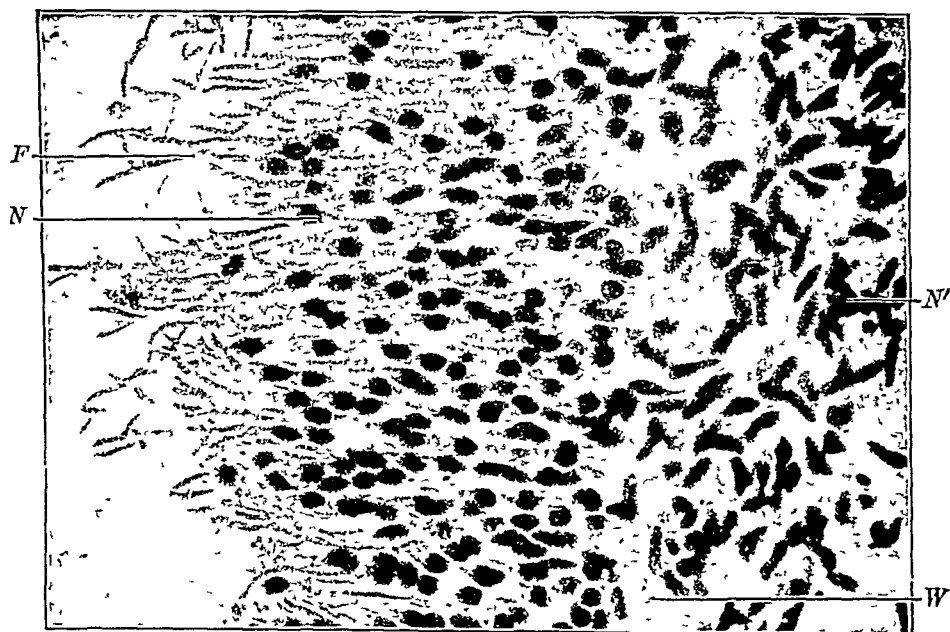


FIG 143 —Odontoblasts The section cuts obliquely through the odontoblasts. *F*, fibrils, *N*, nuclei of odontoblasts, *N'*, nuclei of connective-tissue cells, *W*, layer of Weil, not well shown (About 80 X)



retain the same typical appearance. They may be easily demonstrated either in decalcified sections or by removing pulps from the pulp chamber of freshly extracted teeth. Professor Salter has described two sets of processes besides (Fig 144) the dentinal fibril process. As a result of teasing the fresh pulps, he considered that fine projections of the cytoplasm extended from the sides of the cells uniting them to the adjoining odontoblasts (Fig 144). These he called the lateral processes. He also described cytoplasmic projections from the pulpal end of the odontoblasts into the layer of Weil. It is probable that these appearances were the result of teasing, and are not true structural characteristics, as the work of other investigators has not confirmed their presence. It is easy to understand how teasing the cells apart might produce appearances which might be interpreted as processes, but careful work upon sections does not show their presence.

In old pulps where the formation of dentin has been intermittent and very infrequent for a long time, the odontoblasts are smaller, lose their columnar form more or less, and become pear-shaped or globular.

As dentin is one of the most highly specialized connective tissues, the odontoblasts are among the most highly differentiated connective-tissue cells. They are the only connective tissue cells of columnar form. Morphologically, they are very similar to columnar epithelium but epithelial cells never have such processes as the dentinal fibrils. Occasionally, in young and actively growing bone, osteoblasts are found which are distinctly columnar in form but they are never as tall as the odontoblasts and the nucleus is more nearly in the center of the cell. In the case of the osteoblast the cytoplasmic processes which extend into the canaliculi correspond to the dentinal fibril process of the odontoblast. The homologies between the



FIG 144 —Diagram of odontoblasts and dentinal fibrils (C. H. Stowell.)

osteoblasts and the odontoblasts have often been lost sight of in the discussions over the character of the latter and their relation to the formation and sensitiveness of the dentin.

**The Membrana Eboris.**—The odontoblasts form a single layer of cells on the surface of the pulp in contact with the dentin. This layer was very early recognized to be related to the formation of the dentin, and was called the *membrana eboris*, or the membrane of the ivory. The name has no importance now except as it is found in the literature.

**Size of the Odontoblasts.**—From what has been said it will be recognized that the size and shape of the odontoblasts vary greatly in different sections. This is true not only of pulps from different animals, and pulps at different periods of development, but of different parts of the same pulp. In the coronal portion of a pulp from a fully developed tooth, but one in which the formation of dentin is still going on, the average measurements would be about  $5\mu$  in diameter and 25 to  $30\mu$  in height. During early stages of dentin formation, before the crown is fully formed, they are considerably larger and taller, and in the pulps of a calf they are much larger than in smaller animals and man. In a constricted pulp, as, for instance, in the mesial root of a lower first molar, the odontoblasts on the constricted sides will be shorter and relatively thicker than on the buccal and lingual, where the long axis of the cell is in the direction of the long diameter of the pulp, but this simply means that the formation of dentin on the constricted side is relatively farther advanced than on the buccal and lingual, and the cells show older phases. It is evident that the supply of nourishment to the cells in the constricted portions is more imperfect, and that the ones farthest from the main vessels are most affected, so that dentin formation is slowed and made more imperfect here, while it still continues in full vigor around the expanded portions of the pulp. This has been spoken of in connection with the study of the dentin (see Figs. 131 and 132).

**Origin of the Odontoblasts.**—The odontoblasts are specialized connective-tissue cells. It is therefore to be expected that they should be formed from undifferentiated connective-tissue cells, as osteoblasts are formed from similar cells of the inner layer of the periosteum and embryonal cells of the tissue filling the cancellous and marrow spaces. The odontoblasts are therefore developed from embryonal cells deeper in the pulp which take their place in the odontoblastic layer. This probably explains the appearance

of some sections, and also the author believes, the views of some men in regard to the odontoblasts and the dentinal fibrils. In some sections from old pulps the odontoblasts seem to be in an incomplete layer, and their form is more like that of typical connective-tissue cells.

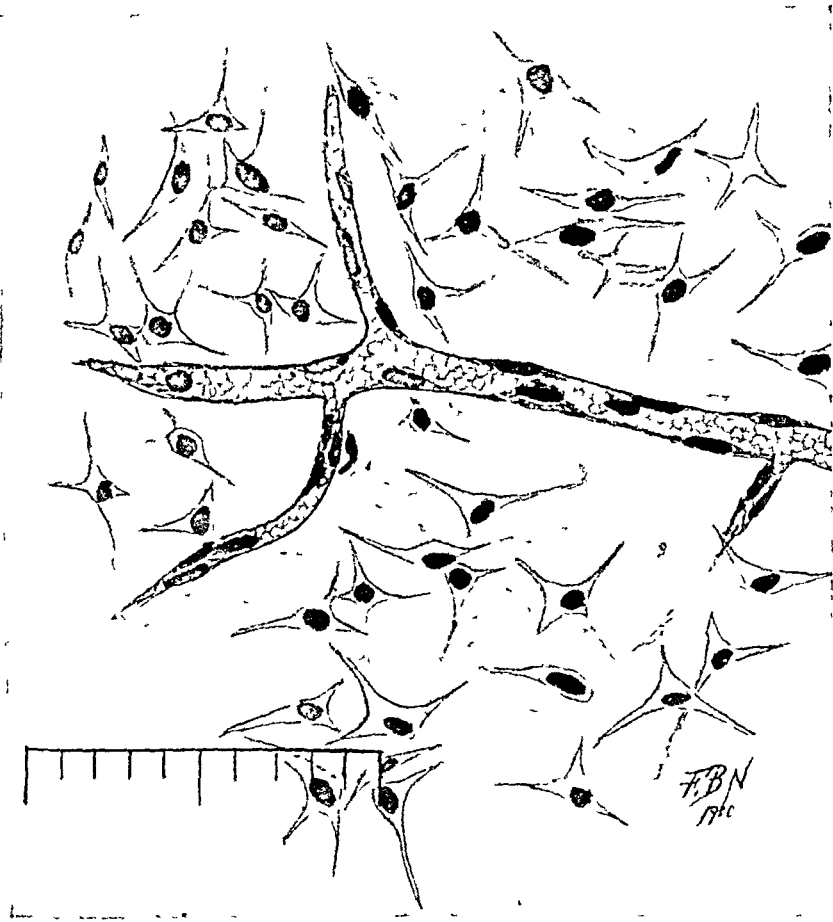
In considering the origin of the odontoblasts it should be noted that in the first differentiation of these cells in the embryo they appear first where epidermal cells (inner tunic of the enamel organ) are in contact with mesodermal cells (the outer layer of the dental papilla). This is true in the formation of the entire length of the root—the enamel organ—extending on down the dental papilla beyond the point where enamel formation stops. (See Chapter XXVI). The author believes that the meaning and importance of this relationship has not yet been grasped.

**Connective tissue Cells**—The cells in the dental pulp, aside from the odontoblasts, are typical connective-tissue cells such as are found in embryonal tissue. They are of three forms—round, spindle-shaped and stellate. In the crown or bulbous portion the cells are mostly stellate, while in the root portion they are largely spindle-shaped, with the axis of the spindle parallel with the canal. It seems difficult for students to get an idea of their arrangement and the nucleus is often mistaken for the entire cell. The cells do not lie in contact in a compact tissue but are widely scattered in the intercellular substance. There is a small ovoid nucleus, which takes the stain deeply, surrounded by a mass of granular cytoplasm stretching away into very fine threads. In the spindle shaped cells the cytoplasm is stretched out in only two directions. In the stellate cells there may be three, four, or more, stretching away in any direction. Plate IX was very carefully drawn with the camera lucida so as to represent accurately the number, size, and position of the cells in that field as seen with the  $\frac{1}{2}$  oil immersion. It is very difficult in a drawing to represent the third dimension of space and to show that some of the processes are extending in a plane at right angles to the paper. An idea of this can only be obtained by the very careful use of the fine adjustment while studying the cells with the high power.

The round cells are probably white blood corpuscles or undifferentiated connective-tissue cells which may develop either into stellate or spindle-shaped.

**The Arrangement of the Cells**—Immediately beneath the layer of odontoblasts, for a space about one-half or two-thirds as wide

## PLATE IX



A Field from the Coronal Portion of the Pulp from  
a Human Molar

In the corner the stage micrometer shows  $\frac{1}{10}$  of a millimeter drawn with the same lens. The field shows the branching of a blood vessel and the connective-tissue cells of the pulp. Drawn from  $\frac{1}{2}$  oil-immersion lens with camera lucida (About 1200 X)



as the odontoblastic layer, the cells are very scarce, making a clear line in many sections. This is known as the layer of Weil, and contains many fine nerve fibers which are not stained by ordinary methods. Beyond the layer of Weil for a space perhaps twice as wide as the height of the odontoblasts, the cells are very closely placed. Through the remainder of the pulp they are much more widely but comparatively evenly scattered.

**The Intercellular Substance.**—Very little is really known about the character of the intercellular substance of the pulp. It contains few fibers, and these in no way resemble bundles of white or elastic connective tissue. The appearance in the section is more as if a structureless gelatinous material had been coagulated by the reagents.

There are, of course, connective-tissue fibers in connection with the walls of the larger bloodvessels and nerves, and to a certain extent in the gelatinous material. In studying the intercellular substance in the sections it is necessary to remember that it is filled with the protoplasmic projections from the cells, and these are stained, appearing like fibers in the matrix. There is need for further investigation of the character of the intercellular substance.

**The Bloodvessels.**—The dental pulp is an extremely vascular tissue, and the arrangement of the vessels, the structure of their walls, and the nature of the intercellular substance through which they run render the tissue especially susceptible to the pathological conditions which are associated with alterations in the circulation.

Usually several arterial vessels enter the pulp through foramina in the region of the apex. These vessels have their origin in the rich vascular network of the cancellous bone (chapter on Peridental Membrane). The arteries follow the central portion of the pulp, giving off many branches as they pass occlusally, and finally form a very rich plexus of capillaries near the surface of the pulp. From these capillaries the blood is collected into the veins, which follow courses parallel to the arteries, leaving the pulp through the same foramina in the region of the apex. It is important to notice that an artery is entering and a vein leaving the tissue through very minute canals in the calcified dentin (Fig. 145). Dr. Stowell has made a very beautiful diagram of the arrangement of the bloodvessels in a single-rooted tooth, which is shown in Plate X. Preparations such as would reproduce this diagram can be made by injecting the bloodvessels with an inert material and destroying the soft tissues by artificial digestion.

## DENTAL PULP

Toward the periphery of the pulp very delicate vessels pass outward terminating in loops just beneath the odontoblasts. These are shown in fig 146

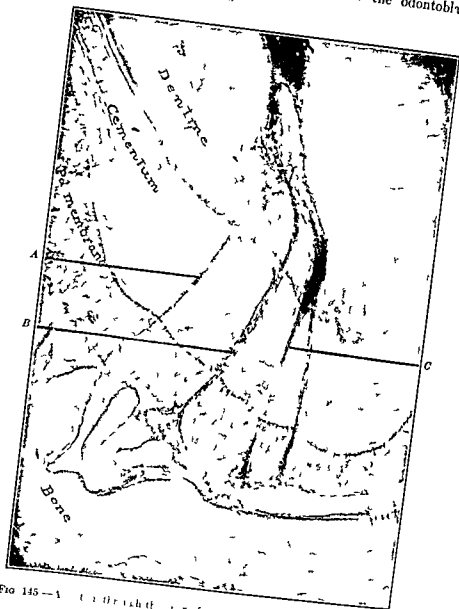


FIG 145—1 A transverse section of a tooth showing the foramina A B C (T. H. O. T.)

Structure—The delicacy of the walls of the bloodvessels is one of the most striking histologic characteristics of the dental pulp







The largest arteries show only a few muscle fibers in the media and a very slight condensation of fibrous tissue for an adventitia. There is no distinct boundary between the capillaries and the veins, and the vessels continue to have only a wall of endothelial cells after they have reached a size much greater than that of capillaries. Because of this peculiarity of structure the statement is to be found in many text-books of histology that the largest capillaries in the body are found in the dental pulp. These vessels should probably not be considered as capillaries, but as veins whose walls have the structure of capillaries. Even in the largest veins the media is very



FIG 146 —Dental pulp showing bloodvessel loops extending to the periphery, close to the layer of odontoblasts

imperfect, and there is only a slight condensation of fibrous tissue to represent the adventitia. This peculiarity of the bloodvessel walls in the pulp renders the tissue peculiarly susceptible to hyperemia and inflammation.

Fig 147 is a photograph of a bloodvessel whose size can be estimated from the number of red corpuscles seen in it, and the wall is made up of a single layer of endothelial cells. There is no indication of either media or adventitia. The intercellular substance of the pulp being of gelatinous, semifluid character, gives no support to these delicate walls.

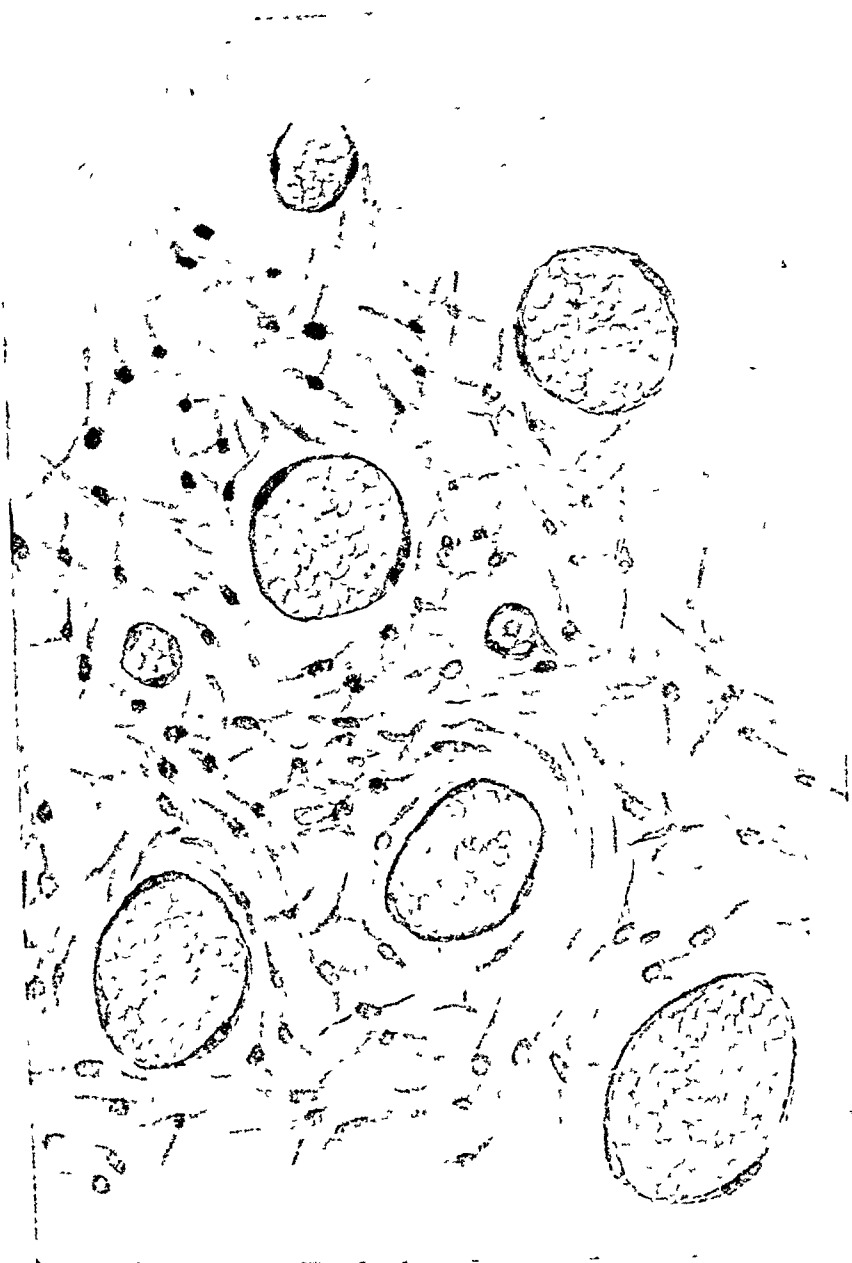
In Plate IX the author has drawn very carefully, with the camera lucida, using a  $\frac{1}{12}$  immersion lens a field showing the branching of a small bloodvessel. The size of the endothelial cells, position of their nuclei in the wall of the vessel, and the size, position and shape of the connective-tissue cells, are represented as accurately as possible. The field is from the coronal portion of the pulp of a human molar. The caliber of such a vessel as this would depend



FIG 147 —A pulp bloodvessel showing the thin wall. *C* blood corpuscles in the vessel. *Bl* bloodvessel wall showing nuclei of endothelial cells. *N* nuclei of connective-tissue cells in the body of the pulp. *I* intercellular substance showing a few fibers. (About 200  $\times$ )

almost entirely upon the blood pressure. The endothelial cells will stretch to a very considerable extent under increased pressure, becoming very thin at all points except around the nucleus. When the pressure is decreased the contractility of the cytoplasm pulls the cells together making it thicker and less in diameter. It is very important to remember these facts in connection with hyperemia of the dental pulp. It is difficult in such an illustration to give any representation of the third dimension of space, which

# PLATE XI



A Field from the Pulp of an Unerupted Tooth of a Sheep

The bloodvessels are cut transversely (About 1000  $\times$ )



is essential to a real understanding of the connective-tissue cells of the pulp. These are bits of cytoplasm with a nucleus forming a small, irregular central mass, from which the cytoplasm is stretched away in all directions through the intercellular substance, ending in very fine threads.

Plate XI is drawn in the same way from a transverse section of the pulp of an unerupted tooth of a sheep. The vessels are all cut transversely and are seen crowded with red blood corpuscles. They are not distended, and some show slight condensation of fibrous tissue around them.

In a normal pulp there are many capillaries so small that a single corpuscle passes them with difficulty, but in pathologic conditions they become distended to many times their normal diameter

**Lymphatics of the Dental Pulp.**—It was for a long time believed that the dental pulp contained no lymphatic vessels. In 1907-1909, Schweitzer succeeded in injecting lymphatic vessels in the pulp.<sup>1</sup> In 1916-1917 Dr. K. Dewey and the author repeated the work of Schweitzer in the Histological Laboratory of the College of Dentistry University of Illinois, and also succeeded in injecting the lymphatic glands of the neck in dogs by injections in the dental pulp.<sup>2</sup>



FIG 148

Fig 148 shows a portion of the pulp of a young dog. The blood-vessels are injected with gelatin carmin, the lymphatics with Berlin blue. Very fine vessels were found close to the surface of the dentin (Fig. 149). From these capillaries vessels pass through the

<sup>1</sup> Schweitzer Ueber die lymphgefäße des Zahnfleisches und der Zähne beim Menschen und bei Säugethieren, Archiv f. Micro. Anat., 1907, p. 807, 1909, p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> A Study of the Lymphatic Vessels of the Dental Pulp, Dental Cosmos, vol. lx, 1917, pp. 136-44. Journal of the American Medical Association. Oct. 12-1918, vol. ii, pp. 1179-1184.

## DENTAL PULP

central portions of the tissue and pass through the apical foramina where they anastomose with the vessels of the peridental mem

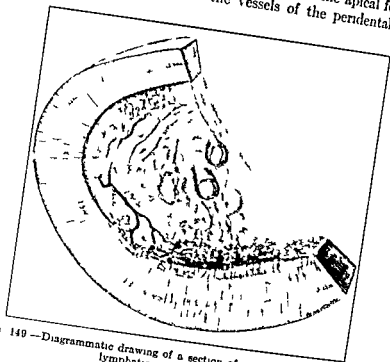


FIG 149 —Diagrammatic drawing of a section of a tooth showing injected lymphatic vessels in the pulp

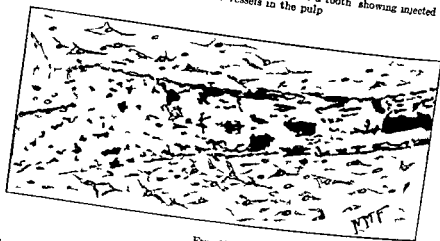


FIG 150

brane (Fig. 164) For their course from this point see p 193 In the body of the pulp independent lymph vessels are found and perivascular lymph sheath surrounding bloodvessels (Fig 150)

**The Nerves of the Dental Pulp.**—Few subjects in connection with dental histology have received more attention than the distribution of the nerves of the dental pulp, especially in relation to the sensitiveness of the dentin.<sup>1</sup>

For fifteen years or more Dr. Howard Mummery has been doing work on the distribution of the nerves of the dental pulps. He has described nerve-end-cells lying between the odontoblasts at their pulpal end, from which neuro-fibrils extend through the layer of odontoblasts and enter the dentinal tubules with the fibers of Tomes. According to his description these cells form true sensory neurons the axon of which extend throughout the dentin in the dentinal tubules, their dendrons connecting with the terminal fibrils of the axons entering the pulp through the apical foramina. He considers the odontoblasts as the builders of the dentin matrix, or at least the calcification of it, and the nerve-end-cells to perform the sensory functions formerly ascribed to the odontoblasts and their fibrils.

Support for almost any idea can be found in the literature, but many of the conditions described have been shown to be errors in microscopic interpretation, and many others have failed to receive support by reinvestigation. The most recent work in this country upon this subject was done fifteen or twenty years ago by Prof. Carl Huber, of Ann Arbor. The author has repeated some of his work, and has never seen any specimen that was contradictory to his statements. Usually three or four nerve trunks enter the dental pulp through the foramina. These contain from eight or ten to thirty or forty medullated nerve fibers. They pass occlusally through the central portion of the pulp, but almost immediately begin to give off branches, which pass toward the periphery, branching and anastomosing in their course. Most of the fibers lose their medullary sheath very soon after leaving the nerve trunk, proceeding as beaded fibers, made up of an axis cylinder with nuclei scattered along it. A bundle of such fibers, breaking up to be distributed to one horn of the pulp, is shown in Fig. 151. Other fibers retain their medullary sheath, following an independent course through the pulp tissue, until they reach the layer of Weil, where the sheath is lost and they join the plexus of beaded fibers lying in this position (Fig. 151). From the plexus

<sup>1</sup> Several investigators have described nerve fibers entering the dentinal tubules. The most complete and elaborate work is that of Howard Mummery. For which the student is referred to, *Microscopic Anatomy of the Teeth*. J. Howard Mummery, p. 211.



in the layer of Weil beaded fibers are given off, passing between and around the odontoblasts, forming a network around each cell, and even passing over on to the end of the cell between it and the dentin but they have never been followed into the dentinal tubules. In no instance and by no method that he has employed, has Dr Huber been able to demonstrate nerve fibers in the dentinal tubules.

The sensitiveness of the dentin in view of these observations, is due to the presence of living fibrils connected with living odontoblasts which are in physiological connection with nerve fibers. It

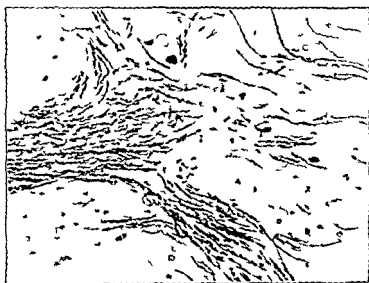


FIG. 141.—Nerve fibers in pulp from a human molar. (About 500  $\times$ )

is interesting to note that this is the only instance in which a connective tissue cell is intermediate between the outside world and the nerve fiber. In all other instances an epithelial cell is intermediate between the environment and the nervous system. The sensitiveness of the dentin is therefore due to the irritability of the cytoplasm of the fibril transmitted through the continuity of cytoplasm to the odontoblasts and their reaction upon the surrounding nerve fibers. The irritation to the fibril may be either traumatic, chemical or thermal. For instance salt is sprinkled on exposed living dentin and a sharp sensation of pain is the result. It may be supposed that chemical changes are set up in the cytoplasm of the fibril which excite changes in the cytoplasm of the odontoblasts.

These react upon the cytoplasm of the nerve fiber, and so are transmitted to the nerve center, being recognized, in consciousness, as a sensation of pain. In the same way traumatic irritation caused, for instance, by the cutting of dentin with a steel instrument sets up changes in the fibril in the same fashion. It is impossible to conceive of any vital activity of cytoplasm otherwise than as a form of chemical action or molecular or atomic movement of its substance.

Certain clinical facts are well explained by these structural facts. It is often noted in the preparation of cavities that the dentin is most sensitive at the dento-enamel junction. This would be expected when it is recalled that at the dento-enamel junction the dentinal tubules fork and the fibrils anastomose, so that an

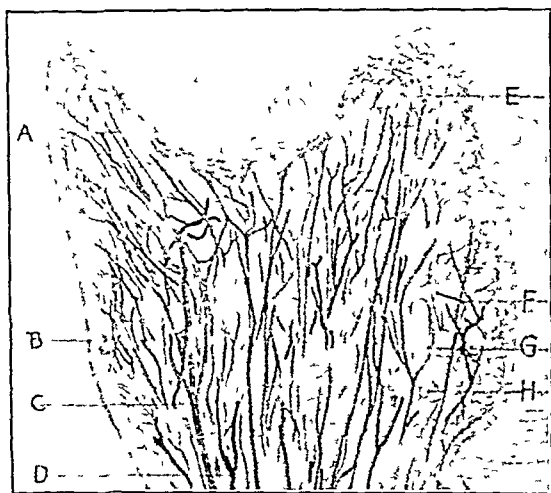


FIG 152 —Röse's diagram of nerves and bloodvessels of the pulp

irritation to a few fibrils is not simply transmitted to their odontoblasts and the nerve endings in contact with them, but to all the fibrils, and so to the nerves in contact with all of the odontoblasts. The presence of dilute acids render the cytoplasm of the fibrils much more irritable. The dentin in a carious condition is therefore much more sensitive than that in a sound or normal area. The sensitiveness of extremely hypersensitive dentin can often be greatly reduced, if not entirely overcome, by cleansing the cavity thoroughly, washing with tepid water, followed by a dilute alkali, drying and sealing for a few days, when it will be usually found that excavation can be carried out without excessive pain. The sealing must be perfect. If it is leaky the cavity will be more sensitive than ever at the end of the delay.

Teeth in which the size of the pulp chamber has been reduced by the formation of secondary dentin are usually much less sensitive. By this formation, as has been seen in the chapter on dentin many of the tubules are cut off and many of the fibrils reach the pulp only by anastomosing with a few in the later formed dentin. The transmission to the nerves of the pulp is thus made more difficult and imperfect.

In all considerations of the sensitiveness of dentin, the purely subjective and hysterical symptoms must be carefully watched for. In many cases slight sensations are so magnified by fear and expectation as to be considered intolerable. In such cases the diversion of attention and the skilful use of suggestions are of more value when coupled with delicacy of manipulation and operative skill than any means of obtunding. In such cases although the operator is positive that the sensations are slight it will never do any good to tell the patient so or to argue that what is being done cannot hurt. They must be made to believe fully that something has been done to destroy the sensitiveness, and then the attention must be concentrated upon something while the excavation is lightly and skilfully performed. It makes very little difference what is done, but it must attract the attention in order to plant the belief that the sensitiveness has been removed, and then the attention must be diverted until the manipulation is completed.

The nerves of the pulp not only respond with sensations of pain from the irritation of the fibrils in the dentinal tubules but because of their confinement in a calcified chamber and the semifluid nature of the tissue, they are very sensitive to pressure either increased or decreased. The normal response to changes of temperature, as well as most of the pain in pathologic conditions of the pulp are probably caused by changes of pressure through disturbance of the blood circulation of the tissue. The nerves of the pulp control the walls of the arteries through the vasomotor reflexes and also by trophic fibers control the functional activity of the odontoblasts in the formation of the dentin.

In a single tooth the irritation resulting from a carious cavity is found to cause the formation of dentin not simply in the region reached by the irritated fibrils but upon the entire wall of the pulp chamber and apparently also in other teeth. It has seemed possible to the author that in some instances osmotic conditions might be a factor in the production of pain in the pulp especially in the early stages of caries.

## CHAPTER XIV

### THE LYMPHATICS OF THE DENTAL REGION.

#### GENERAL CONCEPTION OF THE LYMPHATIC CIRCULATION.

THE student generally finds difficulty in getting any clear idea of the lymphatic circulation. It seems best, therefore, to make a most simple and elementary statement of this most important circulatory system as a basis for a study of the lymphatic vessels. Life at present can be understood only in terms of a single cell. Every living cell must be bathed in fluid from which the cytoplasm receives the material for its constructive processes and to which it gives up its waste products or the results of catabolism. Just as the single-celled protozoan floating in a pond of water, so each cell of every tissue of the body can be considered as bathed in a fluid—the *lymph*. The epithelium of all external and internal surfaces makes a bounding layer which prevents the loss of the fluid. If a slight cut or abrasion is made on the skin, removing the outer layer of dried cells and not breaking the blood capillaries, there will appear the exudation of a drop of yellowish fluid on the surface. This fluid immediately coagulates and prevents further loss until the continuity of the surface is restored. In this simple way we may demonstrate the presence of the intercellular fluid or lymph.

For the health and nourishment of the cells this fluid must be in circulation or the cells would be poisoned by their own products of catabolism. In a very general way the blood circulatory system may be said to be the means of bringing oxygen to the tissues and the lymph circulatory system the means of supplying the material for metabolism.

The fluid of the blood passes through the cells of the capillary walls into the intercellular and tissue spaces, and in that sense may be considered the source of the lymph. The passage of the blood plasma through the capillary walls is not simply a matter of transfusion or osmosis, but is a vital function of the cells of the capillary walls. The intercellular lymph is not the same as the plasma of the blood in the bloodvessels, for from it the cytoplasm of the tissue cells have taken up material and to it they have given products of metabolism.

The fluid from the intercellular and tissue spaces is collected by a system of vessels, the *lymphatic vessels*, and returned to the blood circulation through the thoracic duct emptying into the left subclavian vein. On the right a very short, lymphatic duct not more than 10 to 12 mm. in length, empties into the right subclavian vein. Very frequently no right lymphatic duct exists, the jugular and subclavian trunks opening independently into the right subclavian vein.

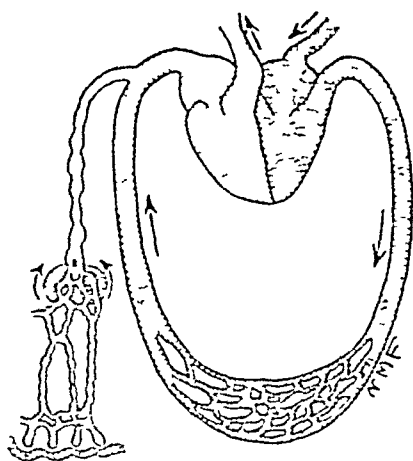
Formerly it was supposed that the smallest of the lymph vessels or lymph capillaries opened directly into the intercellular and tissue spaces, but it has become more and more evident that this is not correct but that the lymphatic vessels form a closed system opening only into the subclavian veins. The intercellular fluid passes into the lymph capillaries through their wall by a vital process. A diagram of the lymphatic vessels and their relation to the blood circulation is shown in Plate VII.

It is undoubtedly true that the blood capillaries also may take up fluid from the tissue as well as give up fluid to it and it is certain that they take up products of metabolism from the tissue cells. But as a beginning and elementary idea the statement may be made that the plasma of the blood passes out of the capillaries, bathes the cells giving up material to them and receiving products from them, and is returned to the blood circulation through the lymphatic vessels.

In comparing the two systems in Plate VII several things can be noted. (1) The blood passes from the heart through the arteries to the capillaries and back to the heart in the veins and is a closed system all the way. The lymph is collected from the tissue spaces by the lymphatic capillaries passes through collecting trunks to the glands, where it passes through the capillaries again and on to the blood circulation through the subclavian vein. (2) The blood circulation is the oxygen carrier the lymphatic circulation the food and waste carrier. (3) The blood circulation is rapid the lymph circulation slow.

**Lymphatic Nodes or Glands**—Along the course of the lymphatic vessels are placed structures lymphatic nodes or glands in which the fluid must come in contact with masses of active cells for the purpose of preventing infection carried in the current from reaching the blood circulation and so the entire body. For the structure of the lymph nodes and their relation to the lymphatic vessels the student is referred to text books of histology and anatomy.

PLATE XII



General Scheme of the Lymphatic System.



## PARTS OF THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM.

To have a conception of this system, the fluid that circulates, the cells it carries, the vessels through which it goes, and the tissue or special structures through which it passes in its course, must be studied in their relation to each other.

- 1 Lymph
2. Leukocytes (cells found in the lymph)
3. Lymph vessels
4. Lymphatic glands (lymph nodes)

**Lymph.**—The lymph is a slightly viscous liquid, sometimes with slightly yellowish color, no or very slight odor, slightly alkaline reaction, and specific gravity of 1.012 to 1.022. Krause states that the entire quantity of lymph is equal to one-third of the body weight. Five and one-half liters have been collected from the thoracic duct from man in twenty-four hours. The quantity is dependent upon tissue activity.

From the most fundamental conception of it the lymph must be slightly different from the plasma of the blood. And its chemical composition must be variable. It is slightly less alkaline and contains less fibrin than the blood plasma.

**Leukocytes.**—The term leukocytes includes cells that are found in the blood, lymph, and connective tissues, and is synonymous with white blood corpuscles.

The leukocytes are soft cytoplasmic masses with no cell wall, nearly colorless, extensible, and of varying refraction. They are heavier than lymph or plasma and lighter than red corpuscles. They are viscous, adhering to a glass slide and sticking to the walls of vessels, resisting the current which carries them along, so that they accumulate when the current slackens.

They possess all the biological properties of primitive cells, mobility, sensibility, absorption, secretion and reproduction. Such important functions as the absorption of foreign matter and bacteria are dependent upon these primitive functions.

Leukocytes have been classified by their form, size, the character of the nucleus and the granules found in the cytoplasm.

**Lymphatic Vessels.**—Lymphatic vessels were discovered by the ancient Greeks and were known by Aristotle (384–322 B.C.), but the knowledge was lost and they were rediscovered by Nicholas Massa in 1532 A.D. In 1563 Eustachius discovered the thoracic duct.



It was formerly believed that the lymph in the intercellular spaces drained into the interfibrous spaces in the connective tissue and that these became lined with endothelial cells and that the lymphatic capillaries opened into them. It has been more and more apparent that the lymphatic vessels present a system closed at the periphery and opening into the subclavian vein at the opposite extremity. This does not in any way change the action of the system. The

taking up of the lymph from the tissue spaces cannot be thought of as a simple process of filtration but as a vital function of the cells forming the closed ends of this terminal or collecting plexus of the lymphatic capillaries. The entire system of the lymph vessels may be more clearly understood if it is thought of as made up of the

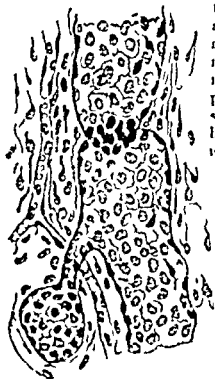


FIG. 123



FIG. 124

FIG. 123. Lymphatics in involucre. FIG. 124. Lymphatic vessel with collecting trunk. FIG. 125. Isolated vessel. (After Parker)

following parts: (1) The network of origin or terminal plexus of the lymphatic capillaries which take up the lymph from the tissue at the origin. (2) A few vessels collecting trunks drain a large area of the collecting capillary network and drain the lymph into the network to the first lymphatic gland. (3) The gland. (4) The efferent vessel which breaks up into capillaries. (5) The collecting plexus of the efferent vessel. (6) Lateral collecting trunks. (7) The collecting trunks which carry the lymph from the collecting plexus to the venous system.

The structure of the vessels is different in the different parts but may be described in general by saying that the capillaries and small collecting vessels are lined by a single layer of exceedingly delicate endothelial cells and the larger trunks show three layers similar to the walls of the veins but more delicate in structure (Figs 153 and 154).

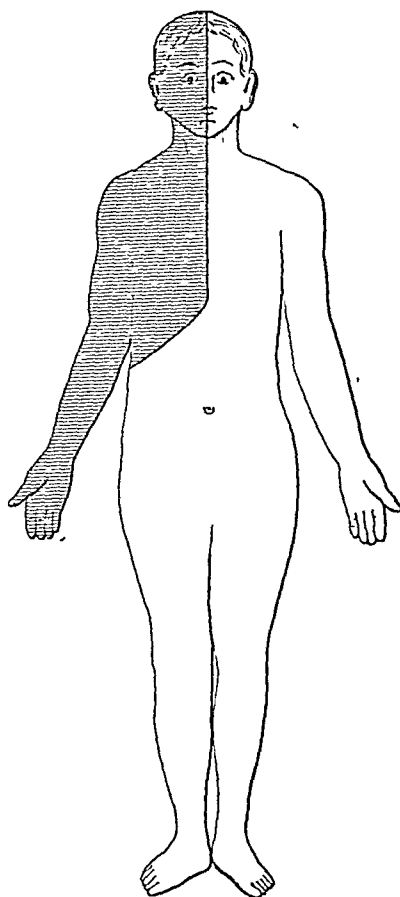


FIG 155

As a general statement the network of origin is in the subepithelial connective tissue. The collecting and transporting trunks are found in the connective tissue and are either superficial or deep, as they are above or below the fascia. The superficial vessels are usually more highly developed.

The total capacity of the network of origin is very great, being equal to or greater than that of the veins, but the capacity is greatly reduced in the collecting and efferent ducts, so that the entire system



neck from which two vertical chains extend under the sternomastoid muscle and along the large bloodvessels and nerves extending to where the neck joins the thorax. These main vertical chains are flanked by lesser auxiliary chains (Fig. 158).

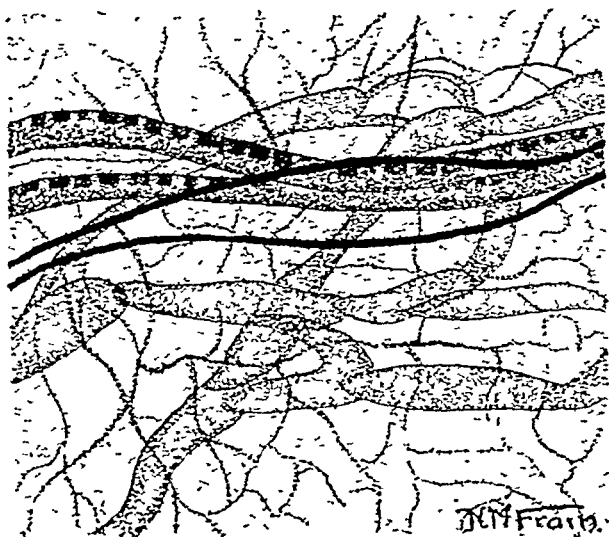


FIG 156

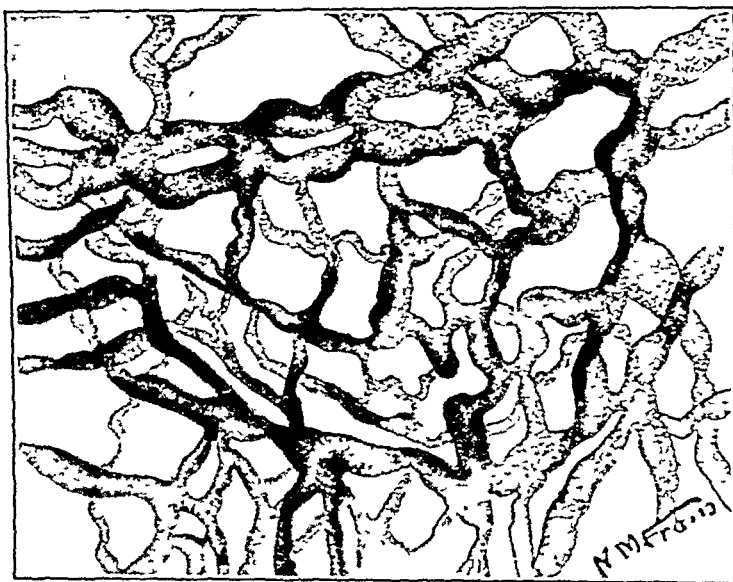


FIG 157

The glandular collar is composed of (1) the *suboccipital group*; (2) the *mastoid group*; (3) the *parotid and subparotid group*; (4) the

*submaxillary group*, (5) the *submental group* (6) the *retropharyngeal group*

1 The *suboccipital group* usually contains two glands. They receive efferents from the occipital portion of the scalp. Their efferents terminate in the highest glands of the *substernomastoid group* of the vertical chain.

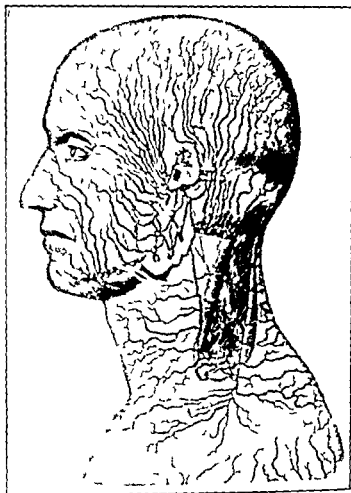


FIG. 158

2 The *Mastoid Group* — There are usually two, one behind the other, and are united by two or three trunks. They lie on the mastoid insertion of the mastoid muscle. They receive afferents from the temporary portion of the scalp, from the external surface of the

auricle, except the lobule, and the posterior surface of the external auditory meatus. Their efferents empty into the superior glands of the submastoid group after traversing the superior insertion of that muscle.

3. *The Parotid Group*.—This group is made up of (1) the subcutaneous glands, which are often absent; (2) the glands contained in the parotid space, (3) the subparotid glands

The glands of the parotid space are situated on the external surface of the gland or in its external substance. The superficial ones are usually two or three in number. The deep ones are scattered through the entire substance of the gland and are usually grouped along the external jugular vein and the external carotid artery. One constantly occupies the lower part of the space and is attached close to the angle of the jaw in contact with the cervical fascia. They receive afferents from the external surface of the auricle and external auditory meatus, from the tympanum, from the skin of the temple and frontal region, the eyelid and root of the nose. They perhaps also receive vessels from the nasal fossa and the posterior part of the alveolar border of the superior maxilla. Their efferents empty into the substernomastoid group.

The subparotid glands are placed between the parotid and the pharynx in the lateropharyngeal and posterior subglandular space. They are in contact with the internal carotid and the internal jugular. They are the starting-point of the lateropharyngeal abscess (Quaine). They receive afferents from the nasal fossa, nasal pharynx and Eustachian tube. Their efferents pass to the glands of the deep cervical chain.

4 *Submaxillary Glands*.—These glands, three to six in number, are the most important from the dental standpoint. They form a chain stretching along the inferior border of the mandible from the insertion of the anterior belly of the digastric to the angle of the jaw. They are found in the junction of the cutaneous and bony surface of the submaxillary gland on which they rest. The largest and most constant of the chain is found at the point where the facial artery crosses the border of the mandible. They receive afferents from the nose, the cheek, the upper lip and external part of the lower lip, the anterior third of the lateral border of the tongue and almost the whole of the gums, alveolar process and teeth of both upper and lower arch. Their efferents descend on the cutaneous surface of the submaxillary gland, across the hyoid bone and terminate in the glands of the deep cervical chain, over the bifurcation

of the carotid artery or much deeper, where the omohyoid crosses the internal jugular vein

5 *The Submental Glands*—These glands are extremely variable in number and position. Usually one to four in number they are found in the triangle between the anterior bellas of the digastric muscle and the hyoid bone. They receive afferents from the chin, the central portion of the lower lip, the tip of the tongue and the anterior portion of the alveolar process and the lower incisor teeth. The latter is probably not constant.

6 *The Retropharyngeal Group*—These glands are placed behind the pharynx at the junction of the posterior and lateral surfaces at the apex of the lateral masses of the atlas. Usually two in number they are in relation with the posterior wall of the pharynx and the anterior surface of the rectus—capitis anticus major and externally with the constrictors of the pharynx. They are about two centimeters from the median line. They receive afferent vessels from the mucous membrane of the nasal fossæ and the cavities connected with it, the nasal pharynx, Eustachian tube and perhaps the tympanum. Their efferent vessels empty into the superior glands of the internal jugular chain.

*Descending Cervical Chains*—These extend from the glandular collar through the neck to the thorax. The most important chain is the deep cervical chain, one on each side, under the sternomastoid muscle and in the subclavian triangle. The smaller are the external jugular chain, the two anterior cervical chains, superficial and deep and the recurrent chain.

The deep cervical chain (Fig. 166) is one of the largest and most important relays in the body. It contains fifteen to thirty glands. It is made up of two groups: (1) the upper or substernomastoid group and (2) the lower or subclavian triangular group. Only the first group will be considered.

*Substernomastoid Glands*—1. *External Glands*. Behind and external to the internal jugular vein. Afferent vessels are received from the occipital and mastoid glands and from cutaneous lymphatics from the posterior part of the head and neck.

2. *Internal Glands*. Rest on the internal jugular or along its external border. At different points in the chain glands of special importance are found, for instance: (a) Beneath the posterior belly of the digastric, the principal terminus for lymphatics from the tongue and gum about the lower teeth on the lingual. (b) Where the omohyoid crosses the internal jugular. Afferent vessels. These

glands form the second relay for lymphs from the (*a*) retropharyngeal and (*b*) parotid and subparotid.

3. Submaxillary.

4. Submental glands

5 The superficial and deep anterior cervical chain and the recurrent chain They receive direct afferents from (*a*) the majority of the vessels from the tongue, (*b*) part of the nasal pharynx and larynx, (*c*) the vault of the palate and soft palate; (*d*) the cervical portion of the esophagus; (*e*) the nasal fossæ, (*f*) the larynx and trachea, (*g*) the thyroid body.

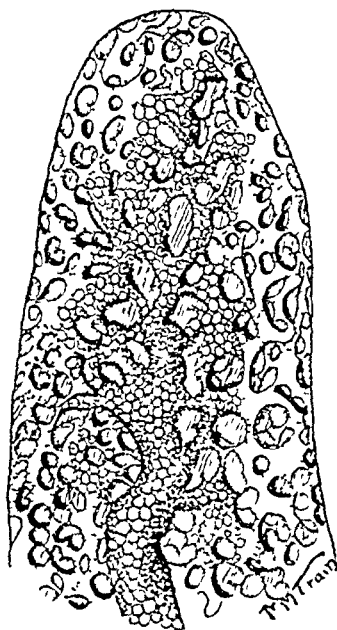


FIG 159

*The Network of Origin in the Dental Region* — The lymphatic network of origin is absolutely continuous over the whole of the face, eyelids, conjunctiva, lips and the mucous membrane of the lips, cheeks, gums and gingiva. Every papilla of the connective tissue under the epithelium contains such networks of vessels as are shown in Fig 159 from papillæ of the hand. Exactly such structures can be shown from the mucous membrane of the gum and gingivæ. These capillaries empty into an exceedingly rich network of very delicate vessels in the subcutaneous and submucous layer, which is illustrated in Fig. 160. It is difficult for the element-



any student to get any conception of the fineness delicacy and intercommunicating anastomosis of this network. From this network a few collecting vessels lead to the afferent trunks going to the first glands. There is therefore a more or less definite drainage for a given area, though the network of origin is continuous.

**Lymphatics of the Lips**—In the lips there are two networks—one in the subcutaneous layer of the outer surface and one in the submucous layer of the internal surface. These communicate freely at the border of the lips. Each network is drained by a few collecting trunks, which receive lymphatic vessels from the muscular

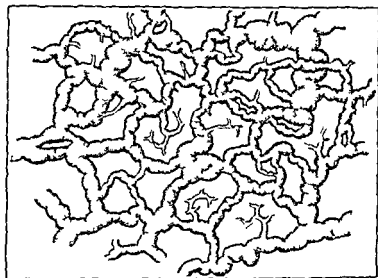


FIG. 160—Lymphatic vessels of the collecting network. (Sappey)

layers that are less developed. The subcutaneous collecting vessels of the lower lip—two to four in number on each side—frequently cross and anastomose at the median line. Those from the middle portion pass to the submental glands. Those from the region of the commissure reach the most anterior of the submaxillary glands (Fig. 161). The submucous collecting vessels—two or three on each side—pass obliquely downward and outward to the region of the facial artery and end in the submaxillary glands. They do not cross or anastomose at the median line. There are two submucous and two or three subcutaneous collecting vessels in the upper lip. They all pass obliquely downward and outward, usually to the middle

gland of the submaxillary chain. One of these may enter the most external of the collecting trunk from the lower lip.

**Lymphatics of the Mucous Membrane of the Mouth and Gums**—In the mucous membrane of the mouth and gums the network of origin forms an exceedingly close network.

*From the outer surface of the mandible* the collecting vessels form a wreath of interlacing vessels at the reflection of the mucous membrane from the bone to the cheek. The vessels increase in size as they pass distally and finally penetrate the cheek and end in the submaxillary glands, especially the last one.

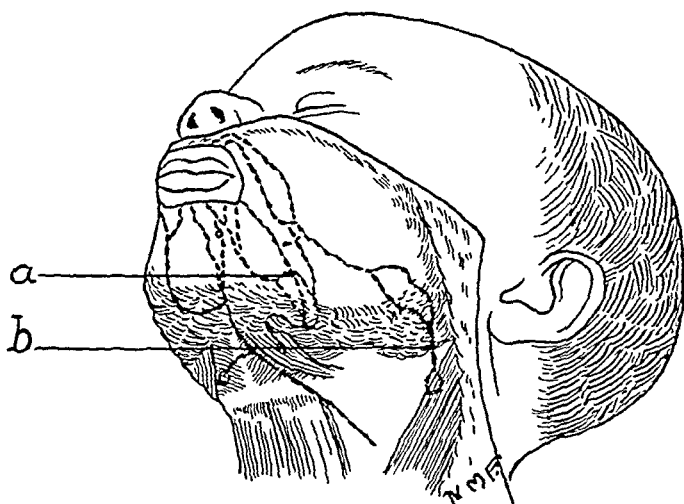


FIG 161

*From the inner surface of the mandible* a similar wreath of collecting vessels is formed at the reflection of the tissue from the bone to the floor of the mouth and tongue. From the anterior part, lingual to the incisors, the vessels pass, with those from the tip of the tongue to the submental glands. From the lateral portion they unite with lymphatics from the anterior part of the lateral surface of the tongue and pass to the glands of the submaxillary chain. From the region of the second and third molars they probably join the lymphatics from lateral portions of the base of the tongue in the region of the tonsil and pass to the large gland of the deep cervical chain, placed under the posterior belly of the digastric.

**Outer Surface of the Maxilla**—From the outer surface of the upper arch the collecting vessels pass to a wreath of large vessels at the reflection from the bone to the cheek. These increase in size

as they extend distally. At the level of the molars they pierce the cheek, join the facial artery and terminate in the posterior glands of the submaxillary chain (Fig. 162). On the lingual the collecting vessels first pass obliquely backward and toward the median line of

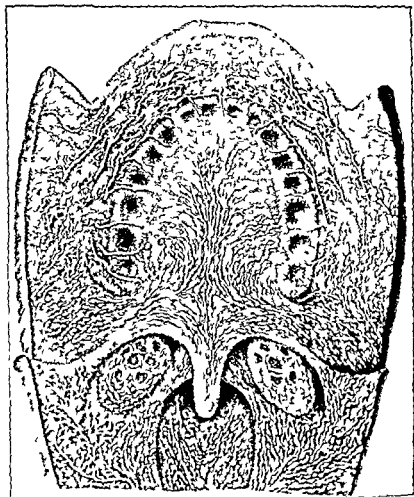


Fig. 162.—Lymphatic vessels of the palate (After Gappy)

the palate, then backward and upward at the junction of the hard and soft palate. They pass in front of the anterior pillar of the fauces, pierce the superior constrictor of the pharynx and end in the large gland of the deep cervical chain under the posterior belly of the digastric.

**Lymphatics of the Peridental Membrane** —The lymphatic capillaries in the papillæ under the epithelium on the labial or buccal and lingual surfaces of the gingivæ pass to the collecting network in the submucous connective tissue outside the periosteum on the surface of the alveolar process (Fig 162). The lymphatic capillaries from the papillæ under the epithelium lining the gingival space are col-



FIG 163 —Unstained section showing lymph capillaries of the tooth side of the gingivæ and their drainage through the ligamentum circulare to the peridental membrane

lected in very fine vessels which pierce the ligamentum circularæ very close to the surface of the cementum and extend in the inter-fibrous tissue of the peridental membrane accompanying the blood-vessels (Fig 163). At the level of the apex of the root they receive lymphatics coming from the dental pulp (Fig 164) and pass through the cancellous spaces of the bone to the inferior dental canal in the

as they extend distally. At the level of the molars they pierce the cheek, join the facial artery, and terminate in the posterior glands of the submaxillary chain (Fig. 162). On the lingual the collecting vessels first pass obliquely backward and toward the median line of

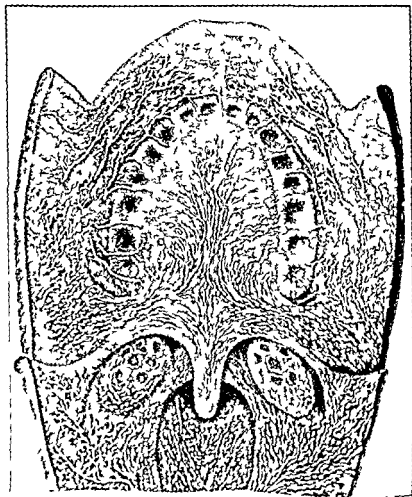


Fig. 162. — Lymphatic vessel of the palate. (After Sappey.)

the palate then backward and upward at the junction of the hard and soft palate. They pass in front of the anterior pillar of the fauces, pass the superior constrictor of the pharynx and end in the large gland of the deep cervical chain under the posterior belly of the digastric.

**Lymphatics of the Peridental Membrane.**—The lymphatic capillaries in the papillæ under the epithelium on the labial or buccal and lingual surfaces of the gingivæ pass to the collecting network in the submucous connective tissue outside the periosteum on the surface of the alveolar process (Fig. 162) The lymphatic capillaries from the papillæ under the epithelium lining the gingival space are col-



FIG 163 —Unstained section, showing lymph capillaries of the tooth side of the gingivæ and their drainage through the ligamentum circulare to the peridental membrane

lected in very fine vessels which pierce the ligamentum circularæ very close to the surface of the cementum and extend in the inter-fibrous tissue of the peridental membrane accompanying the blood-vessels (Fig. 163) At the level of the apex of the root they receive lymphatics coming from the dental pulp (Fig. 164) and pass through the cancellous spaces of the bone to the inferior dental canal in the



FIG. 164.—Transverse section just at the apex of the root showing injected lymphatic vessels in the periradicular membrane and in the canals passing to the pulp (oc. 2 obj. 16 mm. reduced about one-third)

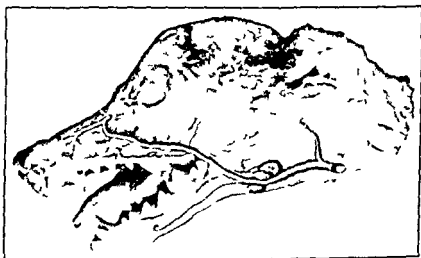


FIG. 165.—Dog's head, showing lymphatic glands injected from dental pulp

lower and the infraorbital canal in the upper. They emerge on the surface of the bone at the mental foramen, or the infraorbital foramen and end in the posterior or middle glands of the submaxillary chain, following the course of the facial artery (Fig 165). A great amount of work remains to be done on the drainage of the teeth in different regions. Little or nothing is known of the course of the vessels from the upper incisors, lower incisors and second and third molars. Lymphatics from the lower incisors may pass to the submental glands. Those from the upper incisors probably reach the surface of the bone below the level of the floor of the nose and join the vessel coming from the infraorbital canal, though it is possible that some of them join vessels in the floor of the nose. It is quite probable that lymphatics from the second and third molars pass to the glands of the parotid group.

**Lymphatics of the Dental Pulp.**—For many years the dental pulp was said to be devoid of lymphatics and all attempts to inject vessels in the dental pulp failed. In 1909 Schweitzer reported successful injections of the dental pulp, and in 1914 Dr. Kaethe Dewey and the author repeated Schweitzer's results and succeeded in injecting lymph capillaries of the submaxillary lymph glands in the dog by injections into the dental pulp and followed the course of the vessels continuously from the pulp to the glands (Fig 165). There is much work to be done in this field before our knowledge will be at all complete regarding both the perivascular lymph sheath and the independent lymph vessels. The vessels begin at the surface of the pulp and follow the course of the bloodvessels to the apical foramina, where they join the lymphatics of the periodontal membrane. Their course from this point has already been followed.

**Lymphatics of the Tongue.**<sup>1</sup>—The lymphatics of the tongue are very highly developed and have been thoroughly studied. There are two networks of origin—one superficial in the mucous membrane and one deep in the muscular body of the tongue. Their efferent vessels unite in the submucosa.

The collecting trunks are divided into four groups. (1) Anterior apical. (2) Lateral marginal. (3) Posterior or basal. (4) Median or central.

1. *Anterior Apical Trunks*—These vessels, two on each side, run along the frenum to the posterior surface of the mandible. Here they separate (Fig. 166). (1) One runs downward and backward

<sup>1</sup> See page 270, *The Lymphatics* by G. Delamere, P. Power and B. Cuneo. Edited by Cecil H. Leach.





FIG. 164.—Transverse section just at the apex of the root showing injected lymphatic vessels in the periodontal membrane and in the canal passing to the pulp (oc. 2 of 16 mm. reduced about one-third)



FIG. 165.—Dog's head, showing lymphatic glands injected from dental pulp.

lower and the infraorbital canal in the upper. They emerge on the surface of the bone at the mental foramin, or the infraorbital foramen and end in the posterior or middle glands of the submaxillary chain, following the course of the facial artery (Fig. 165). A great amount of work remains to be done on the drainage of the teeth in different regions. Little or nothing is known of the course of the vessels from the upper incisors, lower incisors and second and third molars. Lymphatics from the lower incisors may pass to the submental glands. Those from the upper incisors probably reach the surface of the bone below the level of the floor of the nose and join the vessel coming from the infraorbital canal, though it is possible that some of them join vessels in the floor of the nose. It is quite probable that lymphatics from the second and third molars pass to the glands of the parotid group.

**Lymphatics of the Dental Pulp.**—For many years the dental pulp was said to be devoid of lymphatics and all attempts to inject vessels in the dental pulp failed. In 1909 Schweitzer reported successful injections of the dental pulp, and in 1914 Dr. Kaethe Dewey and the author repeated Schweitzer's results and succeeded in injecting lymph capillaries of the submaxillary lymph glands in the dog by injections into the dental pulp and followed the course of the vessels continuously from the pulp to the glands (Fig. 165). There is much work to be done in this field before our knowledge will be at all complete regarding both the perivascular lymph sheath and the independent lymph vessels. The vessels begin at the surface of the pulp and follow the course of the bloodvessels to the apical foramina, where they join the lymphatics of the peridental membrane. Their course from this point has already been followed.

**Lymphatics of the Tongue.**<sup>1</sup>—The lymphatics of the tongue are very highly developed and have been thoroughly studied. There are two networks of origin: one superficial in the mucous membrane and one deep in the muscular body of the tongue. Their efferent vessels unite in the submucosa.

The collecting trunks are divided into four groups: (1) Anterior apical. (2) Lateral marginal. (3) Posterior or basal. (4) Median or central.

1. *Anterior Apical Trunks*—These vessels, two on each side, run along the frenum to the posterior surface of the mandible. Here they separate (Fig. 166). (1) One runs downward and backward

<sup>1</sup> See page 270, *The Lymphatics* by G. Delamere, P. Poirer and B. Cuneo. Edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

between the geniohyoglossus and the mylohyoid crosses the great cornu of the hyoid bone behind the anterior belly of the digastric and along the external border of the omohyoid to the gland of the deep cervical chain where this muscle crosses the internal jugular vein. (The general statement is that the more anterior the origin in the tongue the lower the gland in the deep cervical chain to which it goes.) (2) The second trunk passes to the submental gland.

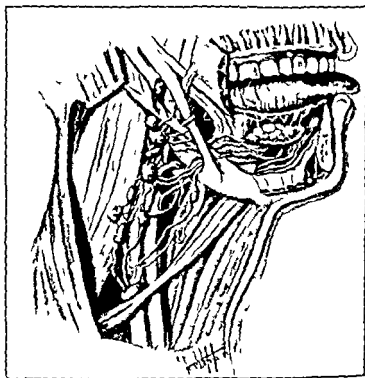


FIG. 166

2. *The Marginal Trunks.* These vessels collect from all the mucous membrane from the tip of the tongue to the V-shaped groove on the dorsal surface. They are eight to twelve in number.

1. One group, the external (three or four) pierce the mylohyoid and pass around the inferior border of the mandible to the glands of the submaxillary chain. (2) The internal (five or six). These vessels run downward and backward on the muscles of the tongue and all end in glands of the deep cervical chain.

3. *Basal Trunks.* These vessels (seven or eight) arise from the region of the circumvallate papilla and are the largest and

most important vessels of the tongue. They form a medial and lateral group and all terminate in the large gland of the deep cervical under the posterior belly of the digastric.

4. *The Central Trunks* —These vessels arise from the middle part of the dorsal network of the body of the tongue. Instead of running outward they descend in the middle line between the two geniohyoglossi and end in the glands of the deep cervical chain.

## CHAPTER XV

### INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES

DURING the last hundred years knowledge of living things and all thought of their structure and function has entirely changed. The cell theory has abundantly established that the cell is the structural and functional unit of all living objects both plant and animal and that all manifestations of life are accomplished by the chemical activity of the substance of the cell which Huxley long ago designated as "the physical basis of life." From a consideration of the physical properties of cytoplasm, nothing is more apparent than that the production of a highly organized body out of it alone would be impossible. If the human body were composed entirely of cytoplasm it would be a shapeless lump of jelly. It is only by the production of material which has physical properties of strength and rigidity through the activity of the cytoplasm that the shape and function of a highly organized creature is possible. This is accomplished through the metabolism of the cytoplasm more or less analogous to the building up of a secretion by the cells of a gland though there is no intention to suggest any direct comparison between the two. In other words all tissues are made up of cells and intercellular substance and the vital characteristics are given to the tissue by the cells the physical characteristics by the intercellular substance. These intercellular or extracellular materials possess none of the vital manifestations, and are entirely dependent upon the cells for their formation and maintenance. There is apparently a constant reaction between the cell and the formed material which constitutes the intercellular substance for even the most highly specialized of intercellular substances represented by the dentin matrix changes in its properties if the cells are removed. If the cells in the bone matrix are killed that portion of the tissue becomes necrotic bone and is as much a piece of foreign matter as if a piece of bone toothbrush handle had been shot into the body. The fibers of fibrous tissue have no ability to grow, to attach themselves to any surface, or even to maintain their present form without the presence of living cells or fibroblasts.

There has been a great deal of discussion as to the method of formation of intercellular substances by the cells, and the nature of the reaction occurring between the cell and the formed material after it has been produced. In several intercellular substances the material passes through changes both of physical and of chemical character, but these are carried out by reaction with materials formed by the metabolism of the cell, for if the cells are removed the formed material will not go through any such changes. The intercellular substances, therefore, while they are chemically extremely complex, belong to the simplest classes of protein molecules, and have no such complexity of atomic movement, producing conditions of recurrent unsatisfied affinity, without which no idea of the metabolism of living cytoplasm can be obtained. Chemically, living cytoplasm may be roughly viewed as constantly undergoing chemical changes which are almost infinitely complex, and by means of which simpler substances are acted upon and built into its own molecule. Complex combinations are thrown off as products of its metabolism, and simpler substances are formed as decomposition products, or waste materials. Dr Brooks often used to say in his lectures that the most striking characteristic of living things was their ability to react upon their environment in such a way as to become better and better suited to it. When living cytoplasm, which is soft and without the physical properties of strength and rigidity, requires protection from physical influences, substances possessing these qualities are produced by it. Intercellular substances therefore were apparently formed by the cytoplasm in response to physical conditions of its environment, and are one of the phases of adaptation.

In the higher forms of animal life the class of tissues which have produced these formed materials, for the purpose of support, rigidity, and connection, are called the connective or supporting tissue. The formed materials are of two classes—those which are to connect associated and dependent parts, and those which give rigidity and protection. The fibrous tissues are of the first class, and are made up of materials possessing strength and elasticity. The bone and cartilage belong to the second class, and give strength and rigidity. The first sustain pulling stress, the latter shearing or bending stress, though both possess a certain amount of each.

Adaptability and the greatest range of variation are most striking characteristics of connective tissue which develop and change to meet all kinds of requirements of both mechanical and physical

environment to which they are subjected. These variations are produced by the production of increased amount of the intercellular material, its destruction, or the change of its character, under the influence of the cells of the tissue. No tissue responds more quickly to the demands made upon it by development or environment. When the muscles grow larger and stronger by development, the tendons and the bones to which they are attached change as quickly and in proportion. From the appearance of the skeleton the experienced anatomist can picture very accurately the muscular development of the individual to whom it belonged.

The cell wall of plants may be used as one of the simplest examples of supporting tissue. In this case each cell, in addition to its other

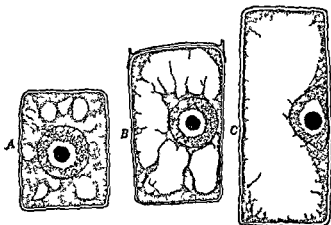


FIG 167 —Cells from the growing tip of a chestnut seedling (Dahlgren and Hepner)

functions produces its own supporting substance. These may be observed in the cells of a growing root tip. Plant an onion by selecting one larger than a small glass, fill the glass with water, and place the bulb on it. If this is placed in a sunny window, in a few hours little rootlets will be seen stretching down into the water. The rootlets of a sprouting chestnut also make very good material (Fig 167). If these are embedded in paraffin, the development of the cells and the formation of their supporting walls can be observed. The young cells near the tip will be found to be a mass of granular cytoplasm, with a large nucleus in the center, and a thin wall of cellulose which is the cell organ of support. As the cell increases in size, vacuoles appear in the cytoplasm which become

larger and larger. These vacuoles are filled with watery fluid which is not a part of the cytoplasm. If the cell remained a solid mass of cytoplasm, an enormous amount of food material would be required, which would be out of all proportion to the work which the cell is to perform. The vacuoles increase in size with the growth of the cell until there is a rim of cytoplasm in contact with the cell wall, and a central mass of cytoplasm surrounding the nucleus and connected with that at the periphery by fine threads. In still further growth these threads are broken, the nucleus is pushed to one side, and the whole central portion becomes one huge vacuole. There is now a cell wall, with a layer of cytoplasm covering its inner surface, which is kept in reaction with the nucleus by streaming around and around. This flowing of the cytoplasm in plant cells may be easily observed in the delicate stamen hairs of the ordinary Spiderwort, or in the cells of the water plants *Chara* or *Nitella*, which are easily found in most ponds. In this example it is seen that the cytoplasm remains in contact with the formed material which it produces for support, and that it is only sufficient in amount to form and maintain this material.

In general histology it has already been noted that the cells of connective tissue are very similar, and that the tissues differ chiefly in the character and arrangement of the intercellular substances. It has also been emphasized that the connective tissues all originate from a common form of embryonal connective tissue, or mesenchyme, and change from one form to another in development. These mutations of the connective tissues are their most striking characteristic, and must be clearly grasped if the bone, as an organ of support, is to be understood. For instance, embryonal connective tissue is transformed into fibrous tissue; fibrous tissue becomes arranged in a definite membrane, and is transformed into cartilage, which is again removed and transformed into bone. All these changes take place to meet the requirement of mechanical conditions and environment.

If the subcutaneous tissue of an embryo be examined in sections (Figs 168 to 183) the cells will be found to be irregular masses of cytoplasm with a nucleus in the central portion, and fine projections stretching out in all directions through an almost structureless intercellular substance. The fine projections of the cytoplasm meet those of the adjoining cells and form a network holding everything together. Because of the nature of cytoplasm, however, these possess very little strength, and very soon fine thread-like fibers



formed. A tendon must be considered as a highly specialized form of connective tissue, arranged to supply tensile strength. The degree of specialization of the tissue is judged by the extent to



FIG 178 —Connective tissue cells from which reticular fibers are developed (Black)

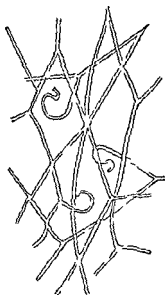


FIG 179 —Network of elastic fibers from the point of reflection of the mucous membrane of the lip from the gums (Black)

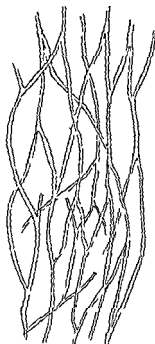


FIG 180 —Network of elastic fibers teased out from elastic tendon and showing the usual mode of division (Black)

which its characteristic features are developed, either in quantity or quality. In the tendon the fine, strong fibers have been gathered into bundles, a round nucleus would occupy too much space

It has therefore become elongated and more or less rod-shaped, and the cytoplasm has been squeezed out into thin leaf-like projections between the bundles. Each cell is in contact with several fibers, and each fiber in contact with the cytoplasm of cells which have produced them.

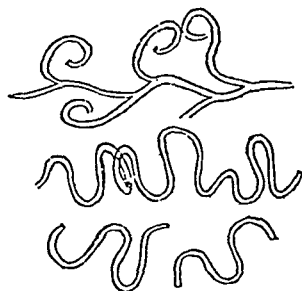


FIG 181 —Elastic fibers, showing their disposition to curl up when cut or broken. (Black)

It must be supposed that there is a constant reaction between the substance of the formed material and materials produced by the metabolism of the cytoplasm. In pathologic conditions the metabolism of the cytoplasm is disturbed, and there is a consequent change in the quality of the fibers. So in some pathologic conditions a relaxation and loss of tone is found in tendons and ligaments. In inflammations of the gingivæ the fibers become relaxed and stretched, so that the gingivæ are everted, but return to their normal condition when the pathologic condition has subsided, and the cells regain their normal metabolism.



FIG 182 —Cross-sections of elastic fibers, showing their forms as seen in a group passing between coarse white fibers. (Black)



FIG 183 —Tissue of the dental pulp, in which the development of the cells is not followed by any considerable formation of fibers. (Black)

To sum up what has been said, it is apparent that both phylogenetically and ontogenetically, intercellular substances have been produced and are maintained by cells in response to mechanical influences and to meet mechanical conditions. In all higher animals certain tissues, the connective tissues, have been set apart for this purpose, and the cells have been specialized to respond to mecha-

## INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES

ical stimuli and develop an intercellular substance adapted to the condition. This makes the supposition necessary that an embryonal connective-tissue cell may develop into any specialized form and that the kind of cell into which it develops will be determined by the character of mechanical stimuli which it receives. Just as the epithelial cells have been specialized to respond to the environments of light stimuli, vibration of the air, pressure, and chemical action which connect the organism with its environment, connective-tissue cells have been specialized to respond to mechanical stimuli, by the production of formed materials adapted to the mechanical conditions. These conceptions are fundamental to an understanding of bone structure and growth, and the mutations of connective tissue in general.

In no branch of histology is a clear conception of intercellular substances and the relation of cells to them as important as in the study of the teeth and their associated structures. Caries cannot be understood unless these fundamental ideas have been appreciated, and many statements in dental literature would never have appeared if the nature of intercellular substance and the relation of cytoplasm to it had been understood.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### BONE

**Definition** — Bone may be defined as a connective tissue whose intercellular substance is calcified and arranged in layers around nutrient canals or spaces. The cells are placed in cavities, lacunæ, between the layers, and receive their nourishment through very minute channels, canaliculi, which radiate from them and penetrate the layers.

#### STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

The structural elements of bone are:

1. Bone matrix, or intercellular substance, which is always arranged in layers or lamellæ

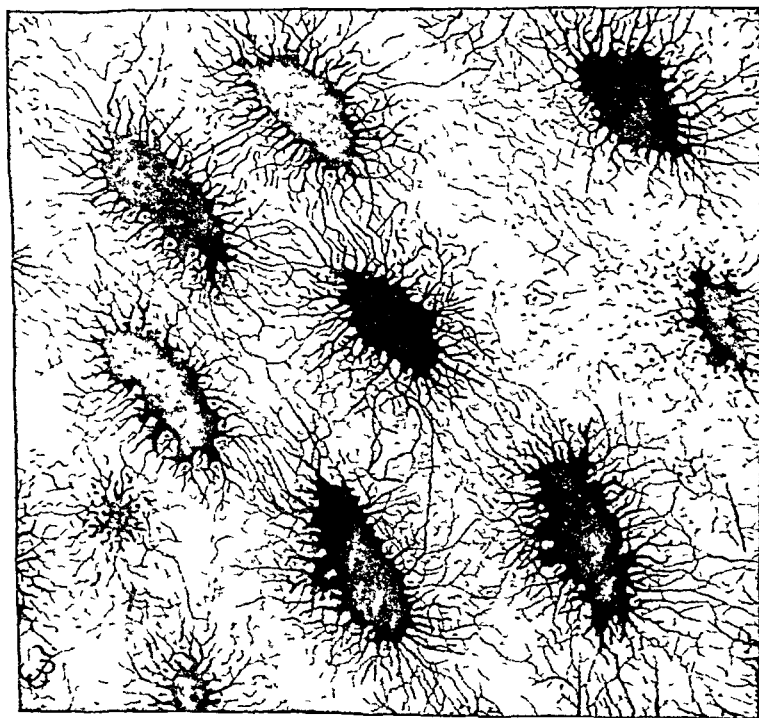


FIG 184 — From a section through the bone of a roebuck. The lacunæ are seen from above, and are filled with coloring matter. In places small dots are visible, which represent the cross-sections of bone canaliculi. (850 X) (Szymonowicz)

2 The bone cells or bone corpuscles which are embedded in the matrix between its layers

3 Lacunæ or the spaces in which the cells are found

4 Canaliculi, or the channels through the matrix by which the embedded cells receive nourishment

**Bone Matrix**—The bone matrix is composed of a dense organic basis of ultimately fibrous character which yields gelatin upon

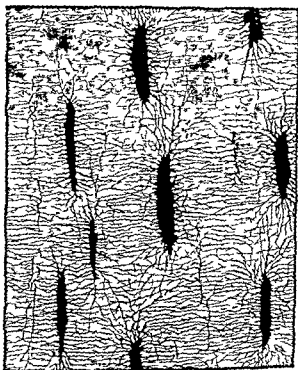


FIG. 165.—From a section through the bone of a roebuck. The lacunæ are seen from the side (850 X) (Szymonowicz)

boiling with water. With this inorganic salts are combined in a weak chemical union forming the hard substance of bone. By treatment with acids the inorganic salts can be removed, leaving the organic basis which retains the form of the tissue. In this condition the rigidity of the bone is destroyed. On the other hand by calcining at red heat the organic basis can be removed leaving the inorganic substances which retain the form of the tissue. In formation the organic basis is apparently formed first and then

the salts of lime are combined with it, through the agency of the formative cells or osteoblasts

**Bone Corpuscles.**—Bone corpuscles are the cells lying in the lacunæ. Each cell contains a single well-defined nucleus, lying in the centre of a granular cytoplasm. The cell apparently completely occupies the lacunæ, and from the central mass fine projections of cytoplasm extend through the canaliculi, which bring the bone corpuscles in intimate relation with certain areas of bone matrix. The processes of one cell anastomose with those of its neighbors through the canaliculi, so that there is a continuous network of living cytoplasm throughout the matrix.

**Lacunæ**—The lacunæ are flat, oval spaces about 20 microns long, 10 microns wide, and 5 or 6 microns thick. Their shape, therefore, in sections depends upon the way in which they are cut, as illustrated in Figs 184 and 185. When cut lengthwise they would appear as about 20 microns long and 6 wide in profile, or as about 20 microns long and 10 wide when seen from above.

**Canaliculi.**—These radiate from the lacunæ in all directions, opening into them by larger channels which branch and divide, becoming smaller as they pass farther into the matrix. They anastomose freely with those from adjoining lacunæ.

### THE VARIETIES OF BONE.

There are three varieties of bone differing in the arrangement of these structural elements. These are subperiosteal, Haversian system, and cancellous bone.

**Subperiosteal Bone**—This form of bone must be regarded as primarily a formative arrangement and more or less transitory, in which the layers are arranged parallel with the surface, and under a formative membrane. It contains canals (Volkmann's canals) with bloodvessels (Fig 186), connective tissue, etc. These penetrate the layers which are never arranged concentrically around them. It is always thin, that is, composed of comparatively few layers, and when a considerable thickness is formed it is cut out from within by absorptions beginning in the canals, and bone is rebuilt with layers arranged concentrically around the channels formed. In this way subperiosteal bone is converted into the second form.

**Haversian System Bone.**—In this variety the lamellæ are arranged concentrically around canals which contain bloodvessels, nerves,

and embryonal connective tissue and from which the cells in the lacunæ are nourished (Fig 187) These canals are, in general, parallel with the surface or the long axis of the bone and anastomose with each other A canal with the layers arranged around it constitute a Haversian system Between the Haversian systems are remains of the subperiosteal layers (interstitial lamellæ) that were left by the absorption and for that reason have been called fundamental lamellæ They have also been called ground lamellæ Haversian system bone is often called compact bone and makes up



FIG 186 — Subperiosteal bone showing Volkmann's canals

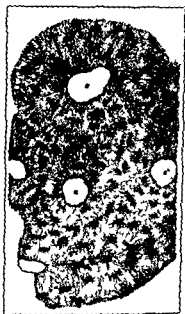


FIG 187 — Haversian system bone showing Haversian canals

the greater part of the shafts of the long bone and the plates of the flat ones It is never allowed to become greater in thickness than is necessary for strength and when sufficient thickness has been formed the deeper part is cut out by absorptions in the Haversian canals converting them into large irregular spaces The formation of a few layers around these spaces transforms the second type into the third or cancellous bone

**Cancellous Bone** — In this variety the lamellæ are arranged in delicate plates surrounding large irregular nutrient or marrow spaces These are filled by embryonal connective tissue and con

tain bloodvessels and nerves. The plates of cancellous bone are not arranged at haphazard, as might be supposed from a casual observer of sections, but are disposed in definite arrangement, which is determined by the directions of stress on the compact bone which they support (See illustrations in Chapter XXVII) They are not permanent and unchanging, but are continually being rebuilt in new directions, in response to the mechanical conditions to which the bone as a supporting organ is subjected

### THE ARRANGEMENT OF BONE.

**Compact Bone.**—A knowledge of the structural elements of bone can best be obtained by the study of sections ground from the shaft of a long bone. An old dry bone should be sawed across, near the middle of the shaft, in two places, so as to cut out a ring about a quarter of an inch thick. Then saw the ring through in two places with an arc of about a quarter of an inch on the outer surface. From this two slices should be sawed out, one transverse to the long axis of the bone, the other parallel with it. These are ground to not more than 8 or 10 microns in thickness and mounted in hard balsam. From a study of these two the arrangement of the lamellæ, and the shape and character of the lacunæ can be made out. Upon the outer surface of the transverse section will be found a larger or a smaller number of layers of subperiosteal bone which encircle the shaft, and consequently are called the circumferential lamellæ. The number of these layers will depend upon the position from which the section is taken, and the age of the bone. If the bone is increasing in circumference at the point from which the section is cut, there will be a considerable number of layers, and they will be easily seen. If the bone has been growing smaller in circumference at the point, there will be very little of subperiosteal bone, and it will be comparatively hard to recognize. The greatest part of the section will be made up of Haversian systems, in which from two or three to five or six layers are arranged around an Haversian canal. The lacunæ appear as irregularly oval spaces about 5 or 6 microns across and 15 to 20 microns in length. From them a great many minute canals radiate through the matrix, both toward the Haversian canal and away from it. The character of these canaliculi can only be appreciated by seeing them. They are filled in life by projections of the protoplasm of the bone corpuscles. They are suggestive of the rootlets of plants running through the



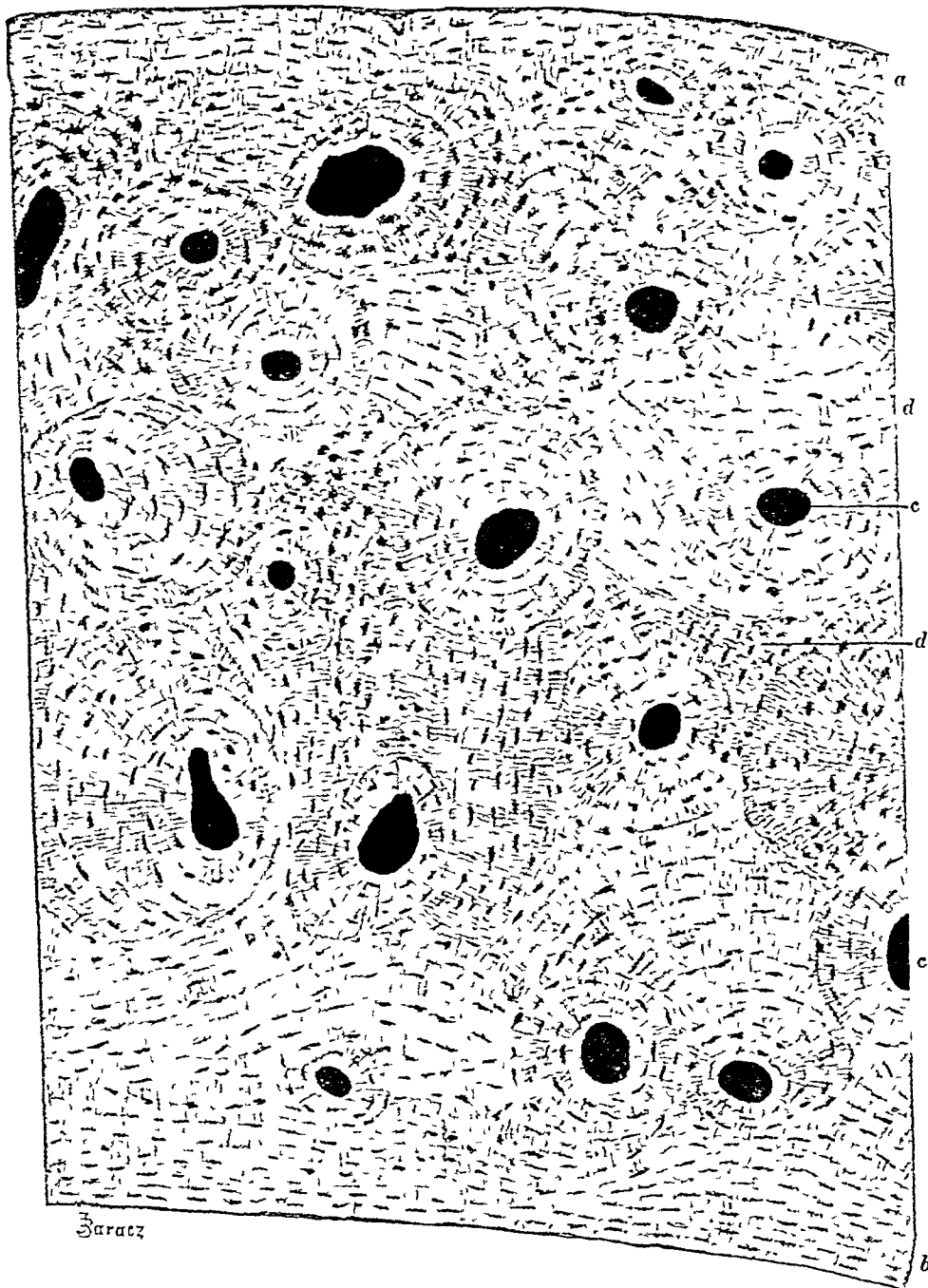
soil, and as in that case the rootlets are absorbing material from the soil and reacting with it in this case the protoplasmic contents of the canaliculi are reacting with the matrix, maintaining its quality. The portion of matrix through which the canaliculi from one lacunæ extend belongs to the bone corpuscles which occupies the lacunæ, as will be seen later. These cells have been enclosed in the matrix which they have formed. Between the Haversian systems will be found a few layers of interstitial or fundamental lamellæ. They are the remains of layers which were formed under the periosteum and were not entirely destroyed when it was replaced by Haversian systems (Plate XIII). The amount of interstitial lamellæ varies greatly in different specimens, as will be seen by comparing figures.

The Haversian canals anastomose with each other, this will be seen in many specimens. Many Haversian systems will be found imperfect in form, as for instance those shown in Plate XIII. This means that after these systems were completed, absorptions occurred in a neighboring canal which attacked the layers of the system, and later a new system was formed in this space by the deposit of concentric lamellæ. While bone is thought of as a hard and fixed tissue it is continually being built and rebuilt in this way. It is only by the understanding of the possibilities that we get the ideas that bone while hard and rigid is a plastic tissue and is continually being moulded by mechanical conditions to which it is subjected.

It will be seen also that the arrangement of the lamellæ becomes a record of the changes that have occurred in the formation of the tissue. The inner boundary of the section next to the marrow cavity will show a few layers parallel with the surface. These are known as the inner circumferential lamellæ. It is a mistake however to think of them as surrounding the marrow cavity in the same sense as the outer circumferential lamellæ surround the bone. If the section has been cut at a little distance from the center of the shaft it will have been noted that the marrow cavity is penetrated by very delicate spicules and that in fact the marrow cavity is produced by the spaces of cancellous bone, becoming larger and larger until they become one continuous space. The inner circumferential lamellæ are therefore the layers which have been formed around an enlarged nutrient or marrow space.

**Cancellous Bone** — The cancellous bone can best be studied in decalcified sections. A field from the central portion of a flat bone will show its typical arrangement. It is made up of delicate

# PLATE XIII



From a Ground Cross-section of the Diaphysis of the Human Metatarsus (Szymonowicz )

*a*, outer ground lamellae, *b* inner ground lamellae, *c*, Haversian lamellae, *d* intersutural lamellae All canals and bone cavities are filled with coloring matter and appear black (90 X )



flattened spicules surrounding larger or smaller irregular spaces which connect with each other very freely. Each spicule is composed of a few lamellæ which are arranged around the space. The structure of the spicules often becomes complicated by absorptions and rebuildings which have occurred to change their direction. The tissue which fills the spaces is a delicate, embryonal connective tissue in which osteoblasts and osteoclasts appear in response to mechanical conditions. It is richly supplied with bloodvessels, nerves, and lymphatics. The lacunæ and canaliculi are in no respect different from those of the Haversian system and subperiosteal bone.

## CHAPTER XVII

### BONE FORMATION AND GROWTH

BONE is one of the latest tissues to be formed and is always developed from an antecedent connective tissue of less specialized character. According to the character of the antecedent tissue bone formation is of two varieties—the formation from cartilage or *endochondral* bone formation, and that from fibrous connective tissue without the intervention of cartilage or *endomembranous* bone formation.

**Endochondral Bone Formation**—All of the bones of the endoskeleton are preformed in cartilage. The transformation of cartilage into bone is rather a substitution than a transformation for the original tissue is destroyed in the process and a new and more highly specialized one substituted for it.

Before ossification begins the cartilage has taken on the general form of the bone and is covered by a definite perichondrium. Ossification begins at separate centers and progresses through the cartilage, but the separate centers do not unite until the bone is about fully formed. In the long bone there are usually three centers—one near the center of the shaft, forming the *hypophysis*, and one near either end forming the *epiphyses*. These remain separated by a layer of cartilage until the length of the bone has been fully formed.

The first indication of the transformation of cartilage into bone is an increase in the size of the *lacunæ* and in the amount of cartilage matrix, which also shows changes in character, having *lime salts* deposited in it. The cartilage cells enlarge and show signs of degeneration the *lacunæ* become arranged in rows and as they increase in size more in the direction parallel with the axis of the cartilage the amount of matrix separating them is reduced. By this time the perichondrium on the surface of the cartilage opposite to the center has developed *osteoblasts* which begin the formation of *subperiosteal lamellæ* upon the surface of the cartilage and the perichondrium is transformed into *periosteum*. Opposite the center *osteoclasts* appear cutting into the cartilage followed by

buds of embryonal tissue. The osteoclasts dissolve away the remains of the cartilage matrix, opening up the spaces between the lacunæ and converting the rows of lacunæ into irregular channels or primary marrow spaces. Upon the spicules of calcified cartilage matrix, osteoblasts arrange themselves and begin to lay down lamellæ of bone. These changes progress from the center in both

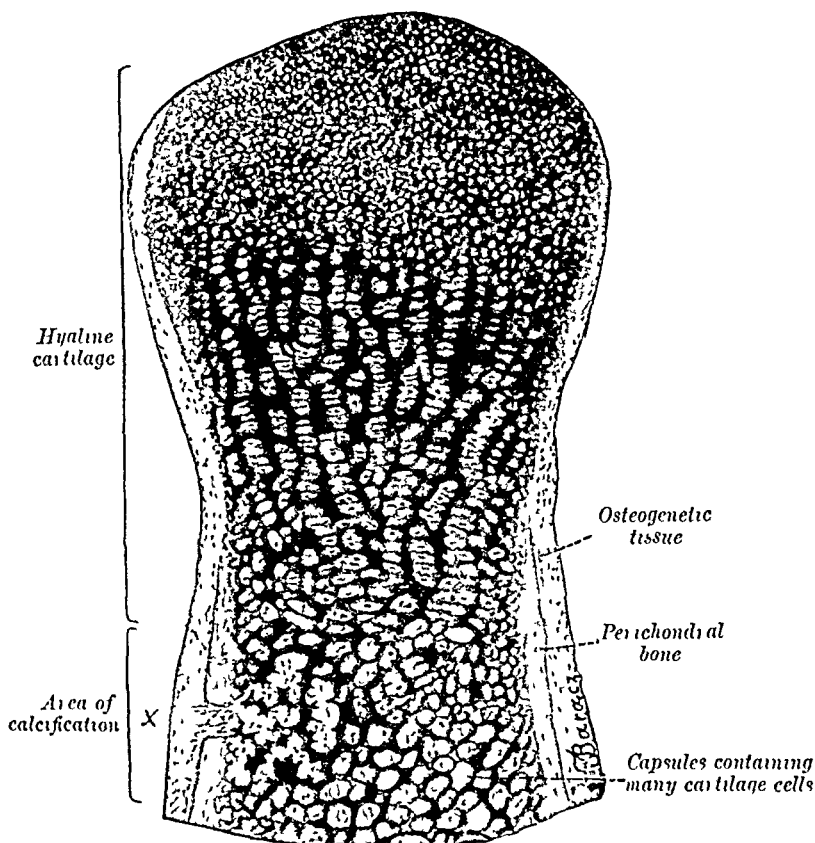


FIG. 188.—From a longitudinal section of a finger of a three-and-a-half-months human embryo. Two-thirds of the second phalanx is represented. At X a periosteal bud is to be seen. (85 X) (Szymonowicz)

directions, and all stages, from the typical hyaline cartilage to the formation of bone, may be seen in one section. These stages are illustrated by Figs. 188, 189, and 190.

From now on the bone grows by progressive transformation of cartilage and by the growth of bone under the periosteum, which will be considered under Bone Growth.

**Endomembranous Bone Formation**—The bones which are not preformed in cartilage are formed directly from fibrous tissue. This is well illustrated in the mandible. In the region of Meckel's cartilage and between it and the developing tooth germs the mesenchyme begins to show signs of specialization. Delicate fibers appear in the intercellular substance. Along these the connective-tissue cells arrange themselves and, taking on the form of osteoblasts, begin to lay down bone lamellæ (Fig. 191). These stretch out

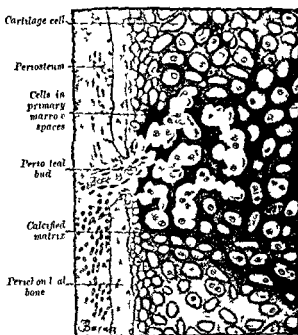


FIG. 189.—The place marked X in the preceding figure with stronger magnification (185 X) (Szymonowicz)

through the mesenchyme forming a network of delicate spicules until they surround Meckel's cartilage and grow up to the buccal and the lingual of the tooth germs. As soon as this network of bone lamellæ, containing embryonal connective tissue in its primary marrow spaces begins to take on definite form there is a specialization of the mesenchyme surrounding it, developing into fibrous tissue which becomes a periosteum. From this time onward the formation of bone progresses as will be described under the growth of bone.

**Bone Growth.**—If sections are cut transversely through the shaft of a long bone from a fetus, the surface will be found to be covered by a well-formed periosteum, which is actively laying down layers of subperiosteal bone. The central portion of the bone is made up of a network of spicules surrounding primary marrow spaces,

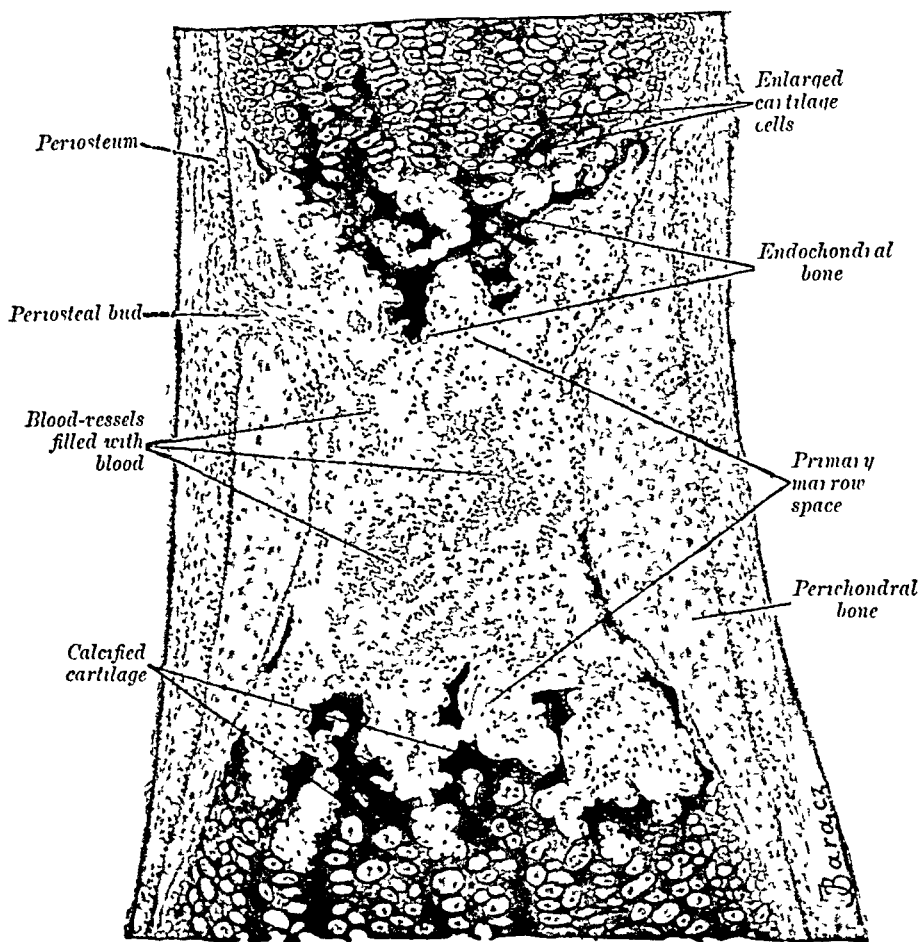


FIG 190 —From longitudinal section of a finger of a four months embryo. Only the diaphysis of the second phalanx is represented. (85 X) (Szymonowicz)

there being no true marrow cavity. The formation of the subperiosteal layers does not progress at a uniform rate at all points on the circumference, but they are piled up at certain points forming longitudinal ridges with grooves between them. These grooves become arched across, enclosing part of the connective tissue of the inner layer of the periosteum, and contain bloodvessels and



nerves. Soon after these spaces are enclosed absorptions begin in their walls destroying a large part of the subperiosteal lamellæ and forming primary marrow spaces. As soon as these spaces have reached a certain size the absorptions stop, and osteoblasts appear upon the wall of the space and begin to lay down lamellæ

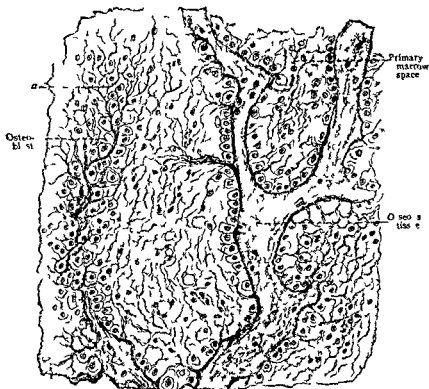


FIG. 191.—Section through the lower jaw of an embryo sheep (decalcified with picric acid). At *a* and immediately below are seen the fibers of a primitive marrow cavity lying close together and engaged in the formation of the ground substance of the bone while the cells of the marrow cavity with their processes arrange themselves on either side of the newly formed lamellæ and functionate as osteoblasts (Bohm Davidoff Huber) (300 X)

upon its circumference until an Haversian system has been produced with an Haversian canal at its center. In this way the bone increases in diameter and this process continues until a considerable thickness of Haversian system bone is formed. In all bone growth there is the alternation of formation, destruction, and rebuilding, and it must be remembered that this continues as long as the bone functions as an organ of support. As the shaft becomes larger the

primary marrow spaces at the center are enlarged by the absorption, and a few lamellæ are laid down again upon their walls, until finally in the central portion of the shaft the true marrow cavity is formed. As the thickness of Haversian system bone becomes greater, absorptions occur in the Haversian canals, cutting out large, irregular channels, around which a few lamellæ are laid down, and so the Haversian system bone becomes converted into cancellous bone and is opened into the marrow cavity as it grows larger.

**Growth of Membrane Bones**—The growth of the membrane bone progresses in a very similar way. As soon as the periosteum is formed subperiosteal bone is laid down and converted into Haversian system bone, forming the compact plate of the surface, leaving the cancellous portion first formed at the center. When a certain thickness of compact bone has been formed, absorptions occur in the Haversian canals, converting the deeper portions into cancellous bone. This process may be reversed. Absorptions may occur under the periosteum, cutting deeply into the Haversian system bone, and then a few subperiosteal layers laid down upon it. When this occurs lamellæ are laid down around the marrow spaces, converting the cancellous bone into Haversian system bone to maintain the required strength. In this way the bones are moulded into shape, adapting them to the mechanical conditions to which they are subjected. There is an oscillation between formation and destruction, by which the balance adapted to the mechanical conditions is maintained. It has often been noted that bones are never allowed to become more bulky than is necessary to perform their function.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### PERIOSTEUM<sup>1</sup>

**Definition**—The periosteum is the formative and protective membrane which covers the outer surface of the bone. All periosteum has certain structural characteristics in common, but because of structural differences two classes are recognized—attached and unattached—each of which may be simple or complex. Periosteum may thus be classified as follows:

- 1 Unattached simple
- 2 Unattached complex
- 3 Attached simple
- 4 Attached complex

**Function of Periosteum**—The importance to the dentist of a knowledge of the structure and function of the periosteum can scarcely be exaggerated. It has been the knowledge of this tissue and its function that has led to all the advancement in bone surgery of modern time. Repair and regeneration of bone is largely accomplished through its agency.

The periosteum forms the immediate covering of all the bones and is continuous over their entire surface except the portion covered by cartilage. Each bone therefore has a periosteum of its own which does not continue around the articulation to the bones with which it joins. Bones that are united by suture are however, covered by a common periosteum. If the flesh and overlying tissues are carefully removed from a long bone, the periosteum will be seen as a smooth white, lustrous membrane having much the same appearance of a tendon on most of its surface. But at some places which correspond to the positions where muscles or fascia

<sup>1</sup>In the presentation of this chapter it is impossible adequately to express my indebtedness to Dr G V Black. Almost all of the illustrations are taken from *The Periosteum and Peridental Membrane* published by him in 1887. I have always felt that this book had never received the attention it deserves. Only one thousand copies of it were printed and they were not sold until the orthodontists exhausted the edition. *The book is now entirely out of print and is very difficult to obtain.* I have studied this book for years and have repeated almost all of the work described in it but I have felt that it was impossible for text book purposes to improve upon the illustrations.

were attached it appears ragged and dull, for the tissues had to be cut to separate them from the outer layer of the periosteum, to which they were firmly adherent. In all other places the tissues separate easily in dissection, in fact, are not attached at all, except by the lightest of areolar tissue, which is very easily broken, and the tissues may be separated from the surface of the membrane with the finger or the handle of a scalpel. Now, if the periosteum is slit along a smooth surface with the scalpel and the handle inserted between the bone and the membrane, it will be found to separate readily from the bone over most of its surface. If the process is watched closely, little strings will be seen apparently running from the periosteum to the bone, and being broken as they are separated. These are mostly small bloodvessels which are running into canals in the bone. In this process the periosteum seems like a closely adapted sac or elastic glove, clothing the surface of the bone, as if surrounding it in a fibrous bag. If the separation of the periosteum from the bone is continued, it will be found that it does not separate as easily in all places. As the articular ends are approached it becomes suddenly fastened to the underlying bone, and the blade of the knife must be used. The periosteum now appears as a very thin, tough, and inelastic membrane, that is torn with difficulty, but it is so thin that it is difficult now to separate it from the bone without cutting it through. When this point of attachment is reached it seems that the periosteum is sinking into the substance of the bone, and from the examination of its structure it is found that this is practically what has happened.

Comparing the periosteum to a sac surrounding the bone, it is found sewed firmly down at the margin of the cartilage around the articular ends. Besides the attachment around the cartilage, the periosteum will be found adherent in the following positions: Where muscles or fascia are attached to the outer layer of the periosteum, where it approaches the insertion of tendons or ligaments, and where the skin or mucous membrane seem attached to the underlying bone, as around the auditory meatus, the gums, mucous membrane of the nose, etc. In all such positions the periosteum is firmly attached to the bone—in fact, becomes a part of it—and through this medium the connections between muscles, fascia, etc., and the framework of the skeleton is accomplished.

This feature of the anatomy of the periosteum has never been studied in the detail it deserves, especially by the dentist. It is of the greatest importance in the management of the diseases of

bone especially those involving the formation of pus, for these lines of attachment determine the direction in which the pus will proceed along the surface of the bone. When pus generated within the bone reaches the surface, it will lift an unattached periosteum and run along the surface until it reaches a line of attachment. Here it can penetrate the periosteum more easily than it can separate it from the bone. When a line of attachment is reached therefore, the direction of the burrowing is determined by the attached areas. The pus penetrates the periosteum more easily than it separates its attachments from the bone, but it lifts the unattached periosteum so easily that it will often run along a line of attachment for a long distance.

These factors often become of great importance in determining the position in which alveolar abscesses will point. For instance if an abscess from a bicuspid root or the mesial root of a molar, reaches the surface of the bone above the attachment of the buccinator, it cannot penetrate its attachment and pass downward to open on the gum, but may run out over the surface of the muscle and open on the cheek, producing the crow's foot scar so often seen. An abscess from an upper cuspid may reach the surface of the bone in the canine fossa between the attachments of the nasalis and caninus, and lift the periosteum extending upward, and open at the inner canthus of the eye between the orbicularis and the angular head of the quadratus labii superioris. If these abscesses had been reached with a lance through the mucous membrane, at the proper time, a disfiguring scar would have been avoided. Accurate knowledge of the attached layers of the periosteum would have made it certain that they could never point in the mouth cavity without assistance.

**Layers of the Periosteum**—Periosteum is always composed of two distinct layers

1 An outer or fibrous layer which is essentially protective and to which muscles and fasciæ are attached. This may be either simple or complex.

2 An inner or osteogenetic layer which is essentially the vital functioning layer and is, as its name indicates concerned with the formation of bone. This may be either simple or complex.

**The Structural Elements**—The periosteum is composed of the following structural elements

- 1 White fibers in coarse bundles (in the outer layer)
- 2 White fibers in very fine bundles (in the inner layer)

3. Elastic fibers
- 4 The penetrating fibers, or white fibers of the periosteum, that in the growth of bone are included in its substance.
5. Embryonal connective-tissue cells.
6. Osteoblasts or bone-forming cells
7. Osteoclasts or bone-absorbing cells.

**Unattached Periosteum.**—In the unattached periosteum the inner layer is always simple, and the outer layer may be either simple

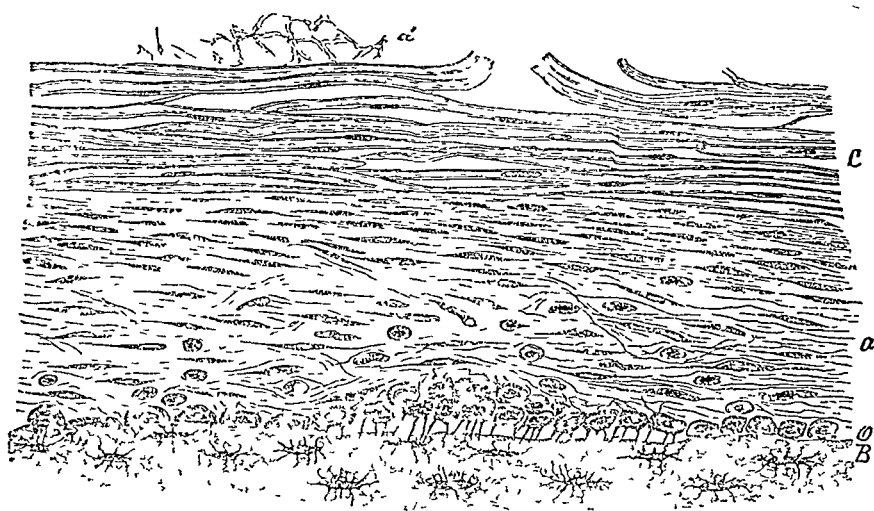


FIG 192 —Non-attached periosteum from the shaft of the femur of the kitten *B*, bone, *O*, layer of osteoblasts In the central portion of the figure they have been pulled slightly away from the bone, displaying the processes to advantage It will be observed that the fibers of the periosteum do not enter the bone *a*, inner layer of fine white fibrous tissue (osteogenetic layer) showing the nuclei of the fibroblasts and a number of developing connective-tissue cells, which probably become osteoblasts, *c*, outer layer, or coarse fibrous layer, in which fusiform fibroblasts are also rendered apparent by double staining with hematoxylin and carmine, *d*, some remains of the reticular tissue connecting the superimposed tissue with the periosteum ( $\frac{1}{2}$  immersion) (Black)

or complex, depending apparently upon the requirements of protection In general, the more exposed the position the thicker is the layer, and the larger and stronger the bundles of fibers of which it is composed

**Simple Unattached Periosteum** —Where the periosteum is covered by a thick layer of muscles which are not attached to it, as in the thigh, the thinnest and simplest form of periosteum is found An illustration, drawn by Dr Black, of the periosteum from the femur of a kitten will illustrate its structure (Fig 192) The outer layer

is composed chiefly of bundles of white fibers, most of which run in a direction parallel with the long axis of the bone. The bundles are comparatively small and much flattened, so as to be quite ribbon like. The inner layer contains a much greater number of cells lying among extremely delicate fibers. In its outer portion many of the cells are embryonal in character. In contact with the surface of the bone is a continuous layer of osteoblasts which are building subperiosteal bone in the young animal, processes of



FIG. 193.—Periosteum from the shaft of the tibia of the pig lengthwise section showing the complex arrangement of fibers in the coarse or outer fibrous layer that sometimes occurs under muscles that perform sliding movements upon it. *B* bone. *O* layer of osteoblasts. The tissue has been pulled slightly away from the bone in mounting the section and part of the osteoblasts have clung to the bone some have clung to the tissues while others are suspended midway their processes clinging to each. *a* layer of fine fibers inner or osteogenetic layer of the periosteum. *b* first lamina of the coarse or outer fibrous layer the fibers of which are in this case circumferential exposing the cut ends. It will be observed that there are ten lamina in the make up of the outer layer the lengthwise and circumferential fibers alternating. The ones marked *f* and *t* are very delicate ribbon like forms which have shifted from their normal position in the mounting of the section so as to present their sides to view instead of their ends thus displaying their structure to advantage. The illustration shows how readily separable these lamina are. *r* reticular tissue (*r* immersion) (Black)

their cytoplasm extending into the canaliculi of the matrix which they have formed. At one point in the illustration the osteoblasts are pulled off from the surface of the bone and show these processes stretched out of the canaliculi.

**Complex Unattached Periosteum**—In some places, especially where muscles or tendons perform sliding movements over an unattached periosteum, the outer layer, instead of being simple may be very complex. This is illustrated in Dr. Black's drawing

(Fig 193), from the periosteum of the tibia of a young pig. In this instance the outer layer is composed of very much flattened bundles of white fibers, arranged alternately longitudinally and circularly. Ten layers may be counted in the section. The inner layer is of the same character as in a simple specimen.

**Attached Periosteum**—The attached periosteum differs from the unattached by having the fibers of the inner layer arranged in bundles, around which the bone matrix is deposited by the osteoblasts, embedding them in the substance of the matrix and calcify-

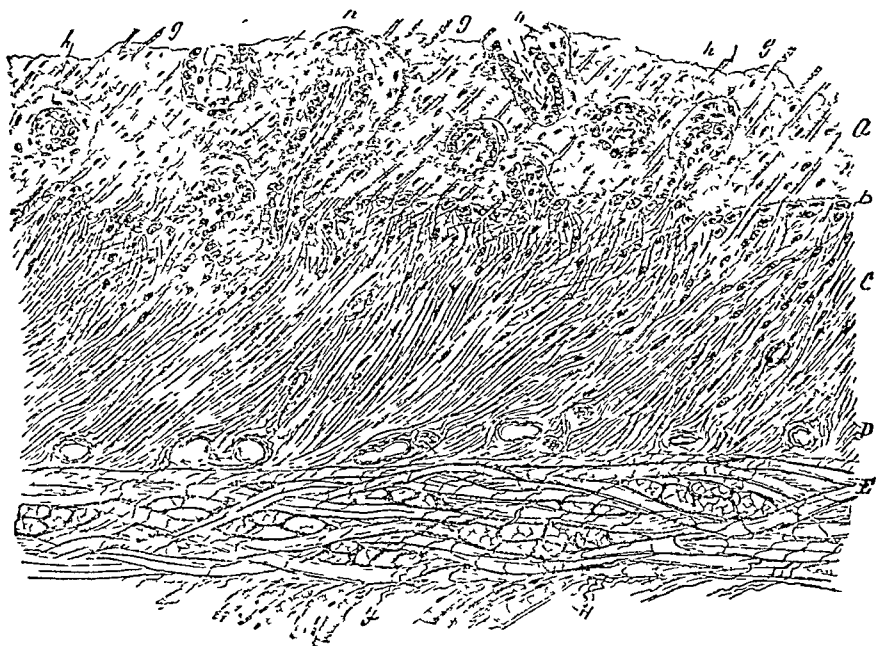


FIG 194—Simple attached periosteum *a*, bone, *b*, osteoblasts, *c*, fibers of the inner layer, *D*, bloodvessels of the inner layer, *E*, outer layer, *F*, muscle fibers attached to outer layer (Black)

ing them with it. These fibers constitute the penetrating fibers. They were first described by Sharpey, and have been called Sharpey's fibers. He, however, apparently did not understand their importance or manner of formation. The fibers of the inner layer are built into the substance of the bone in this way wherever tissues are attached to the outer layer of the periosteum.

**Simple Attached Periosteum.**—Where the pull of tissues attached to the outer layer of the periosteum is in one direction, the fibers of the inner layer are inclined in the same direction (Figs 194 and



195) As the surface of the bone is approached the fibers are gathered into strong bundles to be inserted in the bone the osteo-



FIG 195 —A photomicrograph of an attached periosteum similar to Fig 194 From the alveolar process of a sheep (About 80 X)

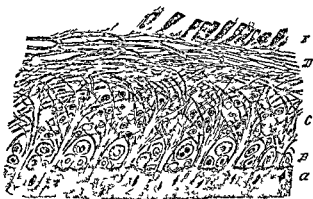


FIG 196 —Attached periosteum from beneath the attachment of the muscles of the lower lip of the sheep *A* bone *B* osteoblasts with the fibers emerging from the bone between them *C* inner layer with fibers decussating and joining the inner side of the coarse fibrous layer in opposite directions (this is rather an unusual form of this layer of the periosteum) *D* coarse fibrous layer *E* attachment of muscular fibers (Black)

blasts covering the surface of the bone everywhere between the fibers The outer and inner layers are united by the interlacing

of their fibers. At the junction of the outer and the inner layers many bloodvessels are seen.

**Complex Attached Periosteum.**—Where the pull upon the outer layer is in many directions, the fibers of the inner layer, after emerging from the bone, break up into smaller bundles and anastomose in all directions, arching around to interlace with the fibers of the outer layer, and in this way they sustain force in all directions (Fig. 196). This is illustrated in Dr Black's drawing of a section of attached periosteum from beneath the attachment of the muscles of the lower lip of a sheep.

## CHAPTER XIX

### THE ATTACHMENT OF THE TEETH

THAT the teeth are not a part of the osseous system, but are appendages of the skin supported in man by a special development of bone forming the alveolar ridges of the maxillary bones is as well established as any fact concerning human dentition. The work of Oscar Hertwig published in 1874, established very clearly the homology existing between the teeth and the dermal or placoid scales of the ganoid, siluriod and dipnoan fishes both as to similarity of structure and development.

Much has been written descriptive of the teeth of various animals their modifications of form, and attachment to adapt them to modifications of function and various classifications of the means of attachment have been made. Of these, perhaps the best and most logical is given by Charles Tomes in his *Dental Anatomy* describing four forms of attachment (1) By fibrous membrane (2) by hinge-joint, (3) by ankylosis, (4) by insertion in a socket or gomphosis.

These various forms of attachment will be taken up, and if possible the comparison between them and the evolution of the more complicated forms from the simpler will be shown. The study must begin with an examination of the structure and attachment of the placoid scales and the simplest form of tooth, as illustrated in the shark.

**Structure of Dermal Scales**—The dermal scales are composed of a conical cap of calcified tissue developed from within outward, by an epithelial organ and corresponding in structure to the enamel. This cap is supported upon a conical papilla of calcified tissue formed from without inward and corresponding to dentin. In the outer layer the arrangement of the fine tubules through the calcified matrix correspond very closely to human dentin, but in the inner portions it is to be understood only by considering the formation of the dentin as progressing irregularly over the surface of the pulp and so dividing the pulp tissue into portions enclosed in large canals from which the fine tubules radiate. The base of

this partially calcified papilla has a calcified connective tissue built on to it by the derma or connective-tissue layer of the skin, which corresponds to cementum forming the basal plate, spreading out more or less in the connective-tissue layer of the skin, and into which the fibers of this layer are built, so attaching the denticle or dermal scale to the deep layer of the coreum. This tissue very exactly resembles cementum. It is formed on the dentin as the cementum of a human tooth is, and shows the connective-tissue fibers embedded in it. In the ganoids the basal plates of adjoining scales unite, forming the armor plates of such fish as the sturgeon and gar-pike, and the dentical remains projecting from the surface of the plates.



FIG 197 —Showing additions of bone of attachment to the bone of the jaw.  
(Tomes)

**Attachment by Fibrous Membrane**—In the simplest teeth, as of the shark (*Lamna cornubica*, Fig. 3), which are typical dermal scales, there is an exactly similar method of attachment, which may be taken as the simplest and most rudimentary, or attachment in a fibrous membrane. That is, there is no development or modification of the arch of the jaw, and the teeth have no direct attachment to the bone, in fact (Fig 197), the jaws themselves are chiefly cartilage.

**Attachment by Hinge Joint.**—The formation of the hinge attachment as illustrated in many of the fishes (Fig. 198), may be understood as a modification of the attachment in a fibrous

membrane in a more highly specialized creature. These hinged teeth are found in many fishes and in the poison fangs of snakes. The jaws are calcified, and the basal plate or cementum may be considered as confined to or specially developed on, one side of the dentin papilla, which is also more highly developed especially in snakes. This cementum is built and calcified around the fibers of the fibrous tissue which pass directly to the bone of the jaw

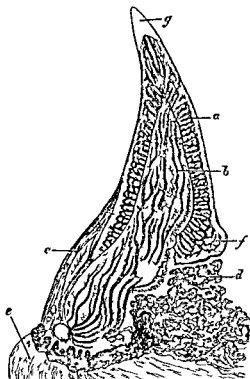


FIG 193 —Attachment by hinge joint. Tooth of a hake. *a* vasodentin *b* pulp *c* elastic hinge *d* buttress to receive *f* formed out of bone of attachment *e* bone of jaw *f* thickened base of tooth *g* enamel tip (Tomes)

at that point. This bone is to be regarded as an addition to the jaw specially developed for each tooth. Thus there is not only a modification in the arrangement of the cementum, but a development of bone for attachment of the tooth. The bloodvessels pass through the fibers of the hinge to the pulp, and are not affected by the motion of the tooth on the hinge, in fact, the pulp seems to be attached to the hinge. There are many complications of this

method of attachment, but this may be taken as the type and the manner of its modification from the rudimentary conditions. The distinction, in this form of attachment, from the dermal scale consists in a modification of the arrangement of the cementum of the basal plate and a development of bone from the jaw to attach fibers which pass directly from cementum to bone. It should also be said that there are developments in the hinge teeth related to the third form of attachment, namely, ankylosis, which cannot be understood until this form is studied.

**Attachment by Ankylosis.**—The third form of attachment, ankylosis (Fig. 199), or direct calcified union with the bone of the jaw, cannot be understood without a careful study of the nature and formation of the dentin in these rudimentary teeth. It is evident, from a study of the dentin of the dermal scales, that compared with human dentin, the tissue is rudimentary and not differentiated from other similar connective tissues. The tubules are comparatively very irregular, and resemble strikingly the tubules found in the secondary dentin formed by a degenerating pulp. The odontoblasts, or dentin-forming cells, are not like the highly specialized cells which form the primary human dentin, but resemble very closely simple spindle-shaped connective-tissue cells. The nucleus is larger and oval in form, and the protoplasm stretches off from it in one direction into a fibril instead of in two directions into a spindle. The cells are much smaller than human odontoblasts and nearer the size of ordinary spindle cells of the human pulp. In fact, they look more like specially developed spindle cells than odontoblasts. The formation of dentin begins on the surface, at the apex of a cone-shaped papilla of connective tissue, and proceeds inward. If the formation continues uniformly over the surface of the papilla, a solid layer of fine-tubuled dentin results, but it often proceeds irregularly, apparently having special reference to the neighborhood of bloodvessels, so that irregular projections of dentin are found on its inner surface, dividing the pulp more or less into portions enclosed in larger channels or tubes. These may be very regular in arrangement and form around bloodvessels loops embedding the bloodvessel in the calcified tissue, producing what has been called vaso or vascular dentin, but the formation is still from the surface of the pulp until it is obliterated, except for what remains in the larger canals. As distinguished from this formation of dentin we find in the body of the dental papilla of many fishes the formation of spicules of calcified tissue, which

resemble neither dentin nor typical bone, shooting down through the substance of the pulp. They are more to be compared with the first formation of bone in membranes or in the embryonal connective tissue of the body of the human jaw, which is afterward

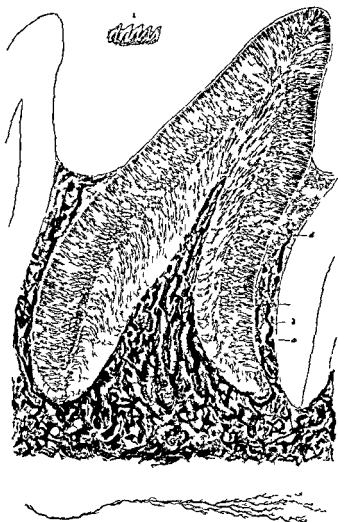


FIG 199.—Tooth of scarus showing attachment by ankylosis. 1 vertical section of five pharyngeal teeth of *Scarus muricatus*. 2 section of a single tooth magnified. a osteodentin b dentin c enamel d cementum 3 termination of a single dentinal tubule (Owen)

removed by absorption and replaced by true Haversian system bone. These calcifications contain lacunae, and have tubules or canaliculi running through them and so, as Tomes says are inter

mediate between dentin and bone. They divide the pulp into irregular spaces, and interdigitate, or perhaps actually join, the formation of dentin which has been progressing from the surface of the pulp. These spicules run down into the bone of the jaw, forming an actual calcified attachment for the tooth with the jaw; but in this view of it, it is to be regarded as a calcification or rather a formation of bone in the pulp papilla interlocking with the dentin. In some of the fishes, as in *Scarus*, there is at the same time the remains of the cementum of the basal plate formed on the outside of the dentin around the base of the cone. Ankylosis is confined to the teeth of many fishes, and may be stated as a modification from the dermal scale, resulting in the reduction or loss of

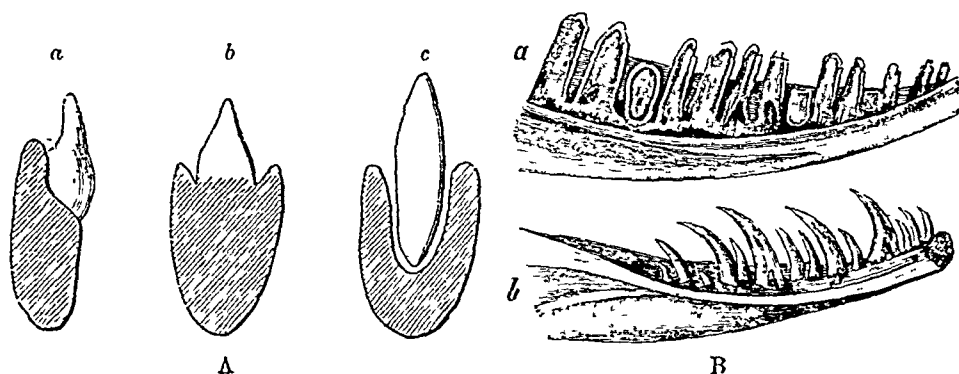


FIG 200—A, diagrams of tranverse sections through the jaws of reptiles showing pleurodont (a), acrodont (b), and thecodont (c) dentitions. B a, lower jaw of *Zoötoea vivipara*; b, of *anguis fragilis*. (After Leydig.) Weidersheim, Comparative Anatomy of Vertebrates.)

the basal plate and an ossification of the pulp continuing through the connective tissue at the base of the pulp to the body of the jaw.

**Attachment by Implantation in Socket.**—The development of the fourth form of attachment, by implantation in a socket, seems to be an evolution starting from the same point but proceeding in a different direction (Fig 200). It is associated with the very great increase in the size of the teeth and consequent necessity for a stronger attachment. The evolution of this is illustrated in the teeth of reptiles. Weidersheim classifies the teeth of reptiles as (1) resting upon a ledge on the lingual side of the jaw—pleurodont dentition, (2) resting on a slight ridge around them—acrodont dentition, (3) lodged in permanent alveoli, as in the crocodile—thecodont dentition. These three classes illustrate three stages in the development of the socket method of attachment.



In the simplest form there is a cone-shaped tooth attached to the bone around its base, by the fibers being built into the cementum and bone. There is little modification of the rudimentary form, and little development of bone for its attachment. In a higher form the tooth has become long or peg shaped, and the bone has grown up around a portion of it to support it, but it is attached to the bone by connective tissue fibers, being built into the cementum on the surface of the tooth and into the bone of attachment on the jaw. The development of the form of the tooth to the peg from the cone may be understood as a continuing of the development of odontoblasts, and the formation of dentin (which always begins at the apex of the cone) farther and farther down the sides of the dental papillæ. Then the formation of the cementum, which begins around the base of the cone and continues down on the outside of the calcified dentin, covering its outer surface, and building the connective tissue fibers into the tooth. The development of bone accompanies, or rather follows that of the tooth building the other ends of these fibers into the bone which is developed to support the tooth.

**Summary**—To review the subject matter of this chapter all teeth have been evolved from the simple placoid scale. In the simplest forms as in the teeth of the shark, there is no relation to the bone whatever but the fibers of the subcutaneous tissue are built into the basal plate of cementum. As the tooth becomes larger and demands more support, there is added to the bone of the jaw that which Tomes has called bone of attachment. The osteoblasts build up additions to the jaw which surround and embed the fibers, so that the fibers which were originally in the subcutaneous tissue are fastened to the bone at one end and to the cementum at the other. The evolutions of attachment by hinge joint and by gomphosis are therefore direct evolutions from the simple attachment in membrane. The form of ankylosis is also evolved from the simplest type but in this case the bone of attachment is associated with the pulp, and the formation of bone and dentin become interlocked and united.

## CHAPTER XX.

### THE PERIDENTAL MEMBRANE

IN one sense the peridental membrane may be considered as the most important tissue to the dentist, for upon it the usefulness of the teeth and their comfort to the individual is dependent. It makes no difference how perfect a crown may be, or how perfectly any damage which may have occurred to it may have been restored, unless the peridental membrane is in a healthy and fairly normal condition, the tooth will be useless, and the individual would be much more comfortable without it

**Definition**—The peridental membrane may be defined as that tissue which fills the space between the surface of the root and the bony wall of its alveolus, surrounds the root occlusally from the border of the alveolus, and supports the gingivæ. It is necessary to emphasize the three parts of the definition. The peridental membrane does not stop at the border of the bone, but continues to surround the root as far as the tissues are attached to it. In general, the dental profession has thought of the peridental membrane as only that tissue which occupies the space between the root and the wall of its alveolus. As will be seen from a study of sections later (Figs 203 and 204), the structure of the tissue surrounding the root between the gingival line and the border of the process is essentially the same as that in the alveolus, and quite different from the much coarser fibrous mat forming the submucous layer of the gum tissue. The peridental membrane also extends into the free margin of the gum and is the means of its support, holding the gingivæ close to the surface of the tooth and supporting them in the interproximal spaces. The importance of this portion of the peridental membrane and the functions which it performs have been strongly emphasized in the last few years, in their relation to the extensions of caries and the beginnings of pyorrhea. Most of the diseases of the peridental membrane which result in the final loss of the teeth have their beginnings in this portion.

**Nomenclature.**—The peridental membrane belongs to the class of fibrous membranes which form the covering of organs, the cap-

sules of glands, and especially those membranes which cover the organs of support. Its closest relative is the periosteum in the attached portions with which it has many points of structure in common but it differs from the periosteum in any position in important respects. It has often been called the alveodental periosteum but this name implies that the periosteum is folded down into the alveolus and back upon the surface of the root which is an entirely erroneous conception of the membrane. This idea would imply that it was a double membrane having one layer covering the bone and another covering the root, the two uniting in the middle portions. But instead, the periosteum must be



FIG. 201.—Drawing to show the arrangement of the fibers in a labiolingual section through an incisor of a kitten. (Black.)

considered as stopping at the border of the alveolus,<sup>1</sup> and being united with the peridental membrane around its circumference. Many writers use the word *pericementum* in place of peridental membrane. The author prefers and in this book will use, the term peridental membrane though the two are synonymous.

**Divisions**—Purely for convenience in description, the peridental membrane is divided into three portions. The *gingival portion* that portion of the membrane which surrounds the root occlusally

<sup>1</sup> The student must be reminded that the word *alveolus* means a hole and the *alveolar process* the portion of the bone which contains the holes. In dental writing the word *alveolus* has often been incorrectly used in place of process or alveolar process.

PLATE XIV



Longitudinal Section of Periodontal Membrane  
Stained with hematoxylin and eosin Showing border of alveolar process

2  
1  
(  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1

from the border of the alveolar process and supports the gingivæ; the *alveolar portion*, the portion of the membrane from the border

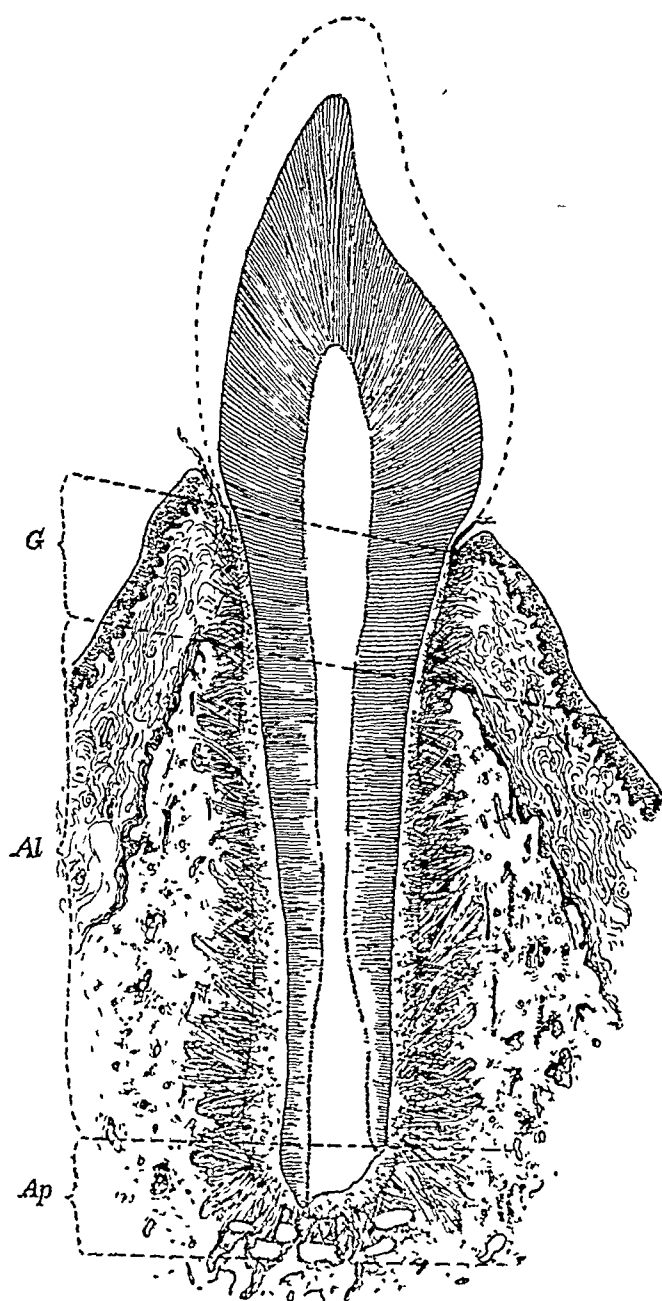


FIG 202 —Diagram of the fibers of the periodontal membrane G, gingival portion; Al, alveolar portion, Ap, apical portion (From a photograph of a section from incisor of sheep)

of the process to the region of the apex of the root and the *apical portion*, which surrounds the apex of the root and fills the apical space. These are illustrated in the diagram (Figs 201 and 202).

**The Structural Elements**—These are (1) White connective-tissue fibers, (2) fibroblasts (3) cementoblasts (4) osteoblasts (5) osteoclasts, (6) epithelial structures which have sometimes been called the glands of the peridental membrane, (7) bloodvessels, (8) nerves, (9) lymphatic vessels.

**Functions**—The peridental membrane performs three functions (1) A physical function—it maintains the tooth in relation to the adjacent hard and soft tissues. (2) A vital function—the formation of bone on the alveolar wall and of cementum on the surface of the root. (3) A sensory function—the sensation of touch for the tooth being exclusively in this membrane.

It is necessary to emphasize the two parts of the physical function—the peridental membrane not only supports the teeth in their relation to the bones which carry them, and sustains them against the forces of occlusion and mastication, but it also sustains the soft tissues in their proper relation to the teeth. The second part of the physical function is fully as important as the first, and the study of the structure of the tissue related to it and the adaptation of the form of the gingivæ to the anatomic form of the teeth and alveolar process are important considerations which should never be lost sight of in the making of artificial crowns.

**Classes of Fibrous Tissue**—The fibrous tissue of the peridental membrane is entirely of the white variety, but may be divided into two classes. The *principal* fibers and the *indifferent* or *interstitial* tissue. The former perform the physical function of the membrane; the latter simply fill in spaces between the bundles of fibers and surround and accompany the bloodvessels and the nerves.

**The Principal Fibers of the Peridental Membrane**—These may be defined as the fibers which springing from the cementum, are attached at their other extremities to the connective tissue supporting the epithelium—the fibrous mat of the gum tissue—the cementum of the approximating tooth—the outer layer of the periosteum at the border of the alveolar process—or the bone of the alveolar wall.

**Arrangement**—The principal fibers literally spring from the cementum—the cementoblasts building up the matrix around them and then calcifying both the matrix and the fibers, in this way attaching them to the surface of the root. In most places the fibers

as they spring from the cementum appear as good-sized bundles. A short distance from the surface of the root they may break up into smaller bundles which anastomose and interlace, passing around bloodvessels and other fibers in their course and being again united into large bundles for attachment at their other extremity.

To arrive at an understanding of the arrangement of the fibers of the peridental membrane, sections must be cut longitudinally, both from buccal to lingual and from mesial to distal, and transversely through all portions of the membrane. It therefore requires the study of many sections to work out a complete conception. After studying them out completely in this way one is impressed with the beautiful adaptation of their arrangement to sustain the tooth against all the forces to which it is subjected, and to support the free margin of the gum, so that it will lie closely against the gingival portion of the enamel. It is necessary, however, to remind the student that connective tissues are formed in response to mechanical conditions and stimuli, and therefore this arrangement must be considered, not as having been designed to sustain the forces, but as being the result of the forces to be sustained, and therefore beautifully adapted to them.

The principal fibers of the peridental membrane are naturally divided into a number of groups which differ in their arrangement and function. In his latest book, *Special Dental Pathology*, Dr. Black has given descriptive names to these groups. Passing from the gingival line toward the apex of the root these groups are (1) The *free gingival group*, the fibers of which pass from the cementum occlusally into the gingiva to support it, (2) the *trans-septal group*, passing from tooth to tooth, and supporting the interproximal gingivæ, (3) the *alveolar crest group* passing from the cementum to the outer layer of the periosteum on the labial and lingual and to the crest of the alveolar process on the mesial and distal, (4) the *horizontal group* in the occlusal third of the alveolar portion and passing at right angles to the axis of the tooth from the cementum to the bone, (5) the *oblique group* in the apical two-thirds of the alveolar portion and inclined occlusally as they pass from cementum to bone; (6) the *apical group*, the group of fibers radiating from the apex of the root to the bone around the apical space.

Beginning at the gingival line, the fibers springing from the cementum pass out at a short distance at right angles to its surface



and then bend sharply to the occlusal passing up into the gingivæ and uniting with the fibrous mat which supports the epithelium. These are much more strongly marked on the lingual than on the labial gingivæ, because in mastication the lingual gingivæ receives more pressure of food which would tend to crush it down (the free gingival group). A little deeper the fibers springing from the cementum on the labial and lingual pass out at right angles to the cementum and are lost in the coarser fibrous mat of the gum tissue. The distance which they extend before being lost in the coarser fibers is always greater on the lingual than on the labial. On the proximal sides the fibers springing from the cementum at the same level branch and interlace, passing across the interproximal space, to be attached to the cementum of the approximating tooth. These fibers are of the greatest importance as they produce the basket work which forms the supporting framework for the interproximal gingivæ (the trans-septal group). A little farther apically the fibers as they come from the cementum are inclined apically. A short distance from the cementum they unite into very large and strong bundles which join with the fibers of the outer layer of the periosteum extending over the labial and lingual border of the alveolar process (the alveolar crest group). On the proximal sides the fibers at this level are attached to the cementum of the adjoining tooth or are inclined apically to be inserted in the bone of the septum (the alveolar crest group). These large bundles form a distinct layer, which has been called the *dental ligament* because they bind the teeth together across the septum and attach them to the outer layer of the periosteum on the labial and lingual borders of the alveolar process. They are the only fibers which hold the teeth down in its socket. At the border of the alveolar process and in the occlusal third of the alveolar portion the fibers pass directly from the cementum to the bone at right angles to the axis of the tooth (the horizontal group). In this position the fibers are larger and stronger and show less tendency to break up into smaller bundles in their course than in any other portion of the membrane. In the middle and apical thirds of the alveolar portion the fibers are inclined occlusally as they pass from the cementum to the bone. They spring from the cementum in compact bundles, and show a strong tendency to break up into fan shaped fasciculi spreading out as they approach the bone to be attached over a larger area of the alveolar wall. These fibers literally swing the tooth in its socket and support it.

PLATE XV



Longitudinal Section of Peridental Membrane

Stained with hematoxylin and eosin Showing part of the lingual gingiva  
and border of the alveolar process



against the forces of mastication (the oblique group). In the apical region fibers springing from the cementum pass out in all directions, spreading out in the same way, to be inserted into the bone forming the wall of the apical space (the apical group).

If force is exerted against the lingual surface of an incisor, the fibers on the lingual side of the root in the occlusal third will sustain part of the strain, preventing the crown from moving labially.



FIG 203 —Longitudinal section of the periodontal membrane in the gingival portion, from a lamb (the labial gingivus)

and at the same time the fibers on the labial side of the root in the apical space will also be under strain, preventing the apex of the root from moving lingually. The general plan of arrangement which has been described is illustrated in Dr. Black's diagram made from a labiolingual section of an incisor of a young kitten (figs. 201 and 202).

With this general plane of arrangement in mind individual sections may be studied, examining the arrangement and appear-

## THE PERIDONTAL MEMBRANE

ance of the fibers in detail. Figs 203 and 204 show the labial and lingual gingivæ from an incisor of a sheep. Notice that the labial gingiva is taller and thinner and the fibers passing up into it are not as strongly marked. Notice also the distance to which the fine fibers of the peridental membrane can be followed before they are lost in the coarser mat of gum tissue. The lingual gingiva is broader and flatter and the fibers passing up into it form a strong and well-defined band. Under higher magnification, fibers

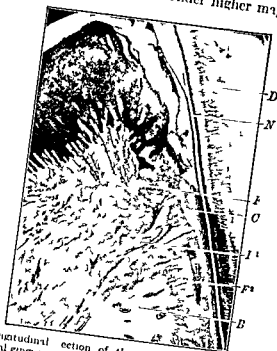


FIG. 204.—Longitudinal section of the peridental membrane in the gingival portion (the lingual gingiva). *D* dentin *N* Nasmyth's membrane *C* cementum *F* fibers supporting the gingiva *F* fibers attached to the outer layer of the periosteum over the alveolar process *F* fibers attached to the bone at the rim of the alveolus *B* bone (Magn. 30 X)

would be seen cut transversely which pass around the tooth in the gingiva helping to hold it closely against the enamel. In Fig. 205 the fibers uniting with the outer layers of the periosteum are very well shown. Taking transverse sections in the gingival portion and remembering that they are cut at right angles to these through the same area the distribution of the tissues will be better understood. Fig. 206 shows a section cut close to the gingival line. At *A* the epithelium on the labial surface of the gingiva is seen and at *B* the epithelium lining the gingival space. On the



FIG 205 —Longitudinal section of periodontal membrane of young sheep, showing fibers penetrating the cementum *D*, dentin, *C*, cementum, showing embedded fibers, *F*, fibers running to the outer layer of the periosteum, covering the alveolar process, *F*<sup>1</sup>, fibers running to the bone at the border of the process, *B*, bone (About 80 X)

proximal sides of the roots the fibers will be seen passing from the cementum of one tooth to that of the next. Fig. 207 is a little deeper and shows the fibers attached around the entire circumference of the root. Beginning at the middle of the labial surface, the fibers will be found springing from the cementum and passing out at right angles to it, to be lost in the fibrous mat supporting the epithelium. The fine fibers of the peridental membrane can be followed for about half the distance to the epithelium before they are lost in the coarser mat of gum tissue and a fairly definite boundary will be seen between what should be considered peri-

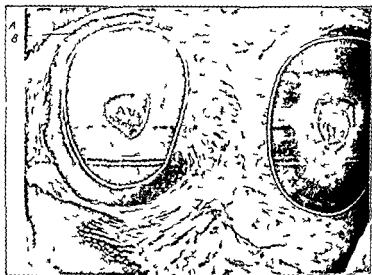


FIG. 207.—Transverse section of the peridental membrane in the gingival portion from a surgically prepared tooth. The temporary incisors are cut across. The epithelium lining the gingival sulcus is shown part way around one of the teeth. The labial surface of gingiva is shown. The epithelium lining the gingival space. (About 60 X)

dental membrane and the gum tissue. As the distolabial angle of the root is approached the fibers passing from the cementum tend to swing around distally and pass to the mesiolabial angle of the adjoining tooth. Along the proximal surface the network which supports the interproximal gingiva is well shown. The fibers springing from the cementum interlace and pass around bloodvessels and fibers which are passing up into the gingiva and finally are inserted into the cementum of the next tooth. In this way it will be seen that the teeth in the entire arch are firmly bound together by the fibers in the gingival portion. This explains the

## PLATE XVI



Transverse Section of Peridental Membrane  
Stained with hematoxylin and eosin Alveolar portion





way in which the positions of all the teeth are affected by the loss of a single one in the arch, and the way in which the movement of one tooth will draw its neighbors after it. It also explains the separation of the central incisors when the frenum labium passes through between the teeth, and is inserted on the lingual surface of the alveolar process. If these incisors are to be held together permanently, normal attachment of fibers extending from the

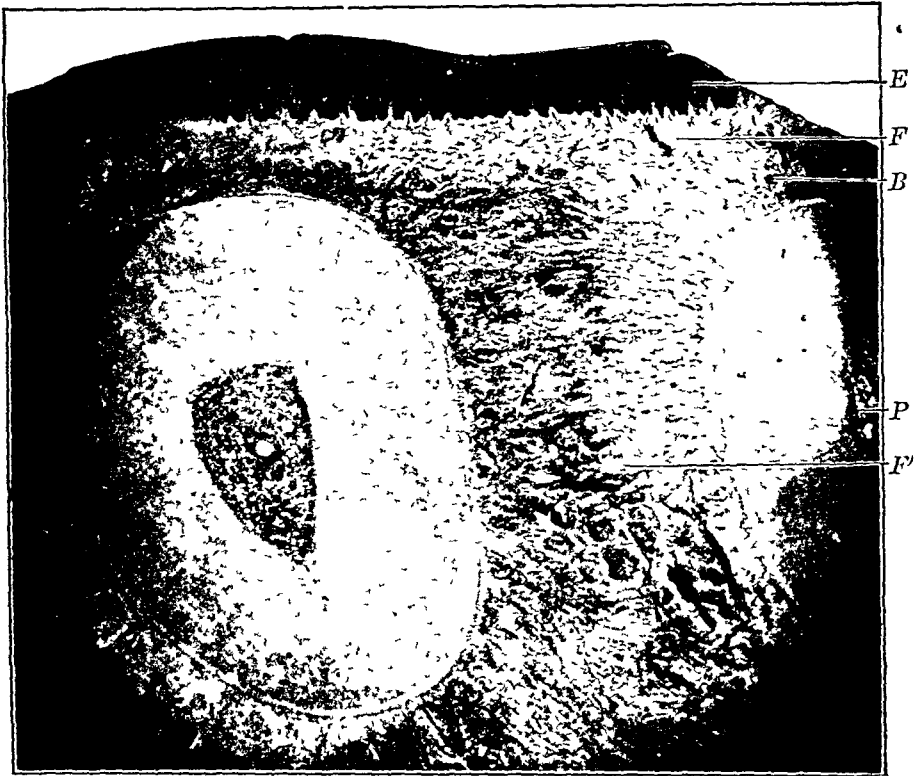


FIG 207 —Transverse section of the periodontal membrane in the gingival portion (from sheep) *E*, epithelium, *F*, fibrous tissue of gum, *B*, point where periodontal membrane fibers are lost in fibrous mat of the gum, *P*, pulp, *F'*, fibers extending from tooth to tooth (About 30  $\times$ )

cementum of one tooth to that of the other must be secured. The fibers in this area are also well shown in Fig. 208, and it can be understood how they form foundation upon which the interproximal gingiva rests. The first step in the sagging of the interproximal gum tissue is the cutting off of the fibers from the cementum, where it bends occlusally, following the curve of the gingival line on the proximal surface.



FIG. 908.—A portion of the periodontal membrane between two incisors of a young sheep showing the fibers extending from tooth to tooth

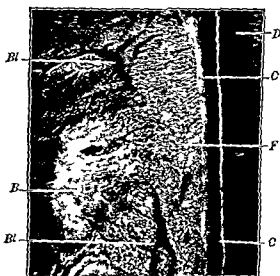
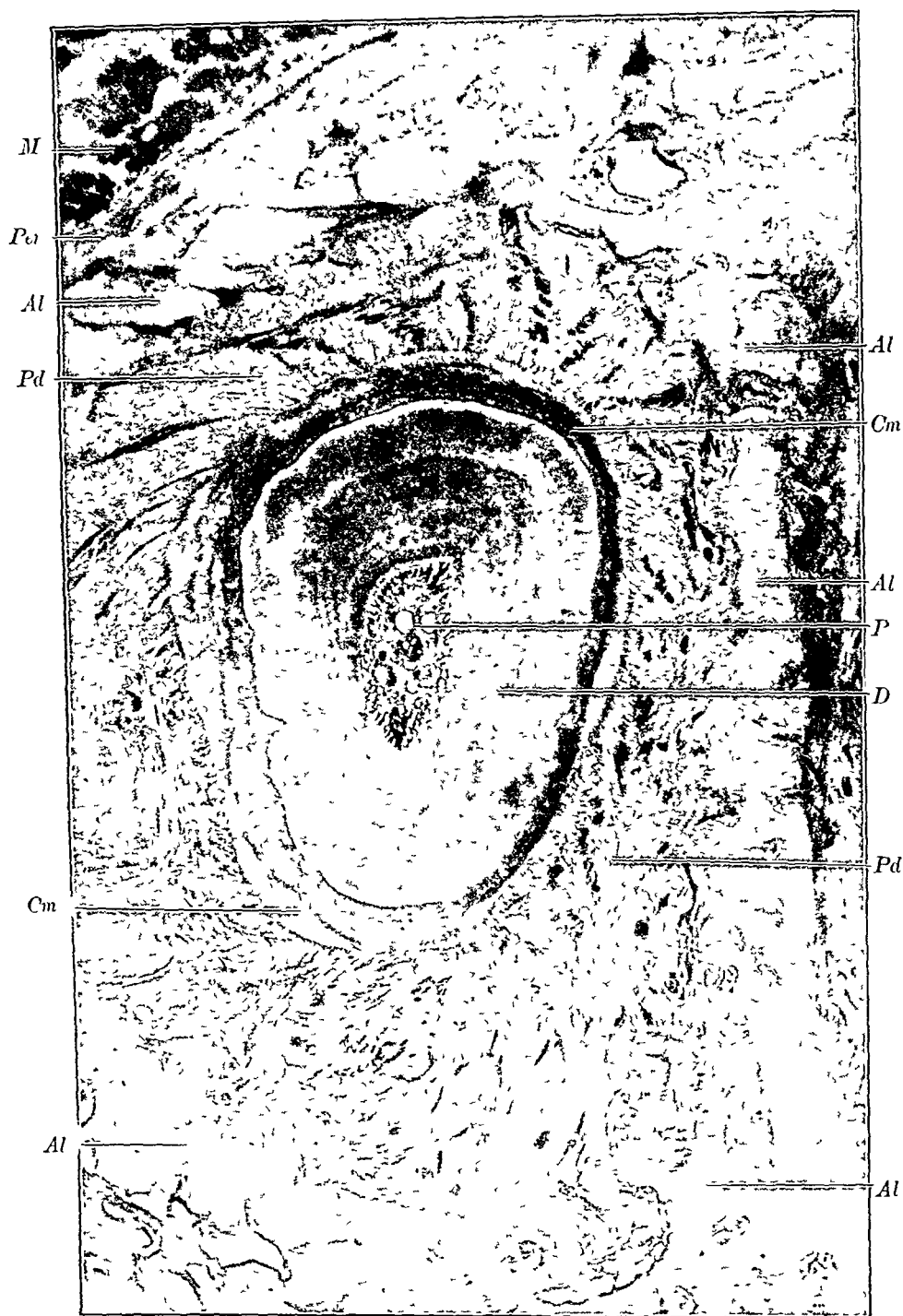


FIG. 909.—Fibers at the border of the alveolar process (from sheep). *D* dentum, *C* cementum, *F* fibers extending from cementum to bone, *Bl* bloodvessel, *B* bone. (About 80 X)

# PLATE XVII



Transverse Section of the Periodontal Membrane in the Occlusal Third of the Alveolar Portion (from Sheep)

*M*, muscle fibers, *Per*, periosteum, *Al*, bone of the alveolar process *Pd*, periodontal membrane fibers, *P*, pulp, *D* dentin, *Cm* cementum



# PLATE XVIII



Diagram of Peridental Membrane

*M* muscle fibers, *Per.* periosteum, *D* dentin, *P*, pulp, *Cm*, cementum, *Pd*, peridental membrane, fibers, *Al*, bone of the alveolar process



Plate XVII shows a transverse section in the occlusal third of the alveolar portion from the incisor of a sheep. Upon the labial a few muscle fibers are seen and the periosteum covering the labial surface of the process. Notice the medullary spaces in the bone and the canals opening into the peridental membrane and periosteum. The light line forming the outer boundary of the dentin is characteristic. Two layers of cementum are seen, and notice the thickening of the layer where strong bundles are attached. At the middle of the labial surface the fibers pass at right angles to the cementum and are attached to the bone, but as the distolabial angle of the root is approached the bundles swing distally to be attached in the bone. In Plate XVIII, which was drawn very carefully from this section, the arrangement of the fibers is shown diagrammatically. Notice the way in which they pass over and under each other and around the bloodvessels which wind through them. This relation to the bloodvessels is important, and will be considered again later in connection with the blood supply of the membrane. The tangential fibers at the angle of the root hold the tooth against the forces which tend to rotate it in its socket. They are important in connection with all rotating movements in orthodontia. It has long been noted that rotations were the hardest movements to retain, especially if the tooth were moved in no other direction. In this case, if the tooth were turned mesially the fibers at the distolabial angle would spring the thin plate of the alveolar process as a bow is bent, leaving a condition of stress in the tissue which will tend to spring back into its old position and drag the tooth with it. Notice the greater thickness of the membrane on the lingual as compared with the labial. Figs. 205 and 209 show longitudinal sections at the border of the alveolar process. Notice that the fibers can be seen running through the entire thickness of the cementum. They are large, strong fibers and branch very little in their course. Note the bloodvessel that is shown in several of these sections, and the way in which it gives off branches passing over the border of the processes and toward the cementum.



## CHAPTER XVI

### THE CELLULAR ELEMENTS OF THE PERIDENTAL MEMBRANE

**Fibroblasts**—The fibroblasts are found everywhere between the fibers which they have formed and to which they belong. They are spindle shaped or stellate connective tissue cells having a more or less flattened nucleus and a body of granular cytoplasm,



FIG. 210.—Fibers and fibroblasts from transverse section of membrane. *F* fibers cut transversely. *F1* fibers cut longitudinally showing fibroblasts. (About 80 X)

which is squeezed out into thin projections between the fibers. In sections stained with hematoxylin the cells take the stain strongly and the fibers remain clear (Fig. 210). In this way the fibers are marked out by the cells which lie between them. The number of the fibroblasts in the membrane decreases with age. They are large and numerous in the membrane of a newly erupted tooth and are comparatively small and few in the membrane around an old tooth. This is however characteristic of fibroblasts in connective tissue generally. Fig. 210 shows a small field taken from the gingival portion of the membrane between the teeth. The magnification is low, the photograph being made with a  $\frac{2}{3}$  objective. The cells

(250)

are seen as little dark dots lying between the fibers, which are clear. Where the fibers are cut longitudinally they appear spindle-shaped, but where the fibers are cut across they appear star-shaped. They will be seen better in photographs made with higher magnification, but an adequate idea of their form can only be obtained by studying sections very carefully with a  $\frac{1}{6}$  or  $\frac{1}{12}$  objective and using the fine adjustment to gain an idea of the third dimension of space. They are shown in many of the illustrations of the epithelial structures.

**Cementoblasts.**—The cementoblasts are the cells which form cementum. They cover the surface of the root everywhere between the fibers which are embedded in the tissue. While these cells perform the same function for the cementum as the osteoblasts do for bone, they are quite different in form. They are always

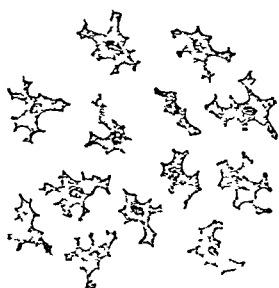


FIG 211—Isolated cementoblasts, showing the form of the cell as it fits around the fibers springing from the cementum (Black)

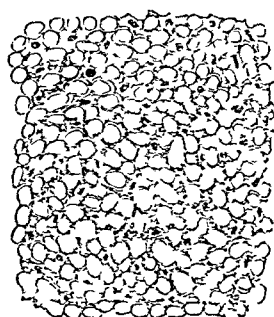


FIG 212—Cementoblasts as seen in a section at a tangent to the root and just missing the cementum. The fibers are left white, the cells are shaded. (Black)

flattened cells, sometimes almost scale-like, and when seen from above, very irregular in outline. This irregularity in outline is due to the projections of the cytoplasm around the fibers as they spring from the cementum, the edges of the cell being notched and scalloped to fit about them. There is a central mass of granular cytoplasm which contains an oval and more or less flattened nucleus, from which the cytoplasm extends in projections passing partly around the fibers. Isolated cementoblasts are shown in Fig. 211, drawn by Dr. Black. In order to obtain an idea of the form of the cementoblasts, sections must be cut at a tangent to the surface of the root, and just missing the surface of the cementum. In this way the fibers are cut across and the cementoblasts

are shown covering the entire surface between the fibers. These are shown in Fig. 212, in which the fibers are left perfectly clear in order to outline the cells more distinctly. In sections cut at right angles to the surface of the roots (Figs. 223, 224, and 225) the cementoblasts are shown as more or less flattened, but no idea of the way in which they fit about the fibers can be obtained.

Cytoplasmic processes extend from the body of the cementoblasts into the matrix of the cementum. These correspond to the process of the osteoblasts which occupy the canaliculi of bone. They, however, are not nearly as numerous or as regular in their arrangement as the osteoblasts. Processes extending from these cells in a direction from the cementum out into the tissue of the membrane have not been demonstrated.

**Cement Corpuscles**—Occasionally a cementoblast becomes fastened down to the surface and enclosed in the matrix that is formed into the canaliculi. These correspond to bone corpuscles, but there is no such regularity of their disposition or arrangement with reference to the lamellæ as is shown in the case of bone. In many of the cementum in the gingival half of the root is usually without cement corpuscles. They often lie entirely within a single lamella instead of between two as is the case in bone. In general they are found where the layers are thick and the embedded fibers are not specially numerous. They are very often seen where absorptions have been refilled by the formation of subsequent layers (Figs. 140 and 141).

It is by the activity of the cementoblasts producing a new layer of cementum that the fibers are attached to the surface of the root. In studying many sections places are found where the fibers though lying in contact with the surface are not attached to the cementum. In some places it can be seen that they have been cut off by absorptions. From a study of these layers it is evident that there is a constant readjustment in the attachment of the fibers to the root during the function of the tooth which probably adapt it to slight changes of position resulting from wear and other conditions. It is important to remember that whenever the fibers have been stripped from the surface of the cementum they can be reattached to it only by the formation of a new layer of cementum building the fibers into it. This is certainly possible if the conditions are properly controlled but the cells of the tissue

must be in a normal and vitally active condition, and the surface of the root must be such that they can lie in physiological contact

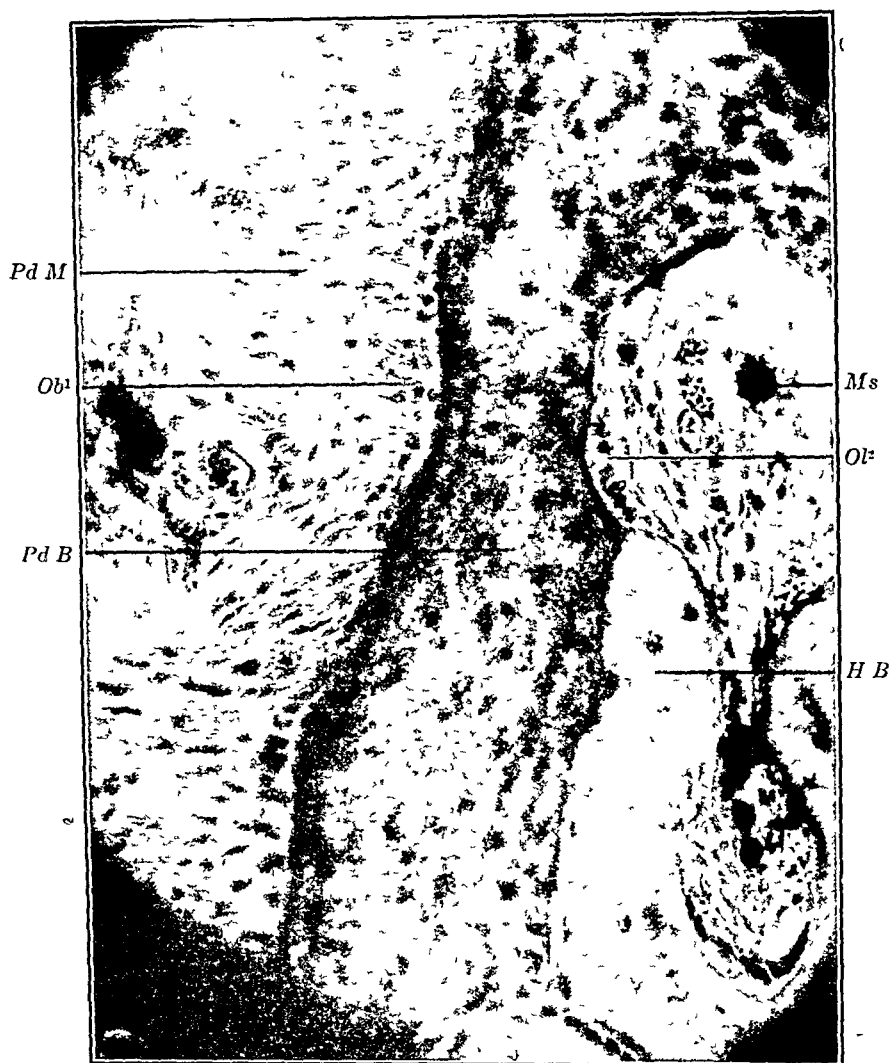


FIG 213—Penetrating fibers in bone. A field from Plate XIX. *Pd M*, peridental membrane, *Ob*, osteoblasts of peridental membrane, *Ol*, osteoblasts of medullary space, *Pd B*, solid subperidental and subperiosteal bone with embedded fibers, *Ms*, medullary space formed by absorption of the solid subperidental bone with embedded fibers, *H B*, Haversian system bone without fibers built around the medullary space (About 200 X)

with it. The cure of a pyorrhea case therefore becomes a biological problem. In this connection it is important to remember that a surface of cementum which has long been bathed in pus may be so

filled with poison that no cell can lie in contact with it and perform its functions

**Osteoblasts**—The osteoblasts of the peridental membrane are exactly like osteoblasts in other positions. They cover the surface of the bone of the alveolar wall lying between the fibers which are embedded in it. Even in the young subject they are not found in every position, while in an adjoining area the surface of the bone may be covered with them. In the old subject they are generally absent or have been reduced to flattened scales which are very difficult to demonstrate but even in these cases areas will be found in which osteoblasts are present. These are areas of active bone formation. The osteoblasts lay down bone exactly as occurs in attached portions of the periosteum, but after a little thickness of this solid peridental bone has been formed it is perforated by penetrating canals, on the walls of which absorptions occur forming spaces about which new Haversian system bone is formed. This is illustrated in Plate XI. In this way only sufficient subperidental bone is left to furnish an attachment for the fibers.

Fig 213 shows a higher magnification of a small area. The osteoblasts are seen between the fibers on the surface of the alveolus, and the fibers can be followed through the subperidental bone. A large absorption area has been formed which has been partly rebuilt, and the new formed bone without embedded fibers is lighter in color. An understanding of this building and rebuilding of bone through the agency of the peridental membrane is necessary to understand the development of the face and everything in connection with tooth movement whether physiological or artificial.

**Osteoclasts**—The osteoclasts of the peridental membrane are not constant elements. They appear and disappear in response to the same conditions which lead to their appearance and disappearance in bone. They are always large multinuclear cells having from three or four to thirty or forty nuclei (Fig 214). They may appear upon the surface of the cementum upon the surface of the alveolar wall, or within the medullary spaces of the bone. They are formed from embryonal cells in the tissue in response to mechanical stimuli. Morphologically they are in no respect different from the osteoclasts in bone.

The osteoclasts are tissue destroyers and are the active agents in the removal of any hard tissue. There is no difference in them whether they are destroying the fibrous tissue bone cementum or dentin (Fig 215). In order for them to act their cytoplasm

# PLATE XIX



Border of Growing Process

*Cm* cementum, *Pd*, periodontal membrane, *Pd B* solid subperiodontal and subperiosteal bone with embedded fibers, *Ms* medullary space formed by absorption of the solid bone, *H B* Haversian system bone without fibers, *Per* periosteum (About 50 X)



must lie in actual contact with the surface to be attacked. They do not first decalcify and then remove, but apparently by applying their cytoplasm to its surface the cells destroy the intercellular substance, forming hollows in the surface, into which the cells sink. These hollows have been called Howship's lacunæ. The cells usually appear in groups and spread out over the bone or cementum to be attacked, but sometimes only two or three will

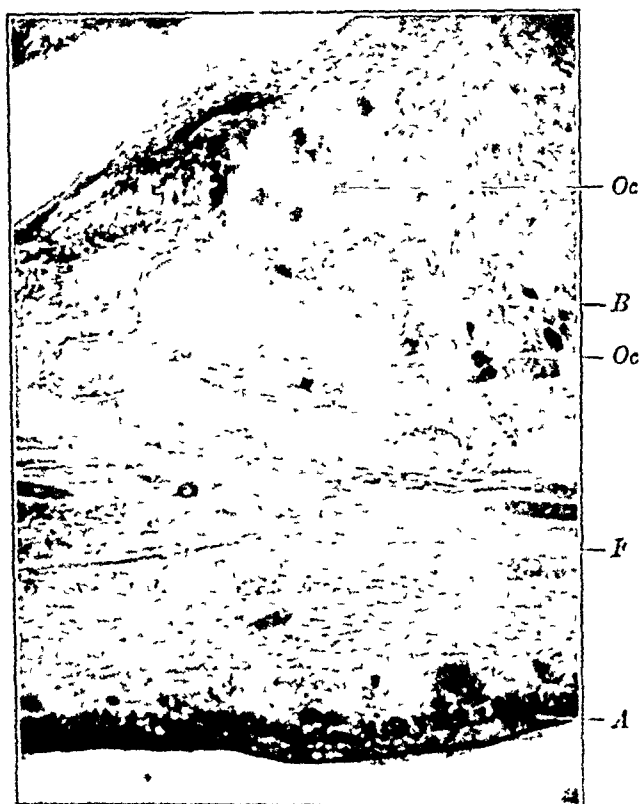


FIG. 213. Osteoclasts at absorption of bone over permanent tooth. *Oc*, osteoclasts, *B*, bone of crypt. *F*, follicle wall, *A*, ameloblasts. (About 62 $\times$ )

be found at a point on the surface of the bone, and these will burrow into the substance, forming a penetrating canal running through the bone (Figs. 216 and 217). In these positions the osteoclasts are usually comparatively small. As fast as the canal is formed the embryonal cells of the membrane multiply and grow into the space, and at any point where absorption is going on the portion destroyed is immediately replaced by embryonal connective tissue.

This will be noted in all the illustrations showing absorptions



Whenever absorption is going on formation is also going on in an adjoining area. In this way the function of the tissue is maintained until the last remnants of it are destroyed. The general statement may be made that bone formation is always accompanied by bone destruction, and bone destruction by rebuilding. The result depends



FIG. 15.—Osteoblasts in cancellous bone near the peridental membrane. In some portions of the field osteoblasts are seen. As bone is removed note how embryonal connective tissue replaces it.

upon which side the balance swings. The alternation of formation and absorption in the removal of hard tissues is well illustrated in the absorption of the roots of the temporary teeth. The absorption does not begin at one point and spread continuously over the entire surface of the root. If it did so all of the fibers would be

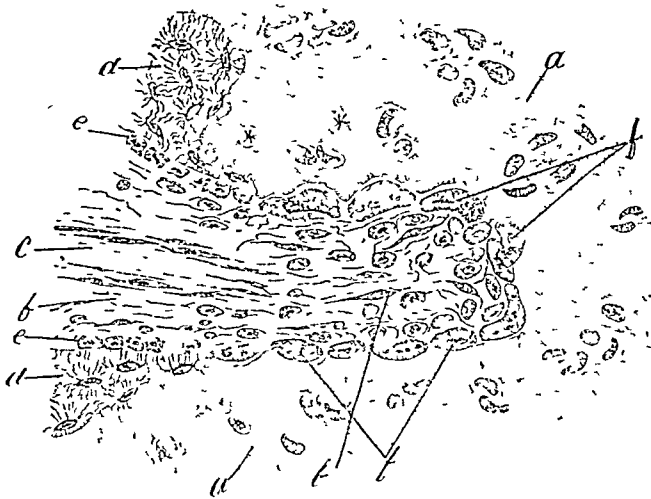


FIG 216—Osteoclast absorption forming penetrators of canal *a*, bone matrix, *b*, bloodvessel, *c*, embryonal connective tissue, *d*, new bone formation, *e*, osteoblasts, *f*, osteoclasts (Black)



FIG 217—A longitudinal section through the remains of the alveolar process around the root of a temporary tooth about to be shed (sheep) *C*, the cementum on the remains of the tooth, *B*, penetrating canals cut through the labial plate of bone

cut out and the tooth would drop off with at least a considerable portion of the root. The process progresses in something of this

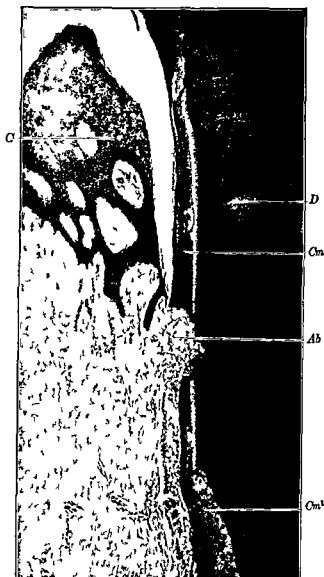


FIG. 215.—Root of a temporary incisor showing absorption and rebuilding of cementum (from sheep). *G* gingiva *D* dentin *Cm* cementum *Ab* absorption cavity showing Howship's lacunae *Cm*<sup>1</sup> new formed cementum. (About 50 X)

fashion. At a point on the side of the root near the apex where the growth of the erupting tooth produces pressure, osteoclasts



enamel and even then new forming cementum to maintain the attachment will be found around the circumference. In this way it will be seen that the function of the tooth is maintained until its successor is ready to take its place in a very short time. The importance of this arrangement will be more fully appreciated after a study of the relation of the teeth to the development of the face. Fig 218 shows a longitudinal section through a temporary incisor of a sheep. At *Ab* an absorption has just been completed for the osteoclasts have disappeared. The excavation is seen filled with embryonal tissue and rebuilding is about to begin. At *Cm* an older and much larger absorption space is seen which has been partially replaced by a formation of new cementum reattaching fibers. In Fig 219 a transverse section of the root is seen which is from the same jaw cut at the level of *Cm*, and shows the absorption refilled. This patchwork performance goes on in the same way in the bone of the alveolar process and its study is one of the most interesting phases of the relation of the teeth to the development of the face. Without a clear idea of this it is impossible to understand how the teeth, after their roots are fully formed can move through three dimensions of space and retain their function all the time.

**Epithelial Structures**—The epithelial structures of the peridental membrane were first described by Dr Black in his volume *Periosteum and Peridental Membrane* published in 1887. At this time Dr Black considered them to be of lymphatic character and named them endolymphatics. His conception of them was that they were lymphatic channels crowded with adenoid cells. Since then the form and appearance of the cells and the character of their reaction with staining agents has shown the cells to be of epithelial character. In the same year that Dr Black's book was published von Brunn<sup>1</sup> described the same structures. He considered them as epithelial remains of the outer layer of the enamel organ growing down around the root beyond the gingival line where the formation of enamel stops. It has seemed probable to the writer that this was correct but their histogenesis has not been sufficiently well followed and it presents an attractive field for research. These structures undoubtedly originate from the epithelium of the enamel organ probably both of the outer and inner layers. In the authors opinion they have an important relation to the formation of cemen-

tum which accounts for their persistence in the membrane. While they are derived from an embryonal structure, the enamel organ, it does not seem proper to regard them as embryonal remains, for while, like all the cellular elements, they are more numerous in young people than in old, they are persistent throughout life. They have been shown in the membrane from a man aged seventy years, and it does not seem logical to suppose that embryonal debris that was useless to the organism would persist through life. Up to the present time, however, nothing has been discovered about these structures to throw any light upon their function. The author has long been of the opinion that they were related to the formation of cementum but this is not sufficiently established to be more than suggested here. Specimens have strongly indicated that they were important in some pathologic conditions. Their cells have been found dead and degenerating in pathologic material beyond the point showing any pathologic condition in other cells. These structures have been observed in sections from man, sheep, cat, dog, and monkey. The best material for their study is a young sheep or pig.

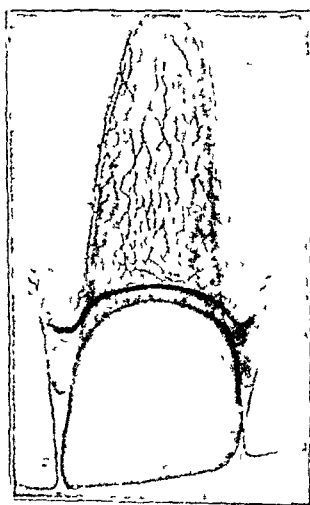


FIG 220 —Diagram of glands of periodontal membrane (Black)

**Distribution.**—These structures are composed of cords or rows of epithelial cells, surrounded by an extremely delicate basement membrane (Fig 220). In some cases there is a slight indication of a circular arrangement of connective tissue around them. The cords lie very close to the surface of the cementum, winding in and out among the fibers (Fig 221). They anastomose and join



of the way in which these cords wind in and out among the bundles of fibers. The cords show a marked tendency to run out into the membrane and loop back (Fig. 223), coming very close to the surface of the cementum.

The ends of the loops toward the cementum often show enlargements which in some cases apparently lie directly in contact with the cementum (Figs. 224 and 225). These enlargements next to the cementum are shown in Fig. 223.

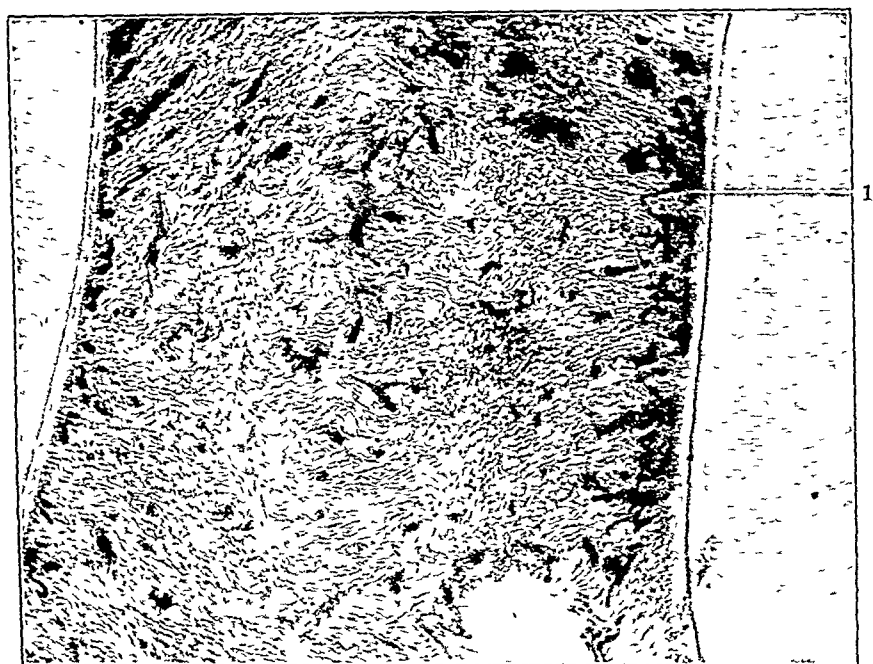


FIG. 222.—Transverse section of the periodontal membrane in the gingival portion, showing the position of the epithelial cords. At 1 the loop shown in higher magnification in Fig. 224 is seen.

**The Arrangement of the Cells.**—There is no definite arrangement of the cells in these cords. In some places there will be a ring of irregular polyhedral or rounded cells which almost exactly resemble a simple tubular gland. In other places there is a pretty definite outer ring of cells and a central mass enclosed by them. The cells are made up of granular cytoplasm, each containing an *ovoid* nucleus that is rich in chromatin. The author has spent much time attempting to work out the relation of these cords to the epithelium lining the gingival space, thinking that possibly they open into it. In a few places structures appearing very much like



a duct have been seen as shown in Fig 227, but they are apparently only unusually large cords. There is no regularity in places where they are found and no connection with the gingival space has ever been discovered. Toward the gingival as the gingival line is approached the cords seem to swing out away from the cementum especially on the proximal side, and to pass up into the gingivæ where they are lost among the projections of the epithelium

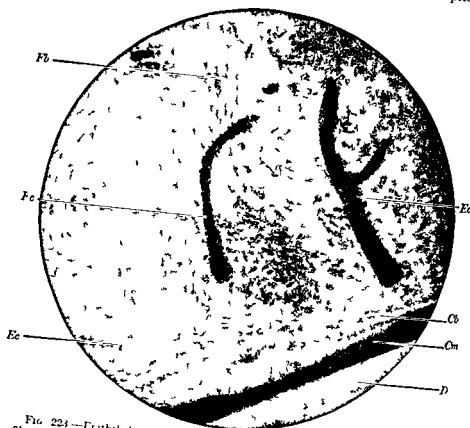


FIG 224.—Epithelial structures of the peridontal membrane (from sheep). Fb fibroblasts Ec epithelial structures Cb cementoblasts Cm cementum D dentin (About 468 X)

**Gland of Serres**—Salter in his *Dental Pathology and Surgery* quotes Serres who assigns the function of a gland to the epithelium lining the gingival space. This the writer believes is the first reference to an appearance in the tissues that has been called the gland of Serres. It has long been noted that the epithelium lining

the gingival space was lighter in structure, composed of larger cells, and had no horny layer on its surface, as is true of the epithe-



FIG. 224 — Epithelial structures. *Ec*, epithelial cord, apparently showing a lumen; *Cb*, cementoblasts, *Cm*, cementum, *D*, dentin. This loop is seen in Fig. 209.

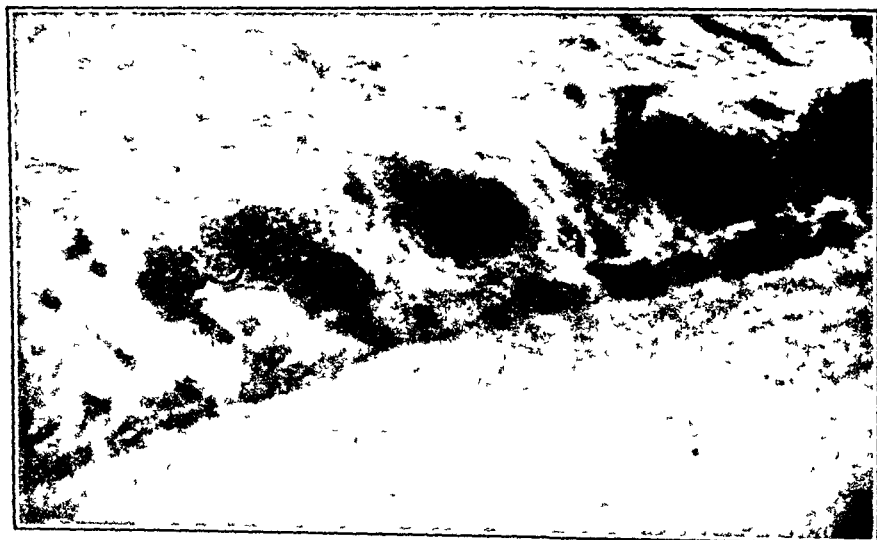


FIG. 225 — Transverse section showing the cellular elements. (About 900 X)

lium on the outer surface of the gingivus. Upon the proximal surfaces the projections of the epithelium which extend down between the papillæ of connective tissue which constitute the stratum papillaris, are specially long, and in the connective tissue between them collections of small round cells are often found. It is between these projections of epithelium that the cords of epithe-



FIG. 226.—Epithelial structures (from sheep). *Fb* fibroblasts. *Ec* epithelial structures. *Cb* cementoblasts. *Cm* cementum. *D* dentin. (About 700 X)

lial cells which have been described are lost and to this portion of the tissue Dr. Black has again called attention, as the gland of Serres. Sufficient work has not yet been done upon this subject to know whether this is a constant arrangement or whether it is found only in certain animals, or even whether it may not possibly be pathologic. The appearance is shown in Figs. 228 and 229. The work of the last five years has convinced the writer that this appearance is the reaction of the tissue to infection. One

of the important functions of the supporting tissues about the necks of the teeth is to resist and remove infection, and all the structural elements of the tissue are arranged for that function. The epithelium, the connective-tissue fibers, the capillary blood-vessels, the lymphatics, and the cellular elements of the connective tissue, are so arranged as to immediately respond to an invasion of infecting organisms in such a way as to destroy and remove them if possible.



FIG. 227.—A very large cord which was at first mistaken for a duct.

**Bloodvessels.**—The periodontal membrane possesses a very rich blood supply. A number of vessels enter the membrane in the apical portion from the medullary spaces in the bone. Some of these, passing through canals in the apex of the root, supply the dental pulp, others pass up through the membrane. As they extend occlusally they give off and receive branches which enter the membrane from the bone of the alveolar wall. In this way the caliber of the principal vessels is maintained throughout their course in the membrane. As they reach the border of the alveolar process they give off branches which anastomose with the vessels of the periosteum and gum tissue.

In the young membrane these vessels occupy a position closer to the bone than the cementum, and as the membrane becomes thinner they often come to lie in grooves in the bone. Vessels of any size



supplied with bloodvessels, and the anastomosis with the vessels of the membrane, from the alveolar wall and over the border of the process, is important in the consideration of pathologic condi-

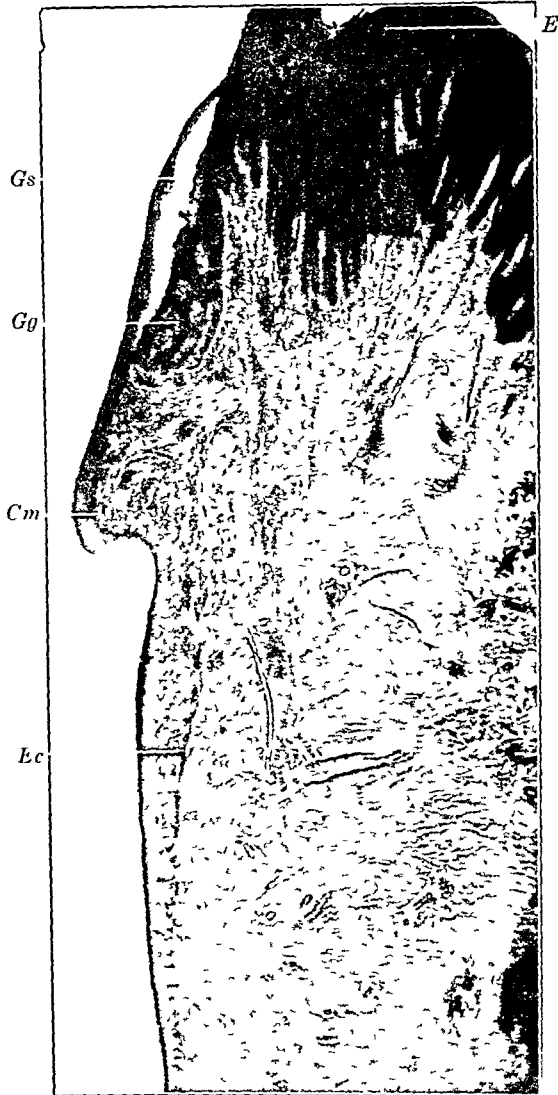


FIG 229 —A longitudinal section cut mesiodistally *E*, epithelium of the gingiva, *Gs*, gingival space, *Cm*, cementum which has separated from the dentin, *Ec*, epithelial cords

tions In alveolar abscess the vessels entering through the apical space may be entirely cut off, but this does not disturb the blood supply of the rest of the membrane The removal of the pulp has

often been advocated in the treatment of pathologic conditions of the membrane, on the ground that the vessels entering the pulp rob the membrane of blood supply, and that their removal made recovery more certain. No one having a knowledge of the blood supply of the membrane could advise this for that reason.

In their course through the membrane the vessels wind between the principal fibers in a way that can only be appreciated by studying sections with a binocular instrument, and when this condition is realized it can be understood how some inflammations in the membrane are set up. For instance, when force is applied to a tooth the principal fibers are stretched. This causes them to close some spaces and open others. The vessels in the closed spaces are constricted and the flow of blood through them partly shut off. *The vessels in the enlarged spaces dilate to compensate.* If the force is removed the dilated vessels are again constricted and the constricted ones enlarged and the result is a literal sawing upon the walls of the bloodvessels which in a very short time will set up an acute inflammation. This is extremely important in the application of force in orthodontia, and often also in the use of the mallet in condensing gold, especially for young patients.

**Lymphatic Vessels**—The lymphatics of the peridental membrane have been described in Chapter XIV. The writer was first convinced of their presence in the membrane by a study of the manner of extension of destructive inflammations of the peridental membrane and they were afterward demonstrated by injection. The collecting vessels from the labial, buccal and lingual surfaces of the gums and gingivæ pass outside of the periosteum of the alveolar process to the wreath of collecting trunks at the reflection of the tissues from the surface of the bone to the lips or cheeks on the outside and to the collecting trunks of the floor of the mouth and palate on the inside. The collecting vessels from the papillæ lining the gingival spaces penetrate the ligamentum circulare very close to the cementum and extend in the interfibrous tissue accompanying the bloodvessels and nerves through the peridental membrane as far as the apex of the root where they anastomose with the efferent vessels from the dental pulp. They have been followed through the bone to the infra-orbital canal and the inferior dental canal emerging from the corresponding foramina and passing to the lymph nodes of the submaxillary group. Injected vessels in the peridental membrane are shown in Fig. 230.

**Nerves.**—The nerves of the peridental membrane enter the peridental membrane in company with the bloodvessels. Their source is the same as that of the bloodvessels. The trunks entering in the apical space contain from eight or ten to fifteen or twenty medullated fibers. Some of these enter the dental pulp, others extend up through the membrane, winding in and out among the fibers, generally following the course of the bloodvessels. Many trunks containing eight or ten fibers enter through the alveolar

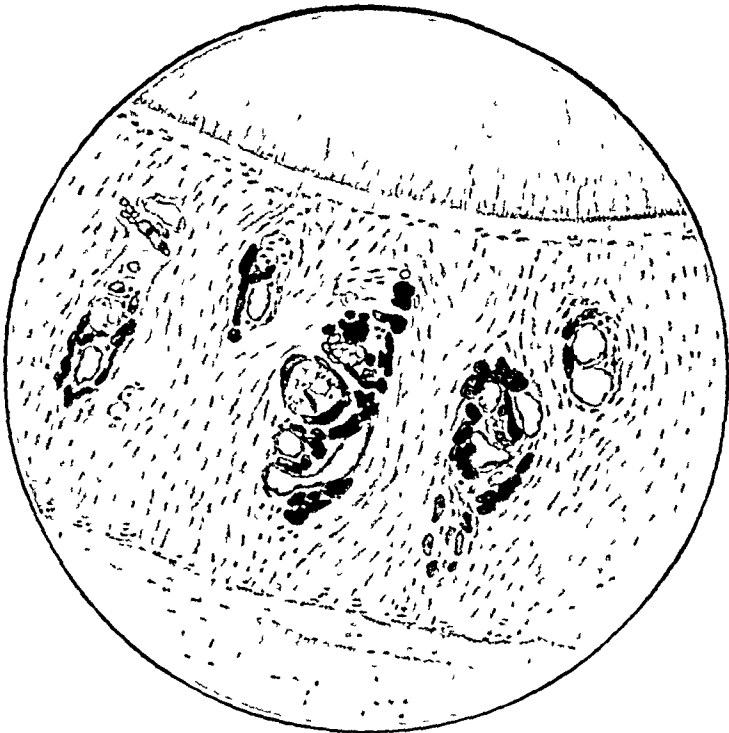


FIG. 230.—Transverse section of the peridental membrane, showing injected lymphatic vessels (oc, 3, ob), 16 mm, reduced about one-tenth)

wall. In this way a fairly rich plexus is formed, from which fibers are continually given off to be lost in the tissue. They probably terminate in beaded free endings. No special nerve endings have been demonstrated. A few Pacinian corpuscles have been seen near the gingival border. These are not generally found, however. The nerves of the membrane give to it the sense of touch, which is the only sensory function of the membrane. As has been noted in connection with the dental pulp, the hard tissues and the pulp have no sense of touch. The contact of any substance with the surface of the tooth is reported to consciousness through the medium



of the peridental membrane. For instance the slightest touch of a delicate instrument produces a slight movement of the tooth which affects the nerves between the fibers. The delicacy of this mechanism can be demonstrated by the following experiment. Lightly touch the surface of the enamel and the patient will tell at once not only which tooth is touched but whether a steel instrument or a wooden point or some soft material was used. If, however the finger is placed upon a surface of the tooth and firm pressure made in one direction, the contact of the point will not be recognized.



FIG. 231.—Young membranes (from sheep). *D* dentin. *Cm* cementum. *Cm¹* thickening of cementum to attach fibers at the corner. *Pd* peridental membrane. *B* bone forming the wall of the alveolus. (About 80 X)

**The Changes in the Peridental Membrane with Age**—The teeth are formed in crypts in the bone and when they begin to erupt the roof of the crypt is removed by absorption making an opening large enough for the crown to pass. As the root is formed the tooth moves occlusally and the alveolus grows up around it beginning at the margins of the crypt. When the tooth first erupts therefore, the alveolus is much larger than the root, and the fibers of the peridental membrane are very long. The size of the alveolus is reduced by the formation of bone by the osteoblasts on its wall, and the size of the root is increased by the formation layer after

layer, on its surface. In this way the thickness of the membrane is reduced. Figs. 231 and 232 were made to illustrate this change. They were photographed with as nearly the same magnifications as possible, so as to compare the thickness of the layers. In the first, there are but two layers of cementum; notice the thickening of the last-formed layer, to attach the strong bundles of fibers at the angle of the root. The second is from a temporary tooth which has been in position and function for a long time; notice the thickness of the cementum and that the formation of bone and cementum

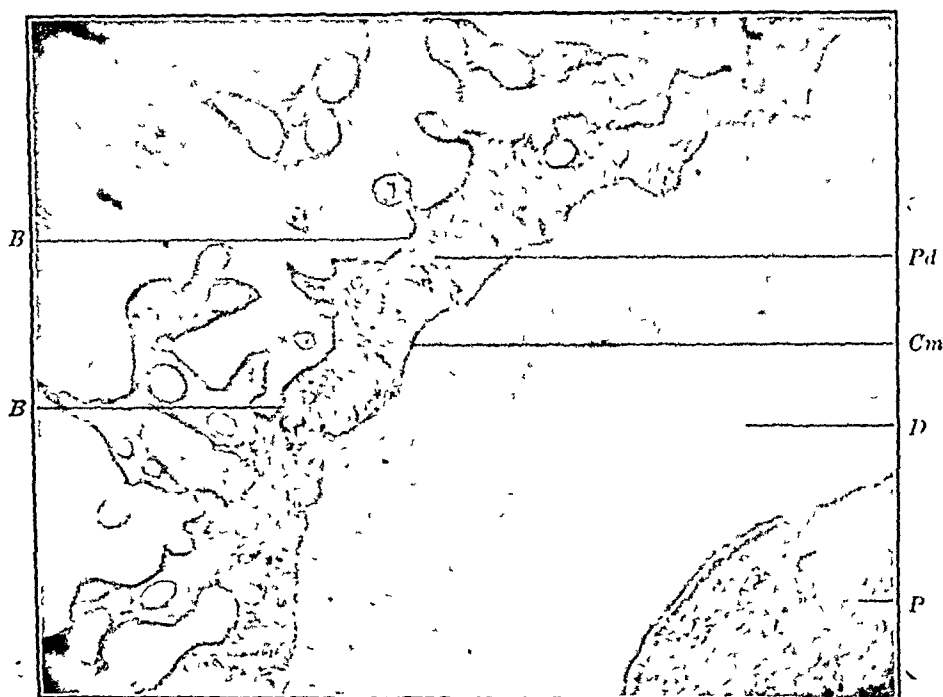


FIG 232 —Old membranes (from sheep) *D*, dentin, *Cm*, cementum, *Pd*, peridontal membrane, *B*, bone forming the wall of the alveolus, *P*, pulp (About 80 X)

has reduced the thickness of the membrane to not more than one-third of its original amount. Notice also that the surface of both bone and cementum are not even, but scalloped, and that where the cementum projects toward the alveolar wall there is a depression in the bone, and where the bone projects toward the cementum there is a depression in the cementum. There is therefore a distinct tendency for the two tissues to interlock but remain separated by a layer of fibrous tissue. The author has never seen a specimen showing a union between calcified substances of bone and cemen-

tum Two surfaces of cementum may become united by direct calcification and the teeth fused together This is illustrated in many freak specimens to be found in any dental museum It is often stated that a tooth had become ankylosed to the bone, but to the author's knowledge no specimen has ever been shown in which the separating layer of fibrous tissue was not present

**Practical Consideration**—These structural facts are of the greatest practical importance especially in the making of gold fillings for young persons Every operator has noticed the greatest difference in the feeling of the instrument under the mallet upon different teeth In one instance it will ring under the steel mallet as if the tooth were resting on an anvil in another case it feels as if the tooth were resting on a cushion In the first case all of the force of the blow is expended in the condensation of the gold In the second, a large proportion is lost in the movement of the tooth If the membrane is thin and the cementum and bone are interlocked, the tooth is firmly supported If the membrane is thick and the fibers long as in the first illustration, the blow is dissipated in the sag of the fibers The tooth is jumping up and down in its socket The force used is dissipated, the gold is not condensed, and in a very short time an acute inflammation is set up and the tooth becomes very sore to the blows This the author believes is the explanation of the idea that gold will not preserve teeth for young children It has often been said that children's teeth are too soft for gold fillings The difficulty is not with the enamel and dentin, but because of the thickness of their membranes The gold is not sufficiently condensed to exclude moisture, and the fillings fail Serious damage also may be done to the membrane The Museum of the Northwestern University Dental School contains an object lesson on this point It consists in a bicuspid with a beautifully condensed and finished gold filling in a mesial occlusal cavity The history accompanying it is somewhat as follows The operation was undertaken for a patient aged about fourteen years The tooth became exceedingly sore under the mallet, the filling was however completed and polished, but a few days later the tooth was picked out with the fingers The peridental membrane had been literally hammered to death Stated in scientific terms, the fibers had sagged upon the bloodvessels exciting an acute inflammation resulting in complete stasis and the death of the tissue In all operations where gold is to be condensed in teeth with thick membranes they must be firmly supported so as to be held rigidly against the blow

## CHAPTER XXII.

### ABSORPTION OF TEETH

By NEWTON G THOMAS, M A , D D S

THE absorption of teeth implies a phenomenon which is known to occur in both dentitions. To the primary dentition, absorption is a part of normal history, with the permanent dentition, it is associated only with unrecognizable and inexplicable conditions or strictly pathological agencies. Hence our first classification of absorption is physiological and pathological. Under the former comes the removal of temporary tooth roots and the roots of implanted teeth, while under pathological comes the removal of permanent tooth roots, either wholly or in part. These occurrences form the ground work of this discussion.



FIG. 233 —Showing normal absorption of a temporary molar without pressure from a permanent successor

Various causes of the absorption of the roots of temporary teeth have been presented. The principle ones ascribed are pressure, the ectodermic origin of enamel, blood-pressure, the gubernaculum dentis, and the deposition of bone impelling the permanent teeth occlusally. It is urged that the pressure of the erupting permanent teeth instigates the process whether one or all of the causes of eruption mentioned begins or maintains the movement. It is a common observation that the pressure of permanent teeth sometimes fails to stimulate absorption and again it is seen that temporary teeth often absorb when their permanent successors are absent (Fig 233).

The absorption of the roots of the temporary teeth must be considered as Tomes considered it, a physiological or vital process which all of the factors named may abet but do not explain.

The agent of absorption presents an interesting but unfinished study. Kolliker designated the multinucleated giant cell the osteoclast, almost always seen in areas where osseous tissue is in process of formation the agent of tissue removal because bone building is always a composite of construction and destruction, a condition not seen in tooth tissues because changes similar to those in bone do not take place. Once teeth are formed they do not change form areas of their surfaces may be removed but it is never done for the purpose of reconstruction as is the case when subperiosteal bone is removed to give place to Haversian system bone. Where, however teeth are being physiologically removed osteoclasts are found without fail. Until quite recently this cell maintained its designation as a tissue destroyer undisputed, but at the present time its function is held in question. It is stated that there is no positive evidence that the osteoclast is active in destroying bone. The explanations given are that they are degenerate osteoblasts that have become confluent,<sup>1</sup> or that have been affected by the agency that is affecting the bone, and, therefore, are in a condition of degeneracy.<sup>2</sup> Also destruction of bone by haliteresis as in osteomalacia is mentioned to prove that cells are not necessary to its accomplishment.<sup>3</sup> Both of these hypotheses are unsatisfactory. Sections can be readily produced in which osteoclasts show no evidence of disintegration and in which there is no evidence that they are the products of osteoblastic fusion. In fact cementoblasts the analogue of osteoblasts are noticeably absent from the surfaces of teeth on which absorption is in progress.

The origin of osteoclasts is controverted as much as their function. Prentiss, Jackson and Dautschakoff state that they are derived from the reticular cells of marrow. Kolliker, Bredichin and Howell suggest that they are osteoblastic in origin, the osteoblast in response to some unknown stimulus fusing with its fellows to assume a new function. Wegener, Schaffer,<sup>4</sup> Fischer,<sup>5</sup> and Mallory<sup>6</sup> trace them to

<sup>1</sup> Arey. The Origin, Fate and Significance of Osteoclasts. Tr. Chicago Path. Soc. pp. 231-234.

<sup>2</sup> Stöhr. Text book of Histology. pp. 68 and 209.

<sup>3</sup> Loc. cit.

<sup>4</sup> Prentiss. Origin and Fate of Osteoclasts. Surg., Gynec. and Obstet. 1915 xx 678.

<sup>5</sup> Anatomische Hefte. 1909.

<sup>6</sup> Principles of Pathology. 1912. p. 52.

endothelial cells, while Ranvier, Duval, and Bohm<sup>1</sup> assert that they arise from lymphoid marrow cells. In the consideration of the internal absorptions seen in dentin, Causch<sup>2</sup> avers that they are the products of odontoblasts, as does Salter also. To this Causch adds that tissue destruction does not depend upon them, as phagocytic leukocytes may produce the same results. In this it will be observed he harmonizes closely with Mallory. The specimens from which the accompanying figures are made also testify to the endothelial origin of the osteoclast. Fischer's assumption that the endothelium of capillaries may destroy tissue is also closely related to Mallory's statement.<sup>3</sup> Bland-Sutton,<sup>4</sup> in 1887, described giant cells formed by the fusion of phagocytes, and adds "The large multinuclear osteoclasts seen in places where vertebrate bone and teeth are under absorption must also be placed in the same category." In accord with the foregoing, Mallory says "When an endothelial leukocyte finds difficulty in dissolving a substance, as, for instance, lime or certain fat products or the blastomyces, it frequently fuses with other endothelial leukocytes to form a multinucleated mass of cytoplasm commonly termed a foreign body giant cell. If the foreign body is too large for one leukocyte to incorporate (cholesterin crystals, hairs) one or more giant cells are formed which surround it or plaster themselves to its surface."<sup>5</sup> With this Delafield and Pruden agree.<sup>6</sup> It is quite certain that the osteoclast is not the product of mitosis, as Kolliker thought, without cytoplasmic division as mitotic figures are never seen in it.

In the sections which formed the basis of this study irregular foveolæ are seen in which are groups of cells apparently of leukocytic origin, which to all appearances are active in the removal of calcified tissue, while on the surface continuous with that on which they work, are multinucleated cells in great numbers filling smoothly formed spaces. This condition may be explained by the interpretation of Sutton, Causch and Mallory. The phagocytic endothelial cells introduce the process of tissue removal and later fuse, according to Mallory's hypothesis, continuing the destruction of tissues after their fusion, thus forming the smooth bay-like excavations noted. This also explains the low number of giant cells found in the early

<sup>1</sup> Loc cit

<sup>2</sup> Transactions of World's Columbian Dental Congress, p 114

<sup>3</sup> Mallory Principles of Pathology, 1912, p 52

<sup>4</sup> Introduction to General Pathology, 1887, p 124

<sup>5</sup> Mallory Principles of Pathology, 1912, p 52

<sup>6</sup> Text-book of Pathology, p 119.

stages of endochondral bone formation which point is mentioned by Stohr<sup>1</sup> and emphasized by others. Phagocytic endothelial cells or other means of calcified tissue removal may be employed. To the writer it seems conclusive that Mallory's assumption is correct.

The procedure of tissue removal is difficult of explanation. To the present time it has not been determined that osteoclasts or phagocytic leukocytes produce acid for this purpose. Also the process is more than decalcification. In decalcification we know that certain tissues resist acid for varying periods of time. In the process under discussion we have complete tissue removal, the connective-tissue matrix of the calcified structures and the dense periodontal membrane.

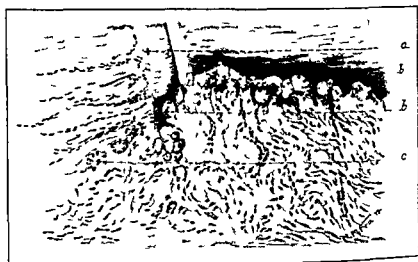


FIG. 234.—Section showing absorption of the tooth of a sheep. *a* cementum. *b* osteoclasts in cementum and dentin. *c* osteoclast in the periodontal membrane.

as well (see 234 *c*). In connection with the endochondral bone formation it has been suggested that reduction of blood supply causes autolysis of cells in the cartilaginous matrix and a consequent dissolution of the calcified cartilage spicules by the enzymes set free. In the light of the foregoing the last hypothesis seems unnecessary. It is commonly accepted that osteoblasts may become osteoclasts because it is known that cells long inactive may change their function or that connective-tissue cells under changed conditions may develop specializations or cells long inactive may resume functional activities of a different character from that carried on in

<sup>1</sup> Text book of Pathology, pp. 68 and 70.

their earlier histories. Thus liberated cartilage or bone corpuscles may become cartilage or bone builders. By injecting lamp-black or bacteria into the subarachnoid space Weed<sup>1</sup> found that connective-tissue cells became phagocytic and ameboid. Hassin<sup>2</sup> found that glia cells did similarly, devouring myelin and migrating to the vessels of the area as did Nissl and Alzheimer.<sup>3</sup> Similar phenomena have been observed by various workers on other tissues and organs.

At birth the jaw contains all the deciduous teeth and likewise the germs of the permanent teeth except the second and third molars. Three to five years are required for the completion of the roots after which they remain complete for a similar length of time. During this period the permanent teeth have been developing in their crypts after which they begin their occlusal movement. The first observation of importance is the appearance of osteoclasts on the roof of the crypt. Penetrating the crypt roof the permanent tooth approaches the lingual surface of the temporary tooth if it is an incisor or cuspid, and immediately between the roots if it be a posterior tooth. Incisors of dogs have a tendency to point directly to the apices of their temporary predecessors (see Fig. 235) while those of sheep simulate those in the human mouth, approaching the lingual surface. The difference presents interesting features for our notice. The removal of the tissue in the path of the advancing tooth is more rapid than the advance of that tooth with the result that the way cleared is filled with young fibrous connective tissue rich in budding capillaries (see Fig. 234, *d*). In the wake of the tooth, bone spicules are developed supportive to the crypt for it will be observed that at first the crypt moves with the structures it contains, thus affording an important mechanical factor in the development of the jaw.

Coincident with the approach of the permanent tooth germ to the root of the temporary tooth osteoclasts appear on the approached surface of the deciduous root. Also capillary loops develop extending toward them in a manner strikingly similar to that seen when calcification is in progress for these activities always call for a copious blood supply (see Figs. 235, *a*, and 237, *b*). The work of the osteoclast is never long confined to the area mentioned. The stimulus afforded

<sup>1</sup> The Establishment of the Circulation of the Cerebrospinal Fluid, *Anat. Record*, 7: 256-158.

<sup>2</sup> Histopathological Changes in a Case of Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis, *Med. Rec.*, February 10, 1917.

<sup>3</sup> Histologische und Histopathologische Arbeiten von Nissl und Alzheimer, 1912.



to the periodontal membrane soon permeates it with the result that osteoclasts appear on any surface, anywhere from the apex to the gingival line (see Fig 235, *b*). Occasionally the spaces excavated are filled with cementum and a new attachment made, but that is far from consistent. Whereas the approaching permanent tooth apparently is the original stimulus to the destructive process the

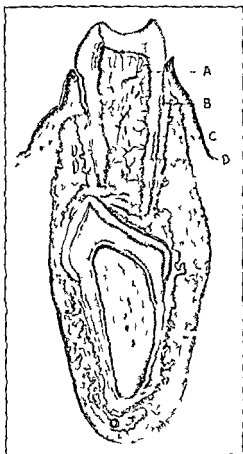


FIG. 35.—Section of a dog's tooth, showing internal and external absorption of capillary loops in absorption areas. *B* absorption area at the cervix of the tooth. *C* foveolæ on pulp surface of root. *D* cellular layer surrounding the pulp.

ragged edges made by the absorption doubtless afford a secondary stimulus and the area where no new cementum is deposited has the effect of a foreign body, all of which tends to speed the absorption. The beginning of absorption and its continuance are in no way affected seemingly by the fact of pulp extirpation provided that the

root is aseptic. Instances are plentiful showing perfect removal of the root leaving a cone of filling material in the tissue. A curious and interesting phenomenon may be observed in the museum of the Northwestern University Dental School. A series of teeth are shown on which is a small tube of dentin around the canal which was preserved around the pulp apparently in resistance to the absorbing agents. Normally the process continues until the root is wholly gone and it is often seen that the dentin of the crown has been entirely removed and sometimes the enamel has been reduced to the thinness of tissue paper.

Apparently no changes appear in the pulp due to the external absorption of the tooth root. The writer has never observed any effects upon the pulp due to changes in progress on the exterior of the tooth root, it shows no reaction until it is invaded. The embryonic character of the tissue naturally undergoes immediate alteration when its environment is changed. When the absorption has been greatest at the apex and a large area of pulp is uncovered the effect upon the pulp is widespread. Around the periphery new connective-tissue elements appear extending farther and farther occlusally around the pulpal walls until all the odontoblasts are lost and in their places is a dense cellular zone containing a preponderance of undifferentiated connective-tissue cells (see Fig 235, *d*). Upon the outer surface of this cellular layer osteoclasts appear and internal absorption accompanies that which progresses on the exterior root surface (see Fig 235, *c*). Some fibroblasts are seen and an abundance of capillary loops extends radially from much enlarged central vessels to the absorbing cells (see Fig 235, *a*). Hence, the pulp has been metamorphosed into a scrap of typical granulation tissue. Should the opening into the pulp chamber elsewhere be small, similar changes occur in the immediate vicinity of the penetration. The more distant parts of the pulp, be they coronal or apical, remain practically normal until the point of invasion has become large enough to affect the entire structure or numerous penetrations are made.

During this process it will be noted that although pressure may be assigned as the stimulus to absorption that stimulus is never retroactive. No osteoclasts ever appear inside the follicle of the erupting tooth which causes the pressure. Also, should acid be produced by the cells for the purpose of decalcification it never affects the permanent tooth. The follicle seems to be a sufficient protection against such emergencies, and it persists until the tooth

reaches the surface of the gum. It may likewise be inferred that no tissue can be referred to as an absorbent organ as we have seen that absorption extends over the surfaces of the tooth externally as well as internally. Absorption of the roots of the teeth of different species is observed to follow a routine which is a modification of the one described, the general principle being the same.

Under the head of physiological absorptions must be considered the removal of implanted teeth. It has been long observed that implanted teeth are of brief service in the mouth and that when they are removed their root surfaces are pitted and rough or entirely absorbed (Figs 236 and 241). Although to my knowledge no sections of implanted teeth have ever been made with the surrounding supporting tissue the explanation of both their short period of serviceability and the pitted surfaces seems obvious. The



FIG 236—A buccal tooth which was implanted and remained in the alveolus about three years. (Fig. 119 in *Special Dental Pathology* Black.)

inserted tooth is placed in an artificially created alveolus which nature attempts to close. To do so agents for the removal of the foreign body attack its surface and bone formation follows in the wake filling the indentations with its extensions. The attack in this case is uniform upon the surface of the root unless there are pathological interferences. A great surgeon is accredited with saying 'The more perfect the operation of placing the tooth the more rapid is the removal' (Gilmer). It is the projections of bone into the foveolæ made by the osteoclasts that give the tooth its firmness. An x ray of such a tooth shows no clear periphery as is the case with teeth normally attached but rather a confused picture due to the bridges of bone extending into the tooth root.

Under pathological absorptions, first come those found in the walls of the pulp chamber. Causch<sup>1</sup> mentions excavations in the

<sup>1</sup> Tr. of World's Columbian Dental Congress p. 114

pulpal walls as does Salter and describes the same as filled with bone<sup>1</sup> It will be remembered that the older histologists and some modern ones call every tooth tissue bone, if it is not definite in structure It was his findings in these studies that led him to consider odontoblasts as contributing to the formation of osteoclasts Absorptions in the dentin surrounding the pulp chamber and canals

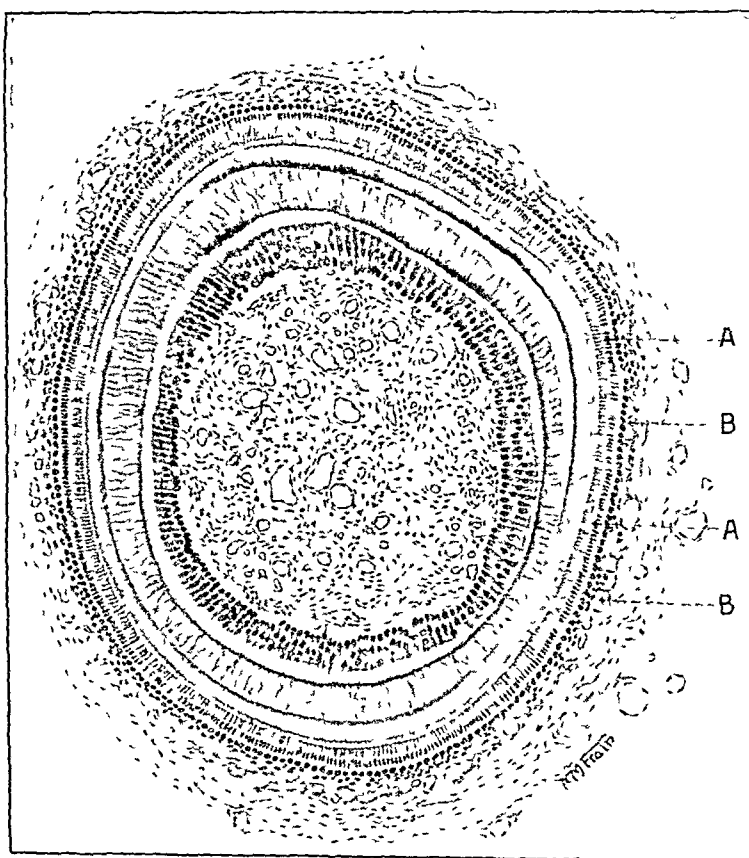


FIG 237—Section of a dog's tooth, showing blood supply to enamel forming cells  
A, ameloblasts, B, vessels

are very common and not infrequently contain filling of calcified material varying in structure from an irregularly arranged dentin to a clear structureless deposit (Figs 239 and 240). No one has observed osteoclasts in the pulp-chamber of a tooth that has not been invaded But there is no reason for doubting that they may appear there and other phagocytes as before mentioned may

<sup>1</sup> Black Special Dental Pathology, p 265

accomplish the results observed. The observations are there and frequently enough penetrate to the outside. Hess in a series of studies on multiple foramina reports that canals are often formed from within out to compensate for canals closed by secondary deposits of cementum.<sup>1</sup> Such fillings of canals are common observations in ground sections (see Fig. 131).

Absorptions on permanent teeth are very common. They are associated with impactions and are noticed on the apices of roots about which are abscesses as well as around the cervixes of teeth. Sometimes the abscess is given as the possible cause of the tissue

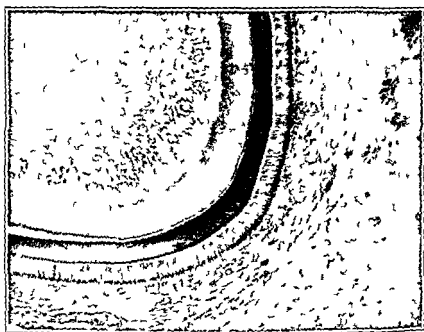


Fig. 38—Photograph of section from which Fig. 23\* was made

destruction. It does not seem probable, however, that the acid content of pus destroys the tooth root and it is very certain that no cell, osteoblast or osteoclast ever approaches a root which has been bathed in pus as it does under physiological conditions. Believing that the tissue destruction is accomplished by cells and not by acids the excursions must be made before the pus reaches the cementum the cell being stimulated to activity possibly by the

<sup>1</sup> Hess: The Development and Structure of the Tooth Apex and Features Pertaining Thereto. *Zahnteilkunde* 1911: xxxvi.

inflammation. Explaining the other absorptions mentioned Inglis suggests that such causes as protruding root canal fillings, broaches, pericemental deposits and salivary calculus may instigate cellular activity.<sup>1</sup> It is true that the absorptions occur most commonly

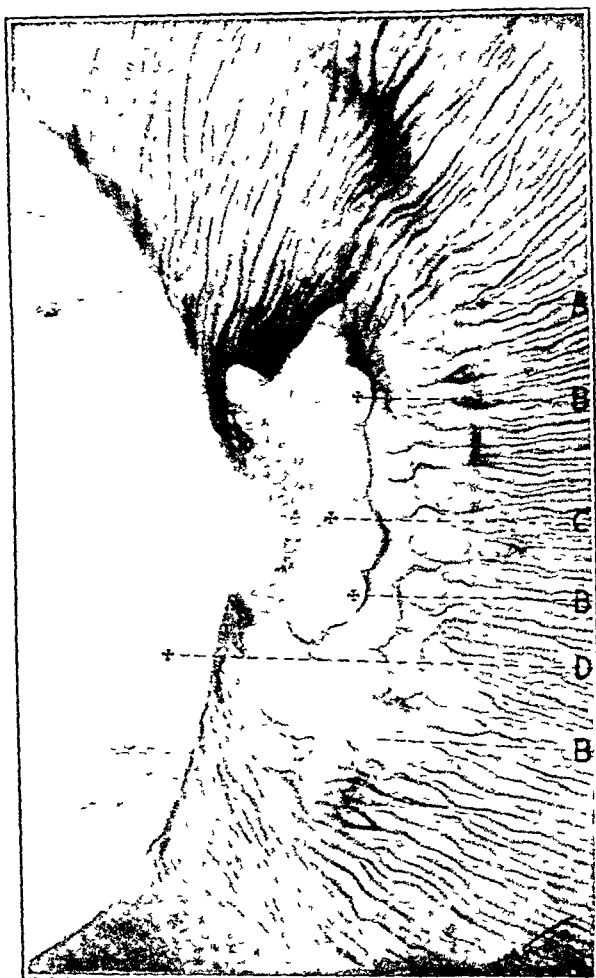


FIG 239—Section of human tooth, showing an internal absorption area which has been almost completely filled with structureless calcified material. A, primary dentin, B, foveolæ, C, structureless calcified material, D, root canal

on the cervical and apical areas where inflammations are the commonest (see Fig. 241).

More interesting than the foregoing is the entire removal of the roots of permanent teeth, sometimes limited to a single tooth, or, as

<sup>1</sup> Burchard and Inglis Dental Pathology and Therapeutics, 1912, p 622

has been reported by Black <sup>1</sup> of all the teeth, in exactly the same way as deciduous teeth are removed. Where such removals have taken

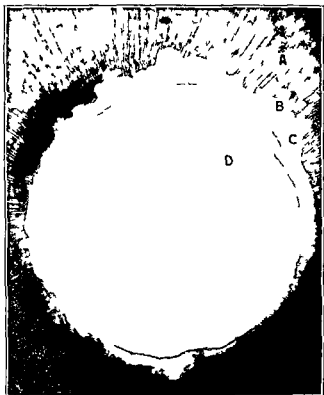


FIG. 240.—Showing absorption of pulpal walls and newly deposited structureless calcified tissue. *A* dentin *B* foveola *C* new calcified tissue *D* canal



FIG. 241.—Showing absorption of a tooth implanted by Dr. Thomas L. Gulmer. When this radiograph was taken the tooth had been in the alveolus nearly three years. (Fig. 118, Special Dental Pathology, Black)

place the patient has never reported any accompanying symptoms. The process has been painless. No etiology of such conditions is forthcoming. That question being laid aside there is no reason for doubting that the agents employed are the same as for deciduous teeth. Could sections be made of these teeth *in situ* doubtless we should find upon their surfaces osteoclasts accomplishing the purpose.

To summarize it seems strongly evident that osteoclasts or their endothelial predecessors are the active agents of absorption, although the method by which they accomplish it is unknown. Such is their distribution on both the internal and external surfaces of the tooth that neither the pulp nor the periodontal membrane can logically be termed an absorbent organ. These cells destroy soft and hard tissues alike, outlines of them being visible in the dense periodontal membrane surrounding the wasting tooth (see Fig 234, c). Especial emphasis is laid upon the connective-tissue changes that take place, changes in both the hard and soft tissues as well as changes in the blood supply. What seems so evident in the study of the removal of the temporary teeth and in bone seems a well justified explanation of the removal of the structures mentioned where exact data is so difficult to acquire.



## CHAPTER XVIII

### THE MOUTH CAVITY

**Mucous Membrane**—The mucous membrane lining the mouth cavity is composed of a layer of stratified squamous epithelium supported upon a tunica propria, which is usually described as composed of two parts—the papillary layer and the reticular layer. The epithelium and the tunica propria make up the mucous membrane proper which is supported upon a submucous layer composed of a coarse network of white and elastic fibers containing the larger bloodvessels.

**The Epithelium**—The stratified squamous epithelium is provided with a horny or corneous layer only in the portions covering the alveolar process and the hard palate, or, in other words, where the submucosa is firmly attached to the periosteum (Fig 242). In these positions the horny layer consists of dead cells which have lost their nuclei and whose cytoplasm has been converted into keratin or horny material.

These scale-like cell remains are closely packed into a protective layer. There is no distinct stratum lucidum separating the dead from the living cells as there is in the skin. In the deeper portions the cells possess oval or rounded nuclei and become larger and more polyhedral as the basement membrane is approached. The cells of the deepest layer next to the basement membrane are tall and approach the columnar form, but are never much greater in height than width. The deep layer is often called stratum Malpighii. The epithelium lining the gingival space and that covering unattached portions is without the horny layer and the cells are larger and more loosely placed. The polyhedral cells in the middle portion of the layer show distinct intercellular spaces across which the cytoplasm extends in intercellular bridges.

Isolated cells from this region show the broken bridges projecting from their surface and for this reason have been called 'pickle' or 'prickle' cells. In these positions the thickness of the epithelial layer is usually greater than in the attached portions of the membrane (Fig 243).

**Tunica Propria.**—The connective-tissue layer of the mucous membrane interlocks with the epithelial layer by means of the tunica papillaris, which is composed of very delicate white and elastic connective-tissue fibers. They are usually about half as tall as the thickness of the epithelium, and about one-third as wide as they are tall. The height and character of the papillae varies greatly, however, in different position. In the red border of the lip and in the epithelium lining the gingival space they are very tall and narrow, and approach very close to the surface of the epithelium. Over the gums and the palate they are much shorter



FIG 212 —Stratified squamous epithelium covering the alveolar process. C, corneous layer, P, papilla of connective tissue (About 100 X)

and wider and do not extend more than half-way through the epithelium. These papillae contain loops of capillary bloodvessels and in some special nerve endings are found.

**Reticular Layer.**—The reticular layer joins the papillary layer without any line of demarcation, and is composed of the same kind of tissue, the fibers being arranged in a delicate network. Everywhere in the tunica propria are found ducts from mucous gland which lie in the deeper layers.

**Submucosa** —The submucosa is composed of firm connective tissue in which the white fibers are in large, strong bundles, and

elastic fibers are scarce. It contains two plexuses of bloodvessels, both more or less parallel with the surface. The outer is composed of small vessels forming a small-meshed network, the deeper of large vessels more widely separated. Lymphatic vessels everywhere follow the course of the bloodvessels.

**Glands of the Submucosa**—The submucosa contains a great many small tubular glands. These are distributed widely over the tongue and membrane of the cheek and lip (Fig. 244). They are branched tubular glands, sometimes simple and sometimes compound. The body of the gland is always in the submucosa, though it may extend into the underlying muscle. Some are serous and others



FIG. 244. Tubular gland from unattached mucous membrane of the lip. The muscular layer is absent. (About 200 X)

mucous, while many of the larger ones contain cells of both types. The secretion of the glands is probably much more important than has been supposed.

**Nerve Endings in the Mucosa**—Sensory nerve endings of two kind are found in the mucous membrane. Krause's end bulbs are found in many of the papillae, and other nerves terminate in free endings lying between the epithelial cells.

**The Tongue** The tongue is composed of a mass of voluntary muscle fibers arranged in complicated interlacing bundles covered by the mucous membrane. The most striking characteristics of the mucous membrane of the tongue (Fig. 245) are (1) The thinness of the submucosa which holds it closely to the mass of

muscle and allows very little movement of it; (2) the submucosa in the dorsal surface contains no glands, though there are glands among the muscle fibers whose ducts pass through the submucosa; (3) the presence of the epithelial papillae upon its dorsal surface.

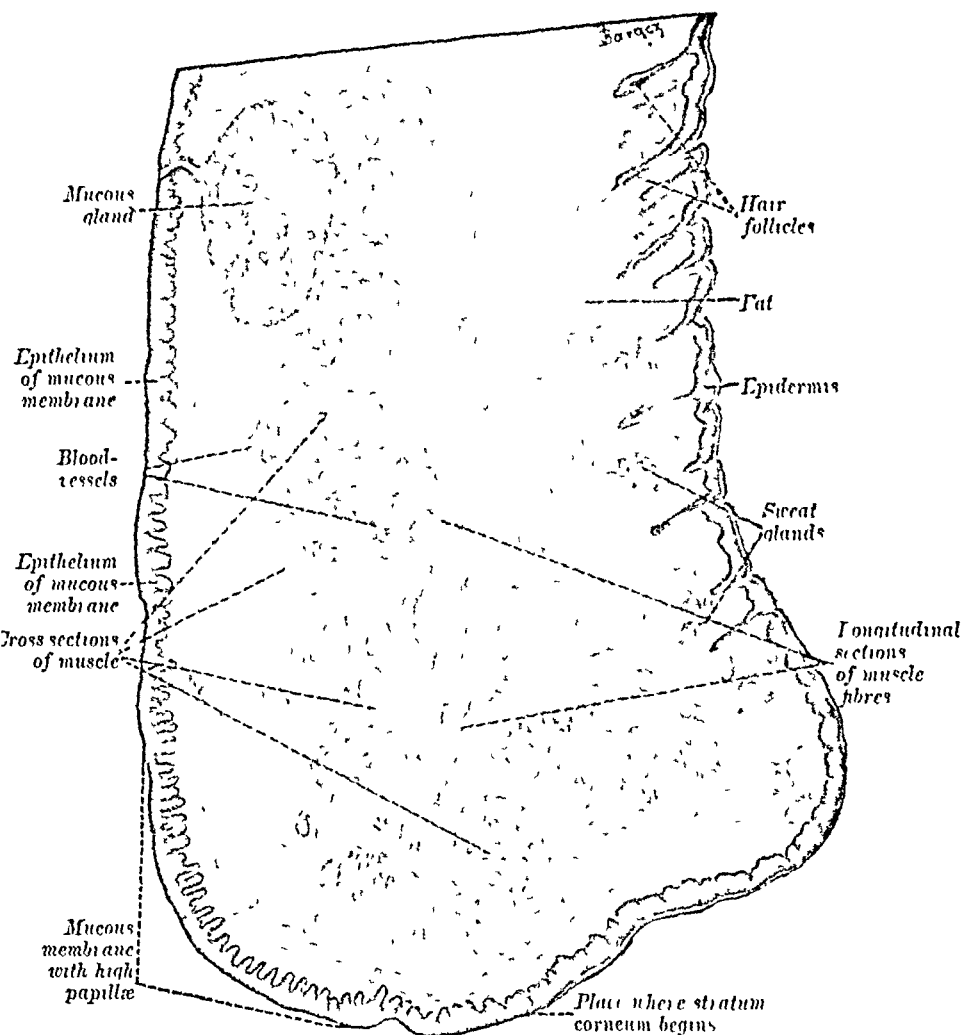


FIG 244 —Section through the upper lip of a two-and-a-half-year-old child (14 X) (Szymonowicz)

The tongue is imperfectly divided vertically on the median line by a band of connective tissue forming the median raphe or septum, which causes the depression at the central line of the dorsal surface.

**The Muscles.**—The muscles of the tongue include two groups—the extrinsic and the intrinsic. The extrinsic muscles comprise

the genioglossus, the hyoglossus, the styloglossus, and the palatoglossus. These are all paired and extend from the skull or the hyoid bone into the tongue. The intrinsic muscles comprise the principal muscles of the tongue—the lingualis. A transverse section through the body of the tongue in the central portion shows a complicated network of muscle fibers running in three directions—longitudinally, transversely, and vertically. The longitudinal fibers are arranged around the outer portion, forming a cortical layer about 5 mm thick. These constitute the chief bulk of the lingualis supple-



FIG. 245.—A section from the side of the tongue. *E* epithelium. *Sm* submucosa. *Bt* blood vessels. *M* muscle fibers. *G* mucous glands.

mented by fibers from the styloglossus. The vertical fibers are mostly deeply placed in the central portion on either side of the raphe. They are chiefly derived from the genioglossus and radiate toward the dorsal surface. The transverse fibers are entirely from the lingualis except for a few from the palatoglossus. They arise from the septum and interlace with the longitudinal and vertical fibers. They break up into strands running between the longitudinal fibers of the cortical portion, and spread out to a submucous insertion.

The complicated movements of the tongue are accomplished by the contractions of these sets of muscles. When the longitudinal fibers are relaxed and the transverse fibers contracted the tongue is rolled and extended. When the transverse fibers are relaxed and the vertical fibers contracted the tongue is flattened. The division of the tongue on the median line by the septum allows each half to work independently, so that when the longitudinal fibers are contracted on one side and relaxed on the other the tip of the tongue is moved sidewise.



FIG 246 —Mucous membrane from the dorsal surface of the tongue of a kitten, showing filiform and fungiform papillæ

**The Papillæ.**—The roughness of the dorsal surface of the tongue is caused by projections of the epithelium resting upon the tunica propria, forming the papillæ of the tongue. These projections are not to be confused with the connective-tissue papillæ in the tunica propria of the mucous membrane. They are of three kinds—the filiform and fungiform papillæ, which are found over the entire dorsal surface, and the circumvallate papillæ, which are limited in number and confined to the posterior portion. The filiform are much the more numerous, especially near the tip of the tongue. They are from 0.5 to 2.5 mm in height, and often end in brush-like strands of epithelial cells.

The fungiform papillae form the red points on the surface of the tongue especially near the edges, because of the thinness of their



FIG. 1. — Mucous membrane from the tongue of a rabbit showing circumvallate papillae with taste-buds on their sides

epithelium. They are low and rounded in form from 0.5 to 1.5 mm in height and are named from their mushroom like appearance. Fig. 24b, a section from the tongue of a kitten, shows the form of both of these papillae. The circumvallate papillae usually number

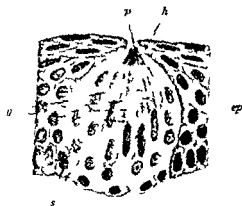


FIG. 24. — A section of a taste-bud. p pore g gustatory cells ep epithelial cell s surrounding tissue. A tentacular cells. h bristles of the gustatory cells (Schaefer)

nine or ten and are arranged in a V-shaped form near the base of the tongue with the apex extending backward. They are from 1

to 1.5 mm. in height and from 2 to 3.5 mm in width. They are surrounded by a depression, so that the upper surface of the papillæ is not much above the general level of the membrane.

**The Taste-buds.**—These are found chiefly on the sides of the circumvallate papillæ (Fig. 247), though they are occasionally found in the epithelium of the fungiform papillæ and the soft palate, and on the posterior surface of the epiglottis. They are always entirely embedded in the epithelium and extend through its entire thickness. The structures are ovoid in form, with the rounded end toward the connective tissue and the pointed end at the sur-

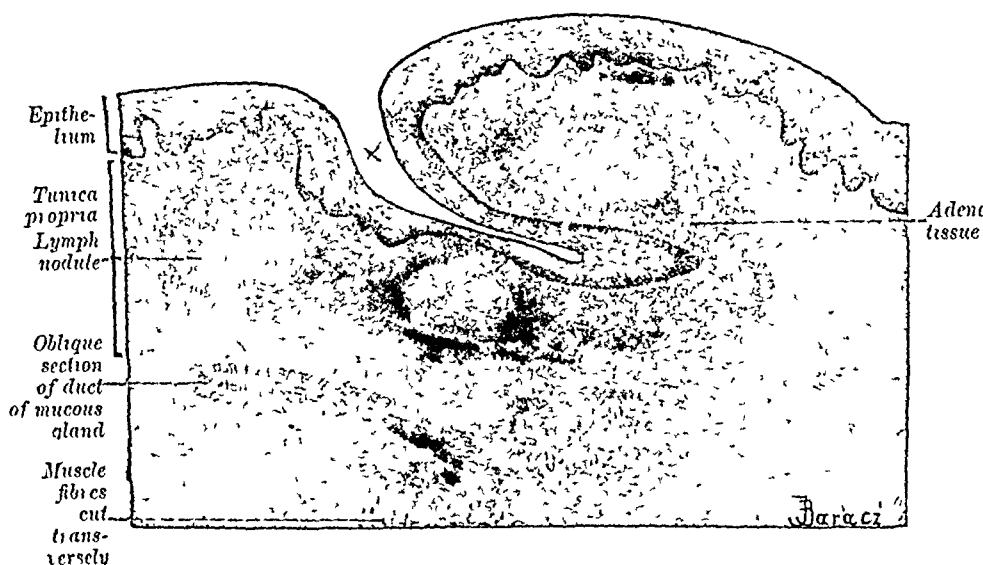


FIG 249 —Section through a lingual follicle in man  $\times$ , crypt (50  $\times$ )  
(Szymonowicz)

face, where a small opening, the taste-pore, communicates with the mouth cavity (Fig. 248). Most of the cells are elongated and spindle-shaped, and arranged like the leaves of an onion. Four varieties may be recognized. The outer sustentacular cells form the outer layer and are in contact with the epithelial cells. They are elongated, with an oval nucleus near the center. The inner sustentacular are rod-shaped cells, more slender in form, with a nucleus at the base. The neuro-epithelial cells are elongated, spindle-shaped cells at the center of the taste-bud. The nucleus is at the base of the cell, and from the opposite end a stiff bristle-like process extends through the taste-pore.



## CHAPTER XXIV

### BIOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS FUNDAMENTAL TO EMBRYOLOGY

**History**—Before beginning the study of embryology some topics in general histology must be reviewed, and some general biologic ideas considered. No real conception of the complicated process of individual development can be obtained without laying a foundation in the study of the cell as the units of life and the mechanism through which the phenomena of life are manifested.

In embryology it is found that the individual in his physical development passes through stages which correspond to the development of the race or species to which he belongs and a like comparison might be drawn in mental development and the acquirement of knowledge. This is specially true of the subject of embryology.

Apparently the first ideas to occupy the speculative thought of man when he became conscious of himself as an independent being were the questions of his origin and the relation to his environment and destiny. These have become the basis for the development of all religious thought.

Up to the beginning of the nineteenth century all considerations of these subjects were purely speculative. The old question of 'What is life?' received endless discussion. In the nineteenth century this question has been dropped into the background and the question 'What is the mechanism of life?' has been substituted for it. The consideration of the latter question has resulted not only in the marvellous advancement of medical knowledge and surgical skill but in the great development of deeper fundamental thought. It must not be forgotten however that the development of knowledge resulting from the consideration of the latter question has not and does not promise to answer the old question, 'What is life?' any more than the laws of electricity and their application to its use answer the question 'What is electricity?'

The discovery of the cell hypothesis and the propounding of the theory of organic evolution have been the greatest factors in the unification of knowledge and the stimulation of thought in these fields. It is interesting to notice that these two theories, closely related as they have become had entirely independent

origins and were long followed out without any immediate connection. The theory of evolution was based upon consideration of the forms of living things, their distribution and adaptation to environment.

**The Cell Theory.**—The cell theory had its origin in the study of minute forms. Its beginnings were made possible by the development of the compound microscope, which revealed their structure and showed them to be small bodies made up of apparently a structureless, granular material which was called protoplasm, or the ultimate substance of life. This material, as its name indicates was originally supposed to be simple in structure and composition and to be the life substance. Huxley's characterization of it as the "physical basis of life" was the beginning of the study which has revealed it to be very far from a simple substance, but rather extremely complex both in structural arrangement and chemical composition. In more recent biology, therefore, the word protoplasm is being dropped and the word cytoplasm or cell substance substituted for it.

The early history of the cell theory was obstructed in its development by the remains of the old Greek idea that living things could originate from non-living matter, that the swamp breeds disease, and the decomposing body of an animal, maggots. It required fifty years of work on the cell theory for Virchow, in 1850, to propound his thesis that all living cells are derived from a preëxisting cell, and so establish the continuity of life, which has flowed on from the beginning in an uninterrupted stream, each individual being only a period.

When Schwann and Schleiden showed that the bodies of both plants and animals, instead of being made up of homogeneous tissue, were composed of millions of structural elements which they called cells, the consideration of both plants and animals were for the first time put upon a common basis. Naturally enough the first thing to attract attention was the study of the form and arrangement of these structural elements in the tissues of animals and plants.

In following out this study it became more and more evident that, while infinitely varied in the detail of their form and structure, all cells had a common plan of organization and possessed structural characteristics common to all, at least in some stages of their history.

**Relation of the Nucleus to the Protoplasm.**—The first point to be discovered in the internal organization of the cell was the nucleus,

the meaning of which and its relation to the cytoplasm at once attracted attention. As the result of a vast amount of work it was gradually established that the nucleus 'exerts a controlling and directing influence over the activity of the cytoplasm that a cell deprived of its nucleus would continue to live for a longer or shorter time but that it would not grow and would not reproduce another cell that the phenomena of life manifested by destructive metabolism would continue until the identity of the cytoplasm was destroyed but there would be no constructive metabolism. The work of the cytoplasm is therefore dependent upon the character of the nuclear material.

**Cell Division**—As first observed, cell division was supposed to be an irregular cutting of the cytoplasm and the nucleus in two, forming two individual cells. The cytoplasm by its constructive changes does not continue to increase indefinitely, but as soon as a certain size is reached it divides a portion of the nucleus going to each of the parts which immediately begin to increase in size. It was soon found that cell division was not always so simple and that in some cases changes in the nucleus preceded the division of the cytoplasm. Two forms of cell division are therefore described the simple or direct and indirect or karyokinetic cell division. The simple is now known to be comparatively rare.

**Indirect Cell Division**—Indirect cell division must be considered as a means by which the chromatic material of the nucleus is equally and systematically distributed to the resulting cells. The nucleus in cell division contains a beautiful structural mechanism by which the material which is to control the development of the resulting cells and their activity is definitely distributed to them. In this process there is no irregularity in the kind or amount of material given to the two cells.

In this process the chromatin of the original nucleus is divided into a definite number of pieces which are split in two and half of each sent to each new nucleus where they form its chromatin network.

**The Vehicle of Transmission**—It was discovered that the number of chromosomes was constant in every cell division for all the cells of all the tissues of the given species, and was therefore, a characteristic of the species and that in all the cells of the body it was always an even number and that in the germ cells of the species the number of chromosomes was exactly half that in the cells of the body. This led to the immediate recognition of the chromatic

material as the vehicle of transmission. When in the study of fertilization it was found that fertilization consists in the union of two cells, each contributing both cytoplasm and nucleus, and that the amount of chromatic material was equal from each, and exactly half that found in the cells of the parent body, the equality of the sexes in transmission was firmly established upon a cytologic basis. It is interesting to note that this equality had previously been claimed by the disciples of the evolutionary theory, and it was in this field that the evolutionary theory and the cell theory first met on common grounds (about 1875).

All the advancement in modern thought concerning heredity and transmission has resulted from these discoveries. The practical results are perhaps still more important in the artificial breeding of plants and animals, adapting them to their environment. The work of such men as Burbank may be said to be the application of the knowledge of the mechanism of cell division and inheritance to horticulture and agriculture.

**Chemical Ideas.**—At the present time the structural mechanism of life, while inviting many fields for research, may be said to have nearly reached the limit of possibilities of observation, and at the present time the chemical phase is attracting the greatest attention. Such questions as, "How does the nucleus influence the activity of the cytoplasm?" are being eagerly investigated. Cytoplasm while enormously complex in chemical composition, must, nevertheless, always be thought of as performing its vital functions by chemical activity. It is constantly building simpler molecules into its own, and so increasing in amount. For this its surface must be bathed in materials with which it can react. It is evident that if the mass increased indefinitely the volume would increase much more rapidly than the surface, and this puts a limit upon the growth.

The constructive metabolism of the cytoplasm is dependent upon the presence of the chromatin in the nucleus. In the process of metabolism, therefore, there must be interaction between the chemical substances of the chromatin, cytoplasm, and food material. The development of physiologic chemistry is rapidly affecting the ideas of the cause and treatment of disease, and especially the production of immunity and susceptibility.

If the dental profession is to keep pace with the development in these fields and apply the results of investigation to the treatment of diseases of the mouth, the study of the fundamental sciences must be more thorough.

# CHAPTER XXV

## EARLY STAGES OF EMBRYOLOGY

SINCE fertilization consists essentially in the union of the chromatin from two cells and as the result of the union restores the normal amount of chromatin for the cells of that species it is evident that

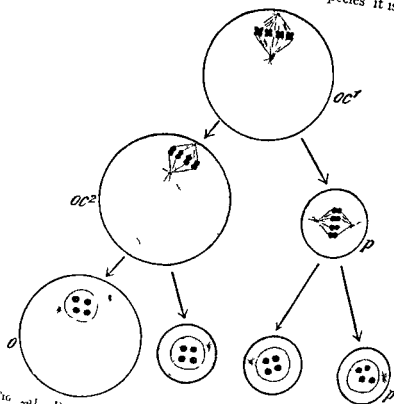


FIG. 201. Diagram illustrating the reduction of the chromosomes during the maturation of the ovum.  $O$  ovum.  $OC^1$  oocyte of the first generation.  $OC^2$  oocyte of the second generation.  $P$  polar bodies. (McMurrich)

in some way the germ cells must be prepared for fertilization by the loss of half their chromatin. This process was first observed in the case of the ovum.

**Maturation.**—In observing fertilization of eggs of the starfish and various threadworms, it was noticed that before fertilization occurred the nucleus of the ovum divided with karyokinetic figures, forming three small bodies known as polar bodies. This process is diagrammed in Fig. 251. In reality, the ovum first divides, forming one polar body; the polar body and the ovum both then divide again, so that the result of the two series of division is the

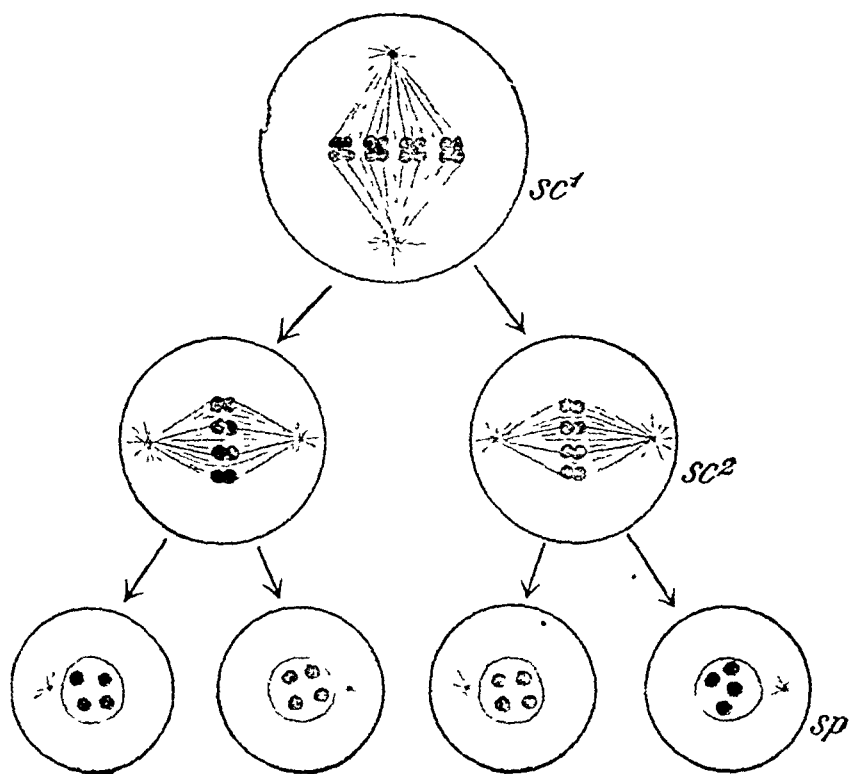


FIG 252 —Diagram illustrating the reduction of the chromosomes during spermatogenesis. *sc¹*, spermatocyte of the first order, *sc²*, spermatocyte of the second order, *sp*, spermatid (McMurrich)'

formation of four cells, one of which is functional, three disappearing. This process is practically universal in the formation of ova of both plants and animals. The cells in the ovary which form the ova are called oogonia. The cells formed from these are the primary oöcyte. The division of this cell produces two secondary oöcytes, of which one disappears later. The division of the secondary oocyte results in the ovum and three polar bodies. The number of chromosomes in the primary oocyte is half the number characteristic of

the somatic cells but they are made up of four pieces. In the secondary oöcytes they are the same number but double. In the ovum and polar bodies they are the same in number and single.

**Spermatogenesis**—Exactly the same series of changes occur in the formation of the spermatozoa. They are illustrated in Fig 252. On the outer wall of the seminiferous tubules are two forms of cells, the spermatogonia and the cells of Sertoli (Fig 253). The cell of Sertoli increases in size and spreads out against the basement membrane, pushing the spermatogonia away from it. They now divide forming two cells, one of which returns to the basement membrane and remains as the spermatogonium the other becomes a primary spermatocyte. The primary spermatocytes divide, forming a secondary, the secondary divide, forming spermatids, which

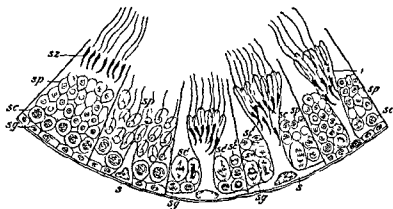


FIG 253.—Diagram showing stages of spermatogenesis as seen in different sections of a seminiferous tubule of a rat. *s* sertoli cell *sc*<sup>1</sup> spermatocyte of the first order *sc*<sup>2</sup> spermatocyte of the second order *sg* spermatogone *sp* spermatid *s* spermatozoon (Von Lenhossek's diagram from McMurrich.)

develop directly into spermatozoa. By comparing the diagrams they will be seen to correspond exactly with the formation of the ova except that all of the cells are small and motile. The nuclear changes also correspond to those of the ova, the primary spermatocyte having half the number of tetrad chromosomes, the secondary half the number of diad and the spermatids half the number of monad chromosomes.

**Fertilization**—Fertilization is essentially the same in the sexual reproduction of all plants and animals. It may be easily observed in the transparent cells of such animals as the starfish and the threadworm. The spermatozoon enters the cytoplasm of the ova

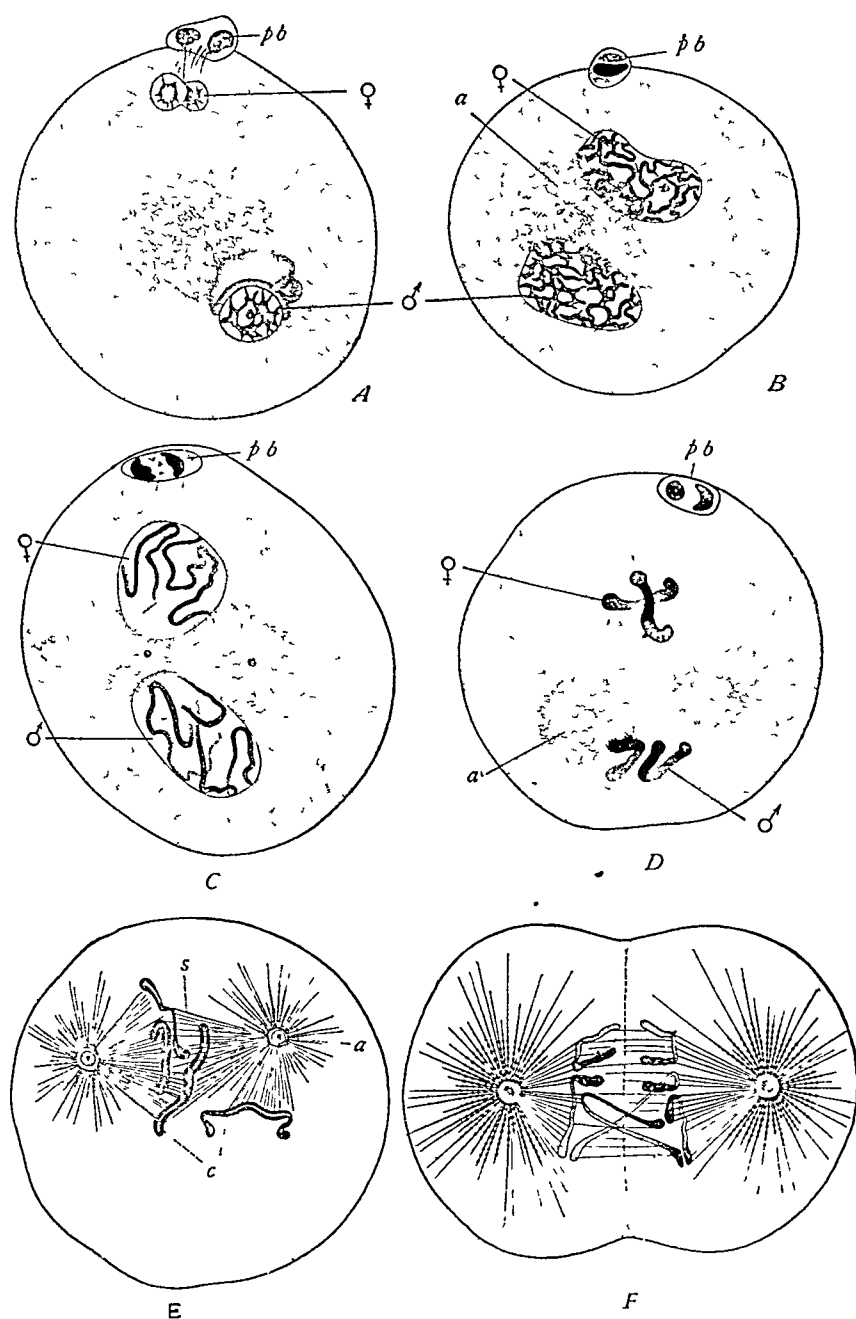


FIG 254 —Fertilization of the egg of *Ascaris megalocephala*, var *bivalens* (Boveri)  
 A, the spermatozoon has entered the egg, its nucleus is shown at ♂, beside it lies the granular mass of "archoplasm" (attraction sphere), above are the closing phases in the formation of the second polar body (two chromosomes in each nucleus) B, germ nuclei (♀, ♂) in the reticular stage, the attraction sphere (a) contains the dividing centrosome C, chromosomes forming in the germ nuclei, the centrosome divided D, each germ nucleus resolved into chromosomes, attraction sphere (a) double E, mitotic figure forming for the first cleavage, the chromosomes (c) already split F, first cleavage in progress, showing divergence of the daughter chromosomes toward the spindle poles (only three chromosomes shown) (Wilson)



where it immediately loses its characteristic form and develops into a typical nucleus (Fig 254). The ovum now has two nuclei one of which is called the male pronucleus, the other the female pronucleus. These both form chromosomes, the number from each being half the number typical of the species. These are arranged as usual between the centrosomes. They divide longitudinally, each forming two one of which passes to either centrosome, where a new nucleus is formed, and in the meantime the cytoplasm has divided so that two cells are formed. The nuclear material of these two cells has therefore been equally derived from the two parents and it is to control all of the future development of the individual

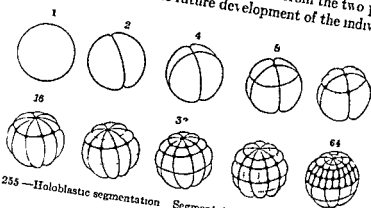


FIG 255—Holoblastic segmentation. Segmentation of frog diagrammatically represented

### SEGMENTATION

**Holoblastic Segmentation**—An idea of the development of the embryo can perhaps best be obtained by following the development of the frog. The frog's eggs are large and easily observed and they contain only a small amount of yolk or food material which does not obstruct the observation. The spherical ovum first divides into hemispheres; these two cells are divided into four in a plane at right angles and the four are divided into eight by a plane at right angles to the previous plane. This is best understood by examining the illustration (Fig 255). The lines of cell division proceed in a regular way, the planes passing in such direction as to multiply the number of cells by two in each set of divisions. Very soon the cells around the black pole show a tendency to divide more rapidly than those at the white pole. At this stage the individual is made up of a hollow sphere of cells with a space at the center, the cells at the upper surface

being small and rapidly dividing, those at the lower surface large and slowly dividing (Fig 256) As this continues the sphere becomes flattened on the bottom, and finally the lower surface is turned inward until the sphere is converted into a hollow bag or sac made up of two layers of cells, the outer of which are small, the inner

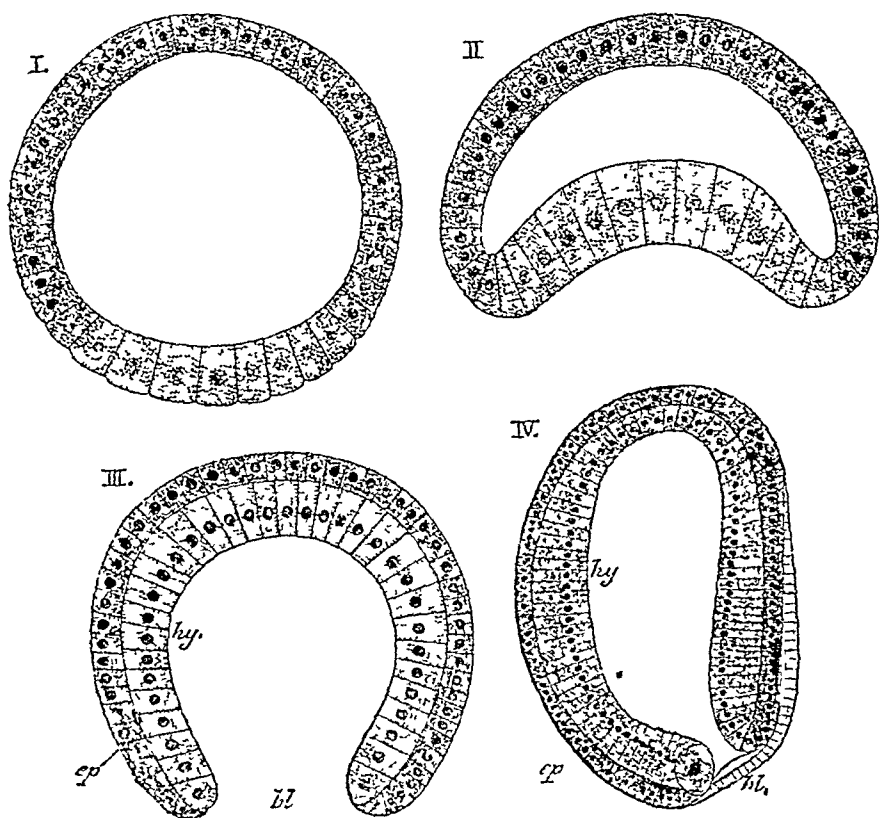


FIG 256—Four stages in the development of amphioxus, illustrating the formation of the gastrula I, the blastula, a hollow sphere of cells, those at the lower pole larger than those at the upper and filled with yolk granules II, invagination of the lower pole, because of more rapid growth of cells at the upper pole III, the gastrula, complete invagination, the creature is now a two-layered bag A space should be shown between the layers bl, the mouth of the bag, or blastopore, hy, inner layer of cells—hypoblast, cp, outer layer of cells—epiblast IV, the gastrula will now elongate, the cavity becomes the alimentary canal, the blastopore the orifice at one end

large, the two joining around the mouth of the sac This hollow bag stage is known as the gastrula. The cavity of the sac is really a part of the outside world around which the cells have grown, and will form the cavity of the alimentary canal The opening of the sac is known as the blastopore, and will form the anterior opening

## EARLY STAGES OF EMBRYOLOGY

into the alimentary tract from the mouth cavity. At this stage the individual is made up of two kinds of cells, and is to be compared in structure with the celenterates or such animals as the fresh water hydra and the coral polyp.

**Formation of the Germ Layers**—The cells which form the outer layer of the gastrula are called the epiblast, the cells which line it the hypoblast or entoblast. Where these two layers join around the opening of the blastopore a ring of cells is formed which differs from both in form and arrangement, and will form the mesoblast. In the process of cell division from the ovum therefore three kinds of cells have resulted which represent the first stage of specialization.

**Epiblast**—From the cells of the epiblast will be formed (1) the epithelium of the surface of the body and all glands that connect with it the hair the nails and the enamel of the teeth, (2) the epithelium lining the mouth and the nose cavities and the lower part of the rectum (3) the nervous system and all of the organs of special sense.

**Hypoblast**—From the hypoblast will be formed (1) The epithelium lining the alimentary canal and the glands that open from it (2) the epithelium lining the larynx, trachea, and the lungs (3) the epithelium of the bladder and ureter.

**Mesoblast**—From the mesoblast will be formed (1) The various connective tissues including bone dentin and cementum (2) the muscles both striated and unstriated (3) the circulatory system including the blood itself and the lymphatics (4) the lining membrane of the serous cavities of the body (5) the kidney (6) the internal organs of reproduction.

Looking at these germ layers in another way, it may be said that through the mechanism of cell division all of the chromatin which is to control nerve cytoplasm has been distributed to the epiblast all that which is to contribute the muscular activity to the mesoblast and so on.

**Meroblastic Segmentation**—If the development of the chick is compared to that of the frog they at first seem to be very different. The ova of birds and reptiles are provided with a vast amount of food material or yolk which is provided by the parent for the nourishment of the embryo. It has been seen that the frog's egg contains a certain amount of yolk and that the presence of yolk granules retarded the cell division. In the case of the birds and reptiles the yolk granules have increased until the active cytoplasm

is left as a small disk floating on top of a sphere of yolk enclosed in the yolk membrane. The white spot seen floating on the top of the yolk of a hen's egg is called the germinal spot. Before fertili-

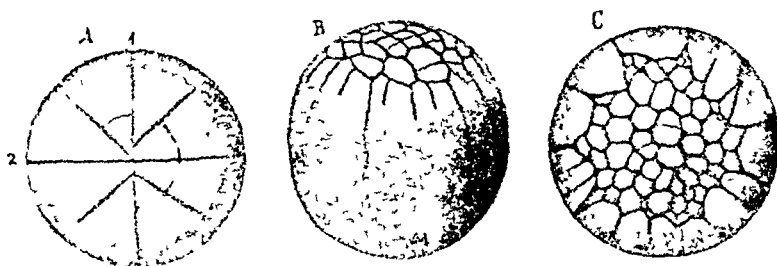


FIG 257 —Meroblastic segmentation

zation this is a mass of protoplasm with a nucleus in the center. When segmentation begins it divides first into right and left halves,

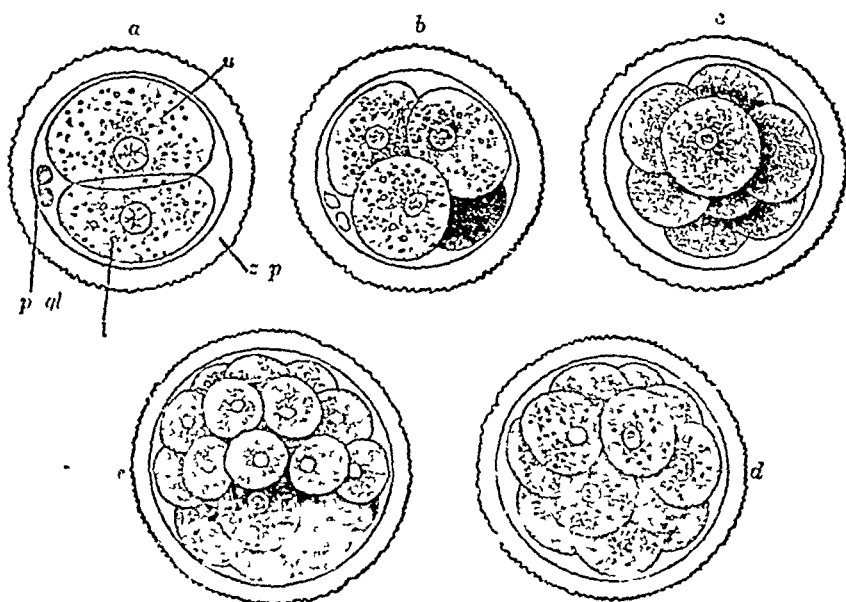


FIG 258—First five stages of segmentation (rabbit's ovum). *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, and *e*. In *a*, *b*, and *c* the epiblast cells are larger than the hypoblastic ones. In *c* the epiblast cells have become smaller and more numerous than the hypoblasts and the epiblastic spheres are beginning to surround and close in the hypoblast cells. *z p*, zona pellucida, *p gl*, polar globules, *u*, first epiblast cell, *l*, first hypoblast cell

then divides again by a line at right angles to the first one, then the four cells are converted into eight cells, as if by a circle, and the process continues in this way (Fig. 257). It is best understood

from the diagram. This type of segmentation is known as meroblastic while that of the frog is holoblastic.

**Mammalian Segmentation**—The mammalian ova contain very little yolk, as the nourishment of the embryo is provided for in an entirely different way. The segmentation is holoblastic (Fig

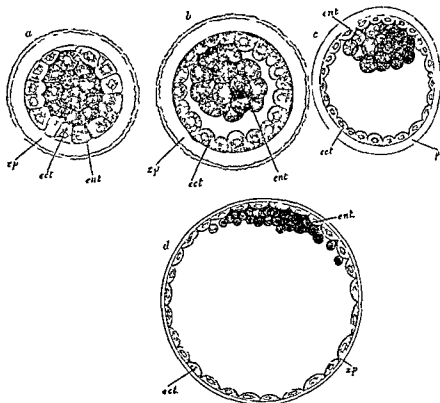


FIG 259 —Sections of the ovum of a rabbit during the later stages of segmentation showing the formation of the blastodermic vesicle. *a* gastrula stages. *ent* hypoblast enclosed by *ep* epiblast. *b* fluid is beginning to collect and separate the epiblast and hypoblast. *c* the fluid has greatly increased in amount, the hypoblastic cells adhering to the upper surface. *d* the blastodermic vesicle. *ect* the outer layer epiblast. *ent* hypoblast the inner layer adhering to the inner surface of the epiblast at the upper surface forming the opaque area.

258), but shows marked differences from that of the frog and characteristics similar to those of the birds and reptiles, and this has been an added link to the evidence of the evolutionists, that the mammalia have been derived in evolution from the reptiles.

After the first few divisions the cells of the upper pole divide much more rapidly than those of the lower, and grow down over

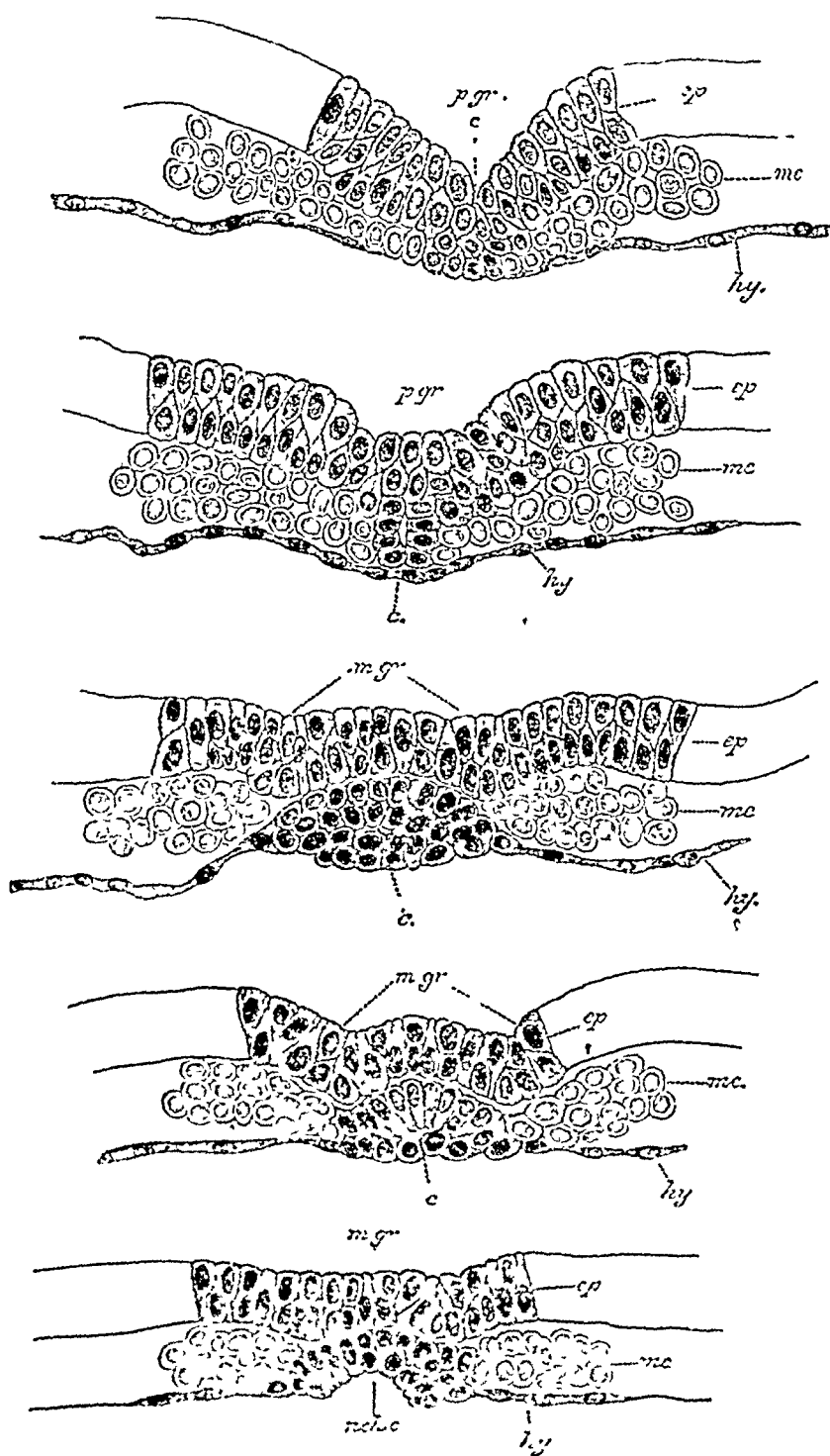


Fig. 260 — A series of sections through the neurenteric and notochordal canal of a mole embryo. *p.gr.*, the primitive groove, *ep*, epiblast, *mc*, notochordal canal, *hy.*, hypoblast; *m.gr.*, medullary groove (Heap)

the others, enclosing them. When the large cells have been entirely covered in by the small ones the small ones continue to multiply more rapidly and fluid collects inside the sphere, leaving the large cells adhering to the inner surface of the small cell layer at one pole of the sphere (Fig 259). At the upper pole where the sphere is made up of two layers of cells there is an opaque spot, or the "area pellucida," from only part of which the embryo is developed the rest forming organs to provide it with nourishment during the embryonal condition.

Starting from the center of the opaque area on the upper surface of the sphere or blastula, there appears a streak known as the primitive streak, caused by the appearance of a rod of cells lying between the two layers and from the side of this rod or notochord a third kind of cell, different from either the large or small cell layer, is formed. These three kinds of cells make up the three layers of the blastoderm and represent the first step in differentiation or, to state it in a different way, all of the chromatin which (Fig 260) directs nerve cell activity has been sent to the outer small cell layer or epiblast, all of the chromatin which directs

#### LEGEND FOR PLATE XX

Figs 1 to 5.—Diagrammatic representations of longitudinal and cross-sections of hen's egg in various stages of incubation. They illustrate how the embryo is developed out of the area pellucida and the yolk sac, the serosa and the allantois out of the extra embryonal area of the germ layers. The embryo is represented much too large in relation to the yolk sac. The yolk is represented in yellow and the ectoderm in green, ectoderm in blue, mesoderm in red, and the black dotted lines indicate the limit to which the inner and outer germ layers have extended over the yolk. The red dots mark the limit of the mesoderm. *ak* outer germ layer (blue), *mw* medullary ridges or folds, *N* neural tube, *am* amniotic fold, *rof* *hof* *saf* anterior, posterior and lateral amniotic folds, *A* amnion, *ah* amniotic cavity, *S* serous membrane, *hu* dermal umbilicus, *af* lateral folds, *lf 1* *kf 2* head fold, *afb* *ifb* outer and inner limb fold, *ik* inner germ layer (green), *er* its margin of overgrowth, *dr* intestinal groove, *dq* vitelline duct, *al* allantois, *ds* interstitial sac, *du* intestinal umbilicus, *mk* middle germ layer (red), *mks* parietal layer of mesoderm, *mkv* visceral layer of mesoderm, *af* lateral limits of the same, *dm* *vm* dorsal and ventral mesenteries, *th* body cavity, *th<sup>1</sup>* *th<sup>2</sup>* embryonic extra embryonic parts of the same.

- FIG 1.—Cross-section through hen's egg on second day of incubation.  
 FIG 2.—Cross-section through hen's egg on third day of incubation.  
 FIG 3.—Longitudinal section through hen's egg on third day of incubation.  
 FIG 4.—Longitudinal section through hen's egg beginning of fourth day of incubation.  
 FIG 5.—Longitudinal section through hen's egg on seventh day of incubation.  
 FIG 6.—Cross section through embryo first day.  
 FIG 7.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section through a selachian embryo.  
 FIG 8 (Kollikie).—Half of a cross-section through embryo chick (two days).  
 FIG 9 (Kollikie).—Cross-section through embryo chick beginning of third day.  
 FIG 10.—Cross-section of chick (five days) in the region of the umbilicus.  
 FIG 11.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section of the embryo chick.







muscle cell activity, etc., has been sent to the new cells of the third layer, or mesoblast, while the large cells of the inner layer or hypoblast contain chromatin to direct most of the secretory activities and the formation of the epithelium of the alimentary canal.

### NERVOUS SYSTEM.

**Formation of Neural Canal.**—The epidermal cells of either side of the primitive streak grow rapidly, forming two ridges with a groove between them, which grows deeper and deeper until the ridges bend over and join, enclosing a tube which is to be the canal of the spinal cord (Fig. 261). The anterior end of this tube enlarges into three bulbs which correspond to the ventricles of the brain, and as they increase in size they fold over ventrally or toward the center of the sphere until the first and second are at right angles to the original tubular part.

As the outer layer forms the tube of the central nervous system, the inner layer folds off a blind pouch from the general cavity of the sphere which is to form the anterior part of the alimentary canal (Plate XX). By this time development is complicated by the formation of the embryonal membranes, the amnion and allantois, but we may omit these entirely for our purposes.

The diagram from Quain's *Anatomy* (Figs 262 and 263) illustrates the condition just described, showing the embryo in longitudinal section, the bending over of the anterior end of the neural canal to form the mid- and forebrain and the foregut, or esophagus, a blind pouch ending anteriorly under the midbrain and posteriorly opening into the cavity of the sphere now called the yolk sac. This pouch is lined by hypoblast and covered by mesoblast and epiblast. The heart has already begun its development in the mesoblast on the ventral side of the foregut.

**Branchial Arches.**—There now appear what are called the gill slits, openings from the foregut through its walls to the surface of the embryo, which are separated by thickenings of the wall forming arches around the gut known as the visceral or branchial arches, at the center of each of which is found a bloodvessel. These structures are to be compared to the gills of a fish, which are slits through the wall of the esophagus to the outside, so that water taken into the mouth may pass out through the slits. At this time, too, the arrangement of the bloodvessels exactly resembles that of a fish,

and the individual may be said to be in the fish stage of development

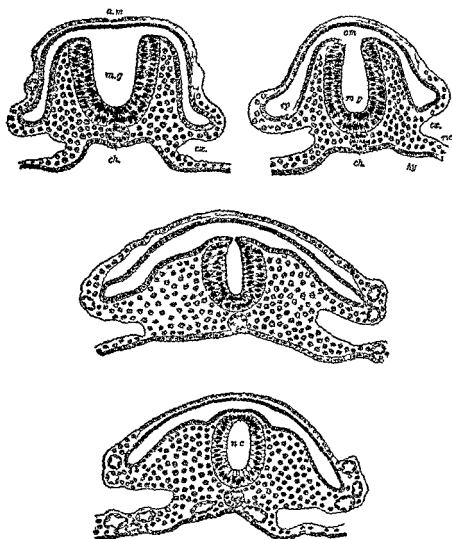
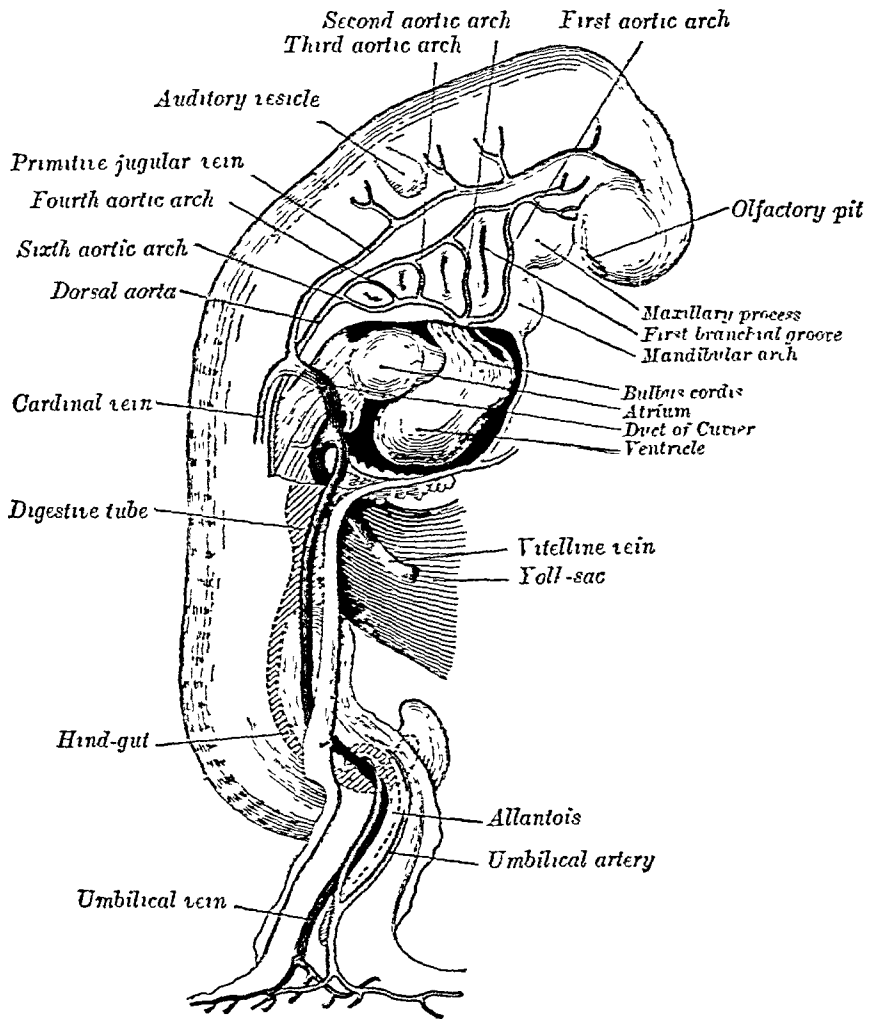


FIG 261 —Stages in the conversion of the medullary groove into the neural canal. From tail end of embryo of the cat. *m.g.* medullary groove *n.c.* neural canal *ch* notochord *ep* epiblast *hy* hypoblast *me* mesoblast *ce* celom *am* amnion (After Quain)

**Stomodeum** —Plat. XVI from Quain's *Anatomy* and Fig 261 from Hertwig's *Textbook of Embryology* shows the embryo at this stage and the arrangement of the bloodvessels. As the fore-

# PLATE XXI



Profile View of a Human Embryo Estimated at Twenty-one Days Old. (After His )

Showing branchial arches and relation to bloodvessels

space between the lower surface of the fore- and midbrain and the upper surface of the mandibular arch (Fig 264) This is a part

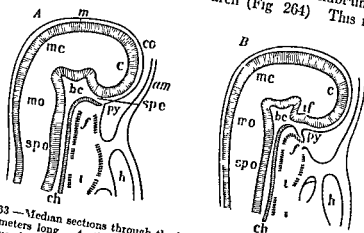


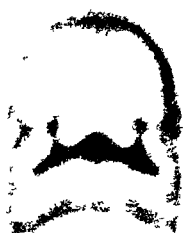
FIG 263 —Median sections through the head of embryo rabbits five (A) and six (B) millimeters long A the opening from the foregut has not yet been made B the faucal opening is shown at f c first brain vesicle mc midbrain vesicle mo medulla oblongata m medullary epiblast i infundibulum spe sphenothalamic invagination py buccal pituitary invagination am amnion h heart ch notochord

of the outside world, and is enclosed to form the mouth and nose cavities This process is best understood if we think of the develop-



FIG 264 —Embryo showing brachial arches and stomodeum

ment from the anterior end of the forebrain of a process which may be described as a curtain dropping down making a central



## EARLY STAGES OF EMBRYOLOGY

the mandibular arch and viewing the parts from below (Fig 269 from Hertwig's *Embryology*)

The deformity of cleft palate is then a later development than that of hare-lip, and either may occur without the other though they are usually found together. The cleft of the palate usually turns to one side at the front running out between the cuspid and lateral unless it is double when a detached piece is found in the center in front containing the incisors. As soon as the mouth and nose cavities are separated and as fast as bone is formed in the jaws most of the space is occupied by the tooth germs.





as the dental ridge. In sections the cells piled up above the surface are usually washed off more or less by the reagents, but the depression into the mesoderm is shown. On the lingual surface of this ridge in the part embedded in the mesoderm, the cells of the Malpighian layer grow out lingually at right angles to the ridge, forming a continuous shelf known as the *dental lamina* (Fig. 271). It is important to remember that the lamina is continuous along the entire extent of the ridge.



FIG. 271.—The dental ridge and dental lamina

**The Enamel Organ**—From ten points on the surface of the lamina little buds of epiblast start and grow down into the mesoderm, increasing in size and becoming bulbous at the deep end. The bulbous portion gradually becomes flattened. At this stage the bulb is composed of an outer layer of columnar cells continuous with the Malpighian layer of the ridge and a central mass of large polyhedral cells (Fig. 272). As the bud continues to grow into the mesoderm the mesodermic tissue below it begins to condense and the cells of the upper portion of the bulb growing more rapidly, convert the bulb into a two-layered bag.

**The Dental Papillæ**—The cells in the condensed mesoderm multiply and grow up into the cavity of this cap, forming the beginning of the dental papillæ. This stage is represented in Figs 273 and 274, in which the enamel organ is seen connected with the lamina by a cord of epithelial cells, and made up of an outer layer of columnar cells known as the *outer tunic*, and an inner layer of columnar cells lying next to the dental papillæ, known as the *inner tunic*. The polyhedral cells between the two layers fill the central part of the enamel organ and have taken on a peculiar appearance, which has given to them the name of the *stellate reticulum*. The

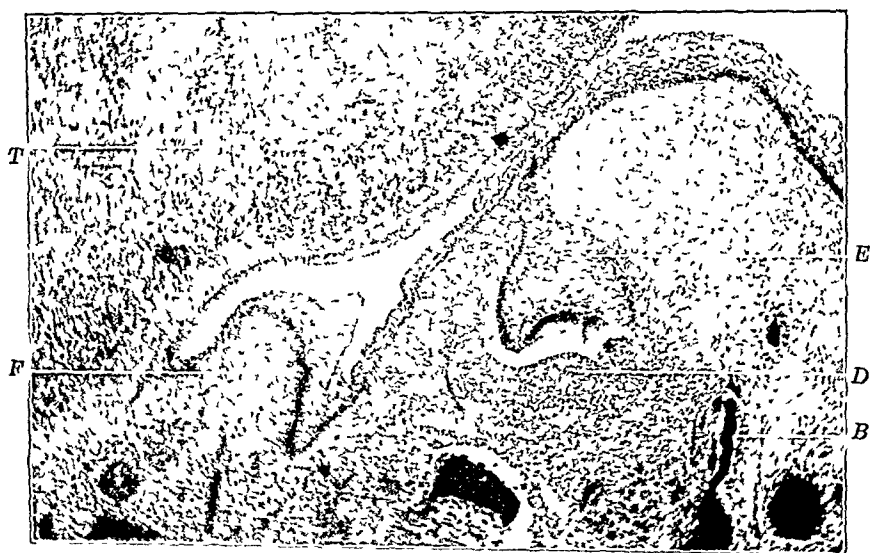


FIG 272 —A section through the mandibular arch. *E*, enamel organ, *D*, beginning of the dental papilla, *B*, bone, *F*, fold from the side of the mandible to the base of the tongue covering the beginning of the sublingual gland, *T*, tongue

development of the tooth germ now progresses until the dental papilla has taken on the typical form of the tooth. The fully formed enamel organ for an incisor of a sheep is shown in Fig. 275. The cord which connects the outer tunic with the surface epithelium is not shown in this section.

**The Tooth Germ**—The tooth germ is composed of the enamel organ, made up of the *outer tunic*, the *inner tunic*, and the *stellate reticulum*, covering the *dental papillæ*. From the base of the papillæ fibrous tissue develops, growing upward around the entire tooth germ and enclosing it in a definite wall or sac of fibrous tissue. This is known as the *dental follicle*, or the *follicle wall*.

**The Dental Follicle**—This term has been used to indicate not simply the connective tissue wall but all of the structure enclosed in it. This use of the term, however, is confusing, and the term should be confined to the fibrous sac. By the end of the twelfth week the follicle wall has grown up so as to enclose the enamel



Fig. 1.—The enamel organ. The outer tunic connected to the lamina by the cord the dental papilla growing up into the cap. The spaces are shrinkage spaces.

organ and the epithelial cord which has connected it with the surface is broken.

**Tooth Germs of the Permanent Tooth**—Before the epithelial cord is broken from some point on the lingual surface of the outer tunic or along the cord a bud of epithelial cells grows out and turns down into the mesoderm passing over the follicle wall (Fig. 276). This continues to grow downward until it has reached the position below and to the lingual of the tooth germ for the temporary tooth,

where it develops into the enamel organ for the corresponding permanent tooth. It goes through the same changes of form as has been seen in the temporary teeth.

**Beginning of Calcification.**—About the sixteenth week the tooth germs of all the temporary teeth have been completely enclosed in their follicles and the enamel organ for the corresponding permanent teeth have begun their development (Fig 277). This illustration shows a section through the lower jaw of a pig, and



FIG 274 —The enamel organ, a little older than Fig 273. It shows the outer tunic, the inner tunic, and the stellate reticulum. The dental papilla in the hollow of the cap. The spaces are caused by shrinkage.

exhibits the tooth germs for two incisors at about the stage of the closing of the follicle walls. The buds for the permanent teeth are seen on the lingual, and the formation of enamel and dentin is just beginning in the temporary teeth. Notice the remains of Meckel's cartilage, and the extension of endomembranous bone formation which is just beginning to form a periosteum on its surface. The bone has grown around Meckel's cartilage and around the tooth germs on the buccal and lingual, enclosing them in an open

groove, which will later be completed and divided into separate crypts for each tooth. Fig. 278 is from a similar specimen in the region of a temporary molar. The dental papilla is taking on the form of a crown and the formation of enamel and dentin is ready to begin. The cells on the outer layer of the dental papilla have developed into odontoblasts forming a single layer of columnar



FIG. 255.—The tooth germ from the mandible of a sheep. The enamel organ shows the outer tunic, inner tunic and stellate reticulum. The dental papilla projects into the enamel organ. The follicle is attached to the base of the dental papilla and surrounds the enamel organ. The spicules of bone form the crypt wall.

cells lying in contact with the inner tunic of the enamel organ. Here the formation of enamel and dentin begins, the dentin slightly preceding the enamel. The odontoblasts form and calcify dentin matrix from without inward. The cells of the inner tunic or ameloblasts form and calcify the enamel rods and cementing substance, progressing from within outward. The line upon which the onto-

blasts and ameloblasts lie in contact therefore will become the dento-enamel junction. The formation of dentin and enamel begin at separate points, which are at first very close together, but are

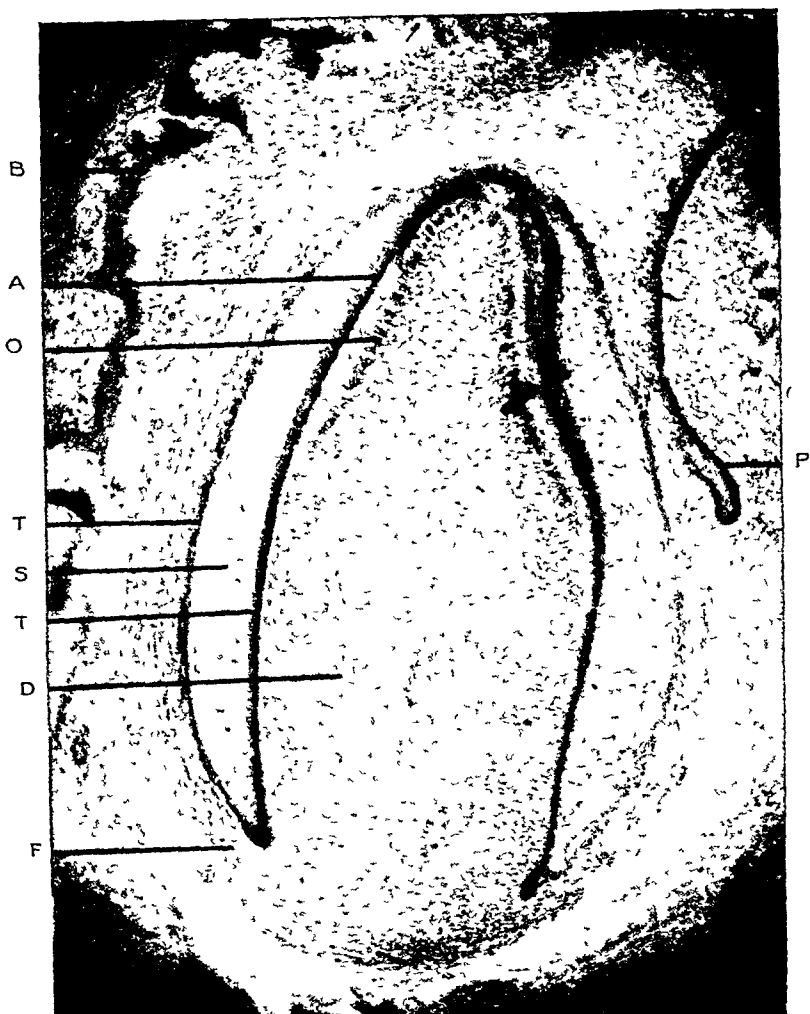


FIG 276.—The tooth germ showing the bud for the permanent tooth at *P*. Calcification is just beginning. *F*, follicle wall, *D*, dental papilla, *T*, inner tunic, *T'*, outer tunic, *S*, stellate reticulum, *O*, odontoblasts, *A*, ameloblasts, *B*, bone

carried farther apart by the growth of the dental papilla, until they have progressed along the dento-enamel junction and unite, when the increase in the diameter of the dental papilla is stopped. This, perhaps, will be better understood by studying Figs. 82 to 87.

**First Permanent Molar.**—The origin and development of the first permanent molar differs from that of all the other permanent

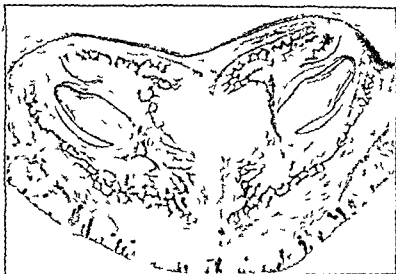


FIG 277—A section through the lower jaw of a embryo pig, showing germs of two incisors



FIG 278—Germ of a premolar from an embryo pig





teeth in important respects. It is the only permanent tooth whose enamel organ springs directly from the dental lamina in the same way as those for the temporary teeth. It is the only permanent tooth whose crown is calcified before the individual is thrown upon its own resources for the obtaining of nourishment. Nature seems to have taken special precautions in the formation of this most important tooth.

About the seventeenth week, at a point on the dental lamina posterior to the enamel organs of the temporary teeth a bud starts to grow down into the mesoderm, which develops into the enamel organ for the first molar, and by the ninth month the follicle is complete and calcification has begun.

**The Origin of the Second and Third Molars**—The enamel organ for the second molar is formed from a bud given off from the outer tunic of the enamel organ of the first molar. The enamel organ for the third molar is formed from a bud given off from the outer tunic of the enamel organ of the second at about the third year.

**Chronology**—The development of the teeth was first investigated by Lagros and Magitot (about 1865). Since that time their work has been repeated and verified by several investigators. About 1880 Dr. Black repeated the entire work of Magitot and some of his illustrations were used by Dr. Dean in his *Translation of Magitot Memoir*. Magitot's table, showing the chronology of tooth development, is given on page 329.

The previous pages are to be considered as a series of definitions, and descriptions of structures and now the student is assumed to have some idea of what is meant when the "dental ridge," or the "dental papilla" is mentioned.

In embryology so many things are going on at the same time and the changes are so rapid that it is difficult, especially from written description to obtain a clear idea of the process. Unfortunately a moving picture of the development of the tooth cannot be made by direct photography as has been done with the growth of plants and the opening of flowers, but it is important to visualize the process as would be done by a moving picture. The present description is intended to connect and relate in a most elementary way some of the most important facts.

**The First Indication of Tooth Development**—The first indication of tooth development is the multiplication of epidermal cells about the maxillary and mandibular arches. This produces a cord or rod of epiblastic cells projecting above the surface of the jaw arch and



at or near the base of the papilla, but rapidly extends upward (incisally) passing outside of the outer tunic inclosing both structures in a fibrous sac. When this formation of fibrous tissue reaches the incisal extremity of the enamel organ and approaches the point from which the cord of epithelial cells extends to the lamina, the cord is broken and the enamel organ is no longer connected with the surface. At this time four important things happen: (1) The beginning of calcification of enamel and dentin, (2) the breaking up of the outer tunic of the enamel organ which begins at the point where the cord was broken, (3) a marked proliferation of epithelial cords and masses arising from the cells which formed the cord, (4) the beginning of the bud to form the enamel organ for the successional tooth.

**The Breaking up of the Outer Tunic**—When the follicle wall closes over the incisal extremity of the enamel organ, there appears on the outer surface of the outer tunic of the enamel organ little rounded projections of epithelial cells, and the layer is broken up. At the same time there is the formation of capillary blood vessels from the follicle wall, which carry the remains of the outer tunic down against the inner tunic to form the stratum intermedium (Fig. 236). There is an intimate relation between capillary blood vessels and the stratum intermedium. Leon Williams considered that the cells of this layer take up materials from the blood and elaborate them to be used by the ameloblasts in the calcification of enamel. Enamel is formed only as far as the stratum intermedium is formed, although the inner tunic of the enamel organ extends apically along the dental papilla toward the end of the root as far as dentin is formed.

**The Breaking up of the Epithelial Cord**—After the closing of the follicle wall the cells which formed the cord multiply and are mixed with fibrous tissue. This is no longer a continuous cord of epithelial cells, but irregular strings and masses of epithelial cells lying in the fibrous tissue. This has been called the cingulum extending from the follicle wall to the surface epithelium.

It often happens that the epithelial masses take on globular form and it is probable that occasionally one of these may develop into an enamel organ and lead to the formation of a supernumerary temporary tooth.

*The bud for the corresponding permanent tooth grows downward (apically) along the lingual side of the germ of the temporary tooth outside of its follicle wall until it comes to a position below and to the*



## CHAPTER XXVII

### THE RELATION OF THE TEETH TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FACE

At birth the jaws contain all of the temporary teeth and the first molars in a partially formed condition, and the follicles for all of the permanent teeth except the second and third molars. These very nearly fill the substance of the bone. In the growth of the bones of the face and the changes that occur in the transformation of the child to the adult face, the teeth play a most important role.

Before considering this subject in detail it is necessary to recall in this connection some things that have already been emphasized.

#### RELATION OF THE TEETH TO THE BONE

In evolution the teeth originally had no connection with the bone, it being formed later for their support. In embryology the tooth is formed first and the bone formed around it. In this way the development of the individual repeats evolution. In the study of the bone it has been emphasized that the connective tissues have been specialized to meet mechanical conditions, and that both ontogenetically and phylogenetically they are formed in response to mechanical stimuli. The mutations of connective tissue have been dwelt upon and especially the fact that a bone as an organ of support always contains fibrous tissue, and that there is a continual oscillation between formation and destruction, by means of which it is perfectly adapted to its mechanical environment. The transformations of bone in bone growth have been pointed out and these will be still more carefully studied in connection with the growth of the bones of the face.

Some years ago the author undertook a study of the structure and growth of the jaws and alveolar process, which resulted in very important modifications of the conceptions of the matter as given by standard texts. Tomes describes the process of development as essentially an addition at the posterior portions of the

jaws to make room for the successively developed permanent molars, and illustrates the process in diagrams (Fig. 273).<sup>3</sup> The following quotation states his view:

"But the main increase in the size of the jaw has been in the direction of backward elongation: in this, as Kölliker first pointed out, the thick articular cartilage plays an important part. The manner in which the jaw is formed might also be described as wasteful; a very large amount of bone is formed which is subsequently, at no distant date, removed again by absorption; or we might compare it to a modelling process, in which thick comparatively

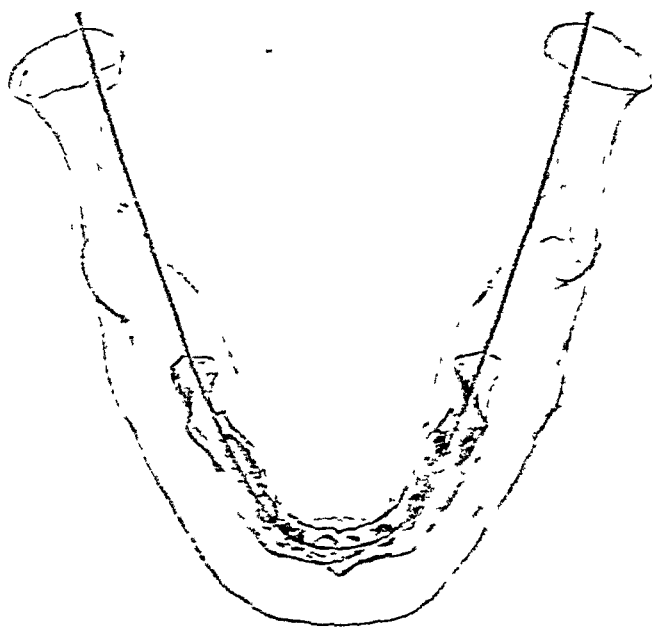


FIG. 273.—Tomes' diagram of development of mandible from infant to adult.

shapeless masses are dubbed on to be trimmed and pared down into form.

To bring it more clearly home to the student's mind, if all the bone ever formed were to remain, the coronoid process would extend from the condyle to the region of the first bicuspid, and all the teeth behind that would be buried in its base; there would be no room beneath the condyle, but the internal oblique line would be a thick bar corresponding in width with the condyle. It is necessary to fully realize that the articular surface with its

<sup>3</sup>Tomes' Dental Anatomy, p. 128.

cartilage has successively occupied every spot along this line and as it progresses backward by the deposition of fresh bone in its cartilage it had been followed up by the process of absorption removing all that was redundant.

In a similar way in any maxilla the temporary dentition is shown to occupy about the same space as the permanent teeth as far as the second bicuspid, and the adult is supposed to be formed from the child by the building on of the bone at the back as the molars are formed.

This conception is fundamentally misleading for if the infant mandible were to be shown in the relation to that of the adult in three dimensions of space it would be found to be above and entirely within the adult mandible, and no part of the bone which constituted the infant jaw is present in the adult. In the upper if the temporary teeth at two years were figured in relation to those of the adult, they would be placed somewhere up in the nasal cavity.

The conditions are more correctly stated by saying that forces exerted at the posterior portions of the jaw through the development of the successive molars cause the bone to grow downward forward and outward in the upper arch upward forward and outward in the lower, carrying the bone into an entirely new position in space.

In this process the periodontal membrane, periosteum and articular cartilage all play their part, but all the bone posterior to the second bicuspid cannot be thought of as having been formed by the articular cartilage and modelled into form by the periosteum as might be inferred from *Tomes'* statement.

**Structure of Maxillæ and Mandible**—Before attempting to follow the growth of the bone in the development of the face the arrangement and distribution of the varieties of bone in the structure of the mandible and maxillæ should be carefully studied.

**Cortical Plate**—The outer surface of these bones is formed of a compact layer composed partly of subperiosteal and partly of Haversian system bone. This varies greatly in thickness depending upon the stress to be sustained. It is called the cortical plate.

**Cancellous Bone**—The center of the bone is cancellous in character and made up of thin plates of lamellæ arranged around large medullary spaces. The direction and arrangement of these plates is determined by the forces received on the cortical plates and the directions of stress to which they are subjected. This was pointed

out some years ago by Walkoff in an elaborate study of the bones by the use of the  $x$ -rays. By this means he showed that the plates of cancellous bone in certain areas had a definite arrangement which was related to the attachments of certain muscles. From the examination of sections of the mandible it will be found that not only is the general form of the bone determined by the forces to which it has been subjected, but also that its minute inner structure is definitely arranged with reference to these forces. The direction and arrangement of the plates of cancellous bone are continually



FIG 280.—The distribution of bone in the alveolar process

changed and rebuilt to readjust them to the support of new conditions (Fig 326).

*Cribriform Plates.*—The alveoli or sockets into which the roots of the teeth fit are bounded by a thin, definite wall, which is pierced by a great many openings. These have been called the cribriform plates, or sieve-like plates. They unite the cortical plates of the bone at the border of the alveolar process, and are fused with it, on their labial and lingual sides. The cribriform plates forming the walls of the alveoli are really made up of a thin layer of sub-



peridental bone, which has been built on to the plates of cancellous bone to attach the fibers of the peridental membrane (Fig 213). Within the substance of the bone and surrounding the course of the inferior dental artery and nerve is found what Cryer has called the cribriform tube. This extends from the point where the arteries and vein enter the substance of the bone on the lingual surface of the ramus posterior to the alveolar process and below the oblique line and extends through the cancellous portion of the body of the bone emerging at the mental foramina. It is really a rather definite arrangement of the plates of cancellous bone around the vessels and the nerves.



FIG 281—Skull of orang-outang

*Alveolar Process*—If the adult alveolar process as seen in the skull is examined it is apparent that the bone is arranged so as to give the greatest support with the least possible bulk, and where there is an increase in bulk it is to meet some special force (Fig 280). The incisors and cuspids are used chiefly to bite off pieces of food and when the food cannot be bitten it is torn and wrenched away. This puts a heavy strain in all directions on the roots of the teeth which must be supported by the bone. For this reason the roots of the incisors are usually well covered with bone through their entire length. The cuspid root is long and the upper portion of it so well supported in the bone at the side of the nose and toward the orbit that the most convex portion of it is sometimes uncovered. In animals that use the incisors largely for tearing, wrenching and fighting, the bone is greatly thickened over the incisal roots, as is shown in the skull of the orang-outang (Fig 281).

In the upper molars the spreading of the three roots gives abundant support against the direct forces of occlusion. The grinding motions bring lateral pressure against the inclined planes of the cusps, which is met by a thickening of the process in its occlusal



FIGS 282 and 283 —Human mandible, showing form of the bone and the positions from which sections were cut

third (Fig 280), forming a heavier ring of bone, while the buccal roots are often exposed in their middle third. In the molars the buccal incline of the lingual cusps of the upper occlude with the lingual incline of the buccal cusps of the lower when the jaws are brought squarely together, and in the grinding motions the outward pressure on the lower molars is supported by the great mass of the

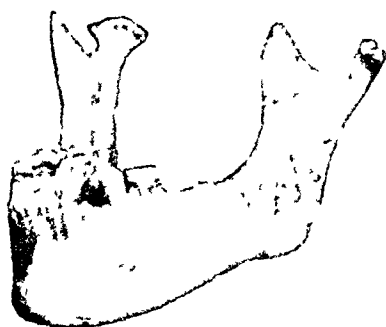


FIG 281 —Human mandible, showing form of the bone and the positions from which sections were cut.

body of the bone, while the inward pressure is supported by a thickening of the occlusal third, as the entire alveolar process projects lingually from the body of the bone. In the examination of any collection of skulls, the amount and arrangement of the

bone of the alveolar process will be found to be an indication of the masticatory habits of the individual

In examining the sections through the bone of the alveolar process the adaptation of the arrangement of bone to the force to be sustained should be constantly kept in mind

**Influence of Mechanical Conditions in Evolution**—Professor E D Cope<sup>1</sup> in a long treatise on 'The Mechanical Causes of the Develop-



Fig. 282. Section through the mandible of a bat, showing the position of the first bicuspid and molar on the left side.

ment of the Hard Parts in Mammals' has elaborated the fact that the bones of the skeletons of all mammals have been influenced in their development by mechanical conditions, and that their present forms are adaptations to physical environment. In this he states as a general principle of structure, that the bone is most dense, but least in amount, on the side in the direction toward which forces have been exerted in development, and less dense but greater in amount, on the sides from which the forces have been exerted. These statements should be applied in the study of all the sections shown.

An old dry mandible was sawed through in the positions indicated in the illustration (Figs 282, 283, and 284).

The portion containing the bicuspid and molar on the left side was ground through the molar to obtain a section parallel with the axis of the tooth. The portion between the alveolus of the cuspid and second bicuspid on the left side was ground vertically through the area where the first bicuspid had been (Fig. 285). The portion on the right

side containing the two bicuspids and molar was ground to give three sections at right angles to the roots—one in the gingival third, one about the middle of the root, and one just at their apices (Fig. 286). The distal portions of the bone were decalcified and sections cut through the alveoli of the second and third molars (Figs. 287 and 288).

**The Distribution of Bone in the Mandible.**—In Chapter XVII, on Bone, it was stated that the arrangement of the layers in the tissue could be read as a record of the manner of formation. In the examination of these sections the arrangement of the lamellæ is to be

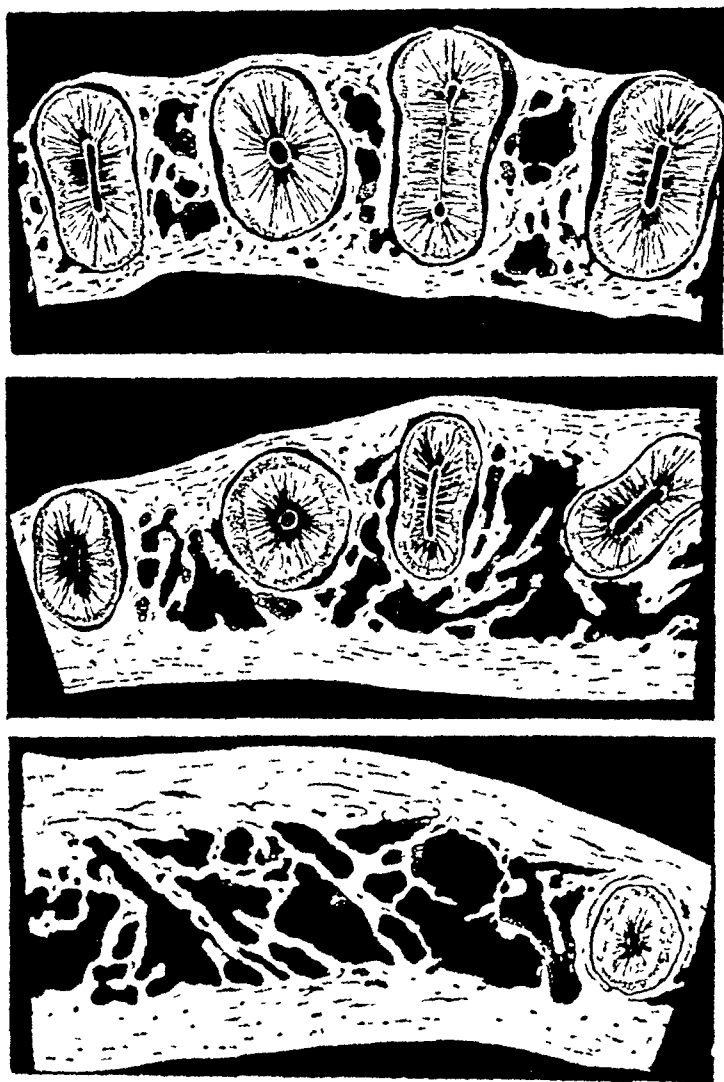


FIG. 286.—Transverse sections through the roots of two bicuspids and the first molar, showing distribution of bone.

studied in this way, as well as the distribution of the varieties of bone. Where the bicuspid had been extracted the alveolus has been filled with fairly compact bone, rounding over the border of the process. The section ground through this position shows the

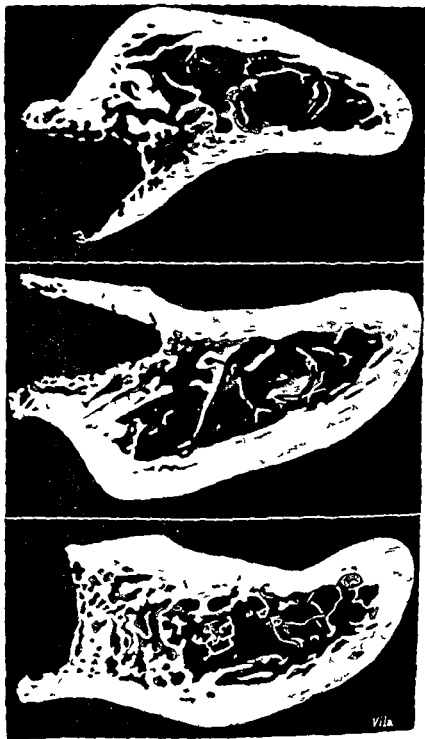


FIG. 28 —Decalcified sections through the molar region



FIG. 288.—Decalcified sections through the alveoli of the second and third molars

buccal and lingual cortical plates in U shape. The two plates are braced together across the central portion by spicules of cancellous bone. At the occlusal border the outline of the old alveolus can still be seen by studying the section carefully with the microscope. After the extraction of the tooth the socket was first filled with connective tissue which was later transformed into bone joining

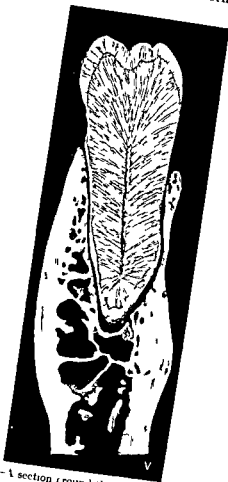


Fig. 289 — A section ground through the first molar

that of the alveolar wall. Near the lower border the subperiosteal bone is found to be very thick, the bone evidently growing in that direction. Near the occlusal border on the lingual side there have evidently been absorptions of the surface removing the Haversian system bone and then a few layers of subperiosteal bone have been reformed on the surface.

Fig 289 shows a section ground through the molar. The cribriform plates lining the alveoli join the cortical plates at the border of the process. On the lingual side the wall of the process is very



FIG 290 —The buccal plate from Fig 286



FIG 291 —The lingual plate from Fig. 286.

thin, but is thickened in the occlusal third to support the tooth against force exerted lingually. On the buccal side the cribriform plate of the alveolar wall is connected with the cortical plate by



spicules of cancellous bone. Below the apex of the root the cortical plates are connected by cancellous bone in which the medullary spaces are much larger. The same arrangement of the cortical plate and its bracing is shown in Fig 287 which cuts between the alveoli of the second and third molar. Fig 327 and Plate XX should be studied in this connection remembering that the bone has been formed and shaped by formation of subperiosteal bone on its surface and subperidental bone at the border of the process and their transformation into Haversian system and cancellous bone.

Fig 286 is cut transversely. Notice that the gingival section has been turned over in mounting. Observe the cribriform plates forming the walls of the alveoli, and the way these are braced against each other and the cortical plates by bands of cancellous



FIG 290 —The bone between the alveoli of the mesial and distal roots of the first molar from Fig 286

bone. In accordance with the principles noted, the buccal plate is thin and very compact while the lingual plate is much thicker, but more open in structure and the direction of growth has been toward the buccal as the arch of the jaw increased in size. Fig 290 shows the buccal plate with higher magnifications. Fig 291 the lingual plate and Fig 292 the bone separating the alveoli from the mesial and distal roots of the molar. The third figure of this series shows only the tip of the distal root of the molar, but the arrangement of plates of cancellous bone between the cortical plates is nicely shown.

**The Maxilla** —In the maxilla the arrangement is exactly on the same plan the details being different because of the difference in the shape of the bone.

## THE GROWTH OF THE JAWS.

It has long been noted that at birth the mandible is straight, and with the eruption of the teeth the ramus develops and the body increases in size. In this process the thickness of the bone is increased from the mental foramina to the alveolar border, and the body of the bone approaches a right angle with the ramus. When the teeth are lost or lose their function the alveolar process is destroyed and the bone reduced in thickness from above downward until the mental foramen comes to lie on the upper surface of the bone. The mandible performs two functions, a respiratory and a masticatory function, and it should be remembered that these are influential in its development. The object of this section is to give some conception of the direction of growth in the devel-



FIG 293 —Skull at birth

opment of the bones of the face and the way in which the changes are brought about

This can best be done by studying the series of skulls from childhood to old age, in which the outer cortical plate has been removed so as to show the developing teeth in their crypts and the relation of the forming teeth to those already in occlusion (Figs 293 to 307). At birth all of the teeth except the second and third molars have begun to develop, and their tooth germs are lying embedded in the cancellous substance of the maxillæ. In the upper jaw they occupy almost all of the space to the floor of the nose and orbit, and there is little if any indication of the maxillary sinus (Fig. 293).

Each tooth germ is enclosed in a separate crypt, the wall of which is formed by a cribriform plate. The walls of the crypts are braced



FIG. 294 —Maxillæ at about eight months after birth showing the unerupted tooth

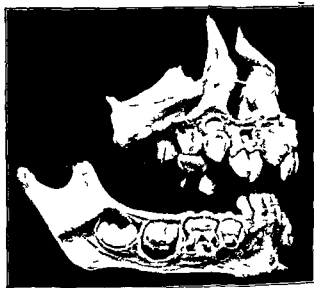


FIG. 295 —Maxillæ at about one year

against each other and the cortical plates of the maxillæ by spicules of cancellous bone surrounding medullary spaces. As the tooth

develops within its crypt, pressure is exerted and the crypt wall is pushed backward through the cancellous bone

**Growth Force**—The force exerted by the growing tooth is the result of the multiplication of cells in the tooth germ, and is exactly comparable to the forces exerted by multiplication of cells in any position. For instance, the force exerted by the multiplication of the cells in a rootlet of a plant is sufficient to force pebbles aside and make an opening through hard packed earth. Some attempts have been made to measure the amount of force, but we can only say that it appears to be considerable, acting through short range

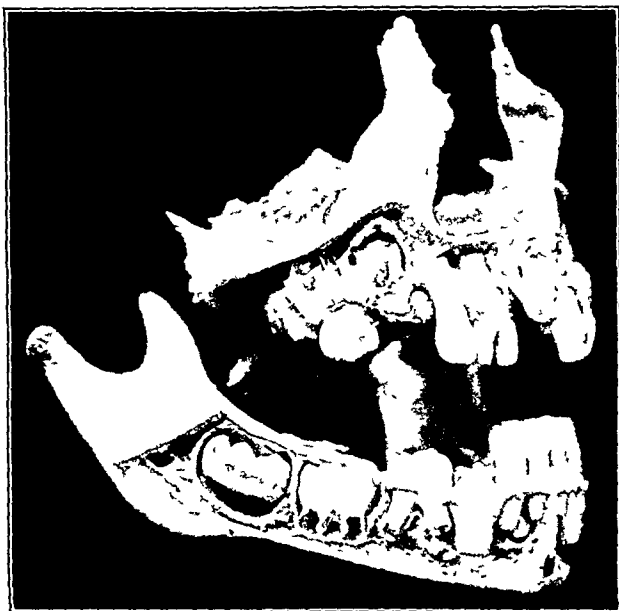


FIG 296 —Maxillæ at one and one-half years.

How this force is generated has been a matter of much speculation and investigation. It shows some points of similarity with the swelling of wood fibers when water is added. It apparently is related to osmosis, and has some direct relations to blood-pressure. It is certainly a very complicated matter, with chemical affinities at the bottom of it.

**Forces Influencing Bone Growth.**—While the growing tooth germs are producing force which causes conditions of stress of the cortical plates, the growth of the tissues within the mouth—the tongue and the associated organs—is exerting pressure upon the lingual

ness to think of bones as solid and unchanging. In the study of these skulls the bones of the face must be viewed not as solid and rigid, but as containing millions of active cells which are continually building and rebuilding their substance.

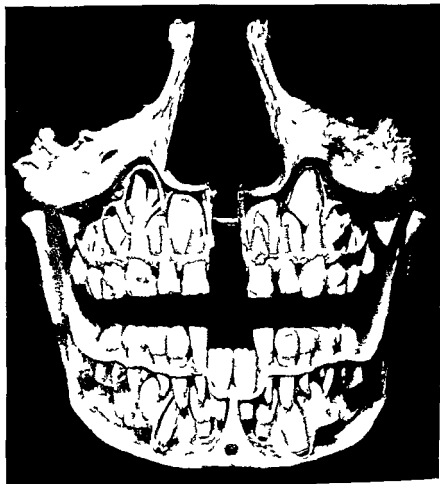


FIG. 300.—Front view of the skull shown in Fig. 299. Note the relation of the permanent incisors and cuspids to each other and the roots of the temporary teeth.

Usually somewhere between the seventh and ninth months after birth the growth of the central incisors causes the absorption of the roof of their crypts and the tooth moves occlusally, cutting through the soft tissues (Fig. 294). The formation of cementum on the surface of the root and of bone on the wall of the crypt attach the connective tissue fibers and form the beginning of the

peridental membrane. As the tooth moves occlusally the bone grows up around it from the circumference of the crypt wall, converting it into the wall of the alveolus. The root is not fully formed and the conical pulp filling the funnel-like end exerts force by the

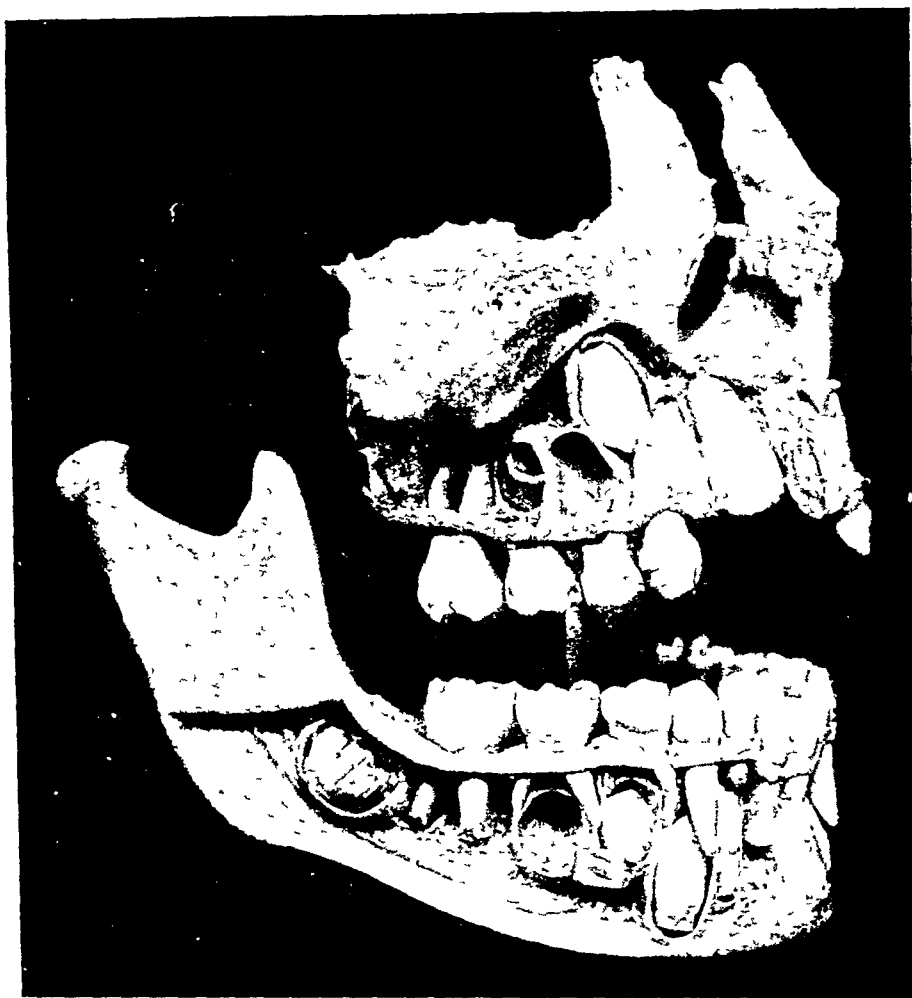


FIG 301 —Dentition in the eighth year. Note the position of the cuspids and compare with Fig 303

multiplication of cells and the blood-pressure, which cause the tooth to move occlusally and the bone to grow in that direction. At the same time the pressure of tongue and lips exerts pressure on the surfaces of the tooth and bone, influencing the direction of bone growth. The jaw increases in thickness in the occlusal direc-

tion and grows forward and outward. At the same time the growth of each successively distal tooth is exerting pressure upon those already erupted, causing them to move farther in the occlusal direction. In Figs. 296 and 297 notice the way in which the crypt walls are pushed downward by the development of the tooth root.



FIG. 302 —The left side of the skull shown in Fig. 301.

until the inferior dental nerve lies between the floor of the crypt and the cortical plate of the lower border. In this way enough pressure may be produced to cause reflex nervous symptoms which commonly precede the eruption of the temporary molars and so development continues until all of the temporary teeth are in

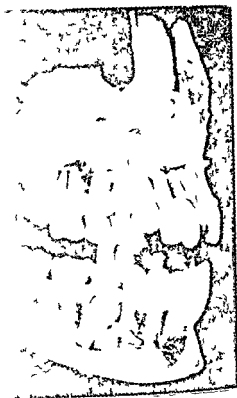
place. About the sixth year the first permanent molars take their place at the distal of the temporary teeth and their cusps interlock (Fig. 299). The importance of these teeth can scarcely be overstated. They are not only to be the chief means of mastication



FIG. 303 —Dentition in the eleventh year. Note the growth of the cuspids and bicuspids. The second molar is about to erupt.

during the period in which the temporary teeth are lost and replaced by their successors, but they are to maintain the relation of the jaws to each other. The way in which these teeth lock determines the balance between the forces exerted by the action of the muscles





quently exert pressure upon the mesial surfaces of the laterals, pushing them apart and carrying them upward and forward.

Study the relation of the lower centrals, laterals, and cuspids in the development of the arches at from six to ten years. Notice that the roots of the central are not fully formed, that the lateral

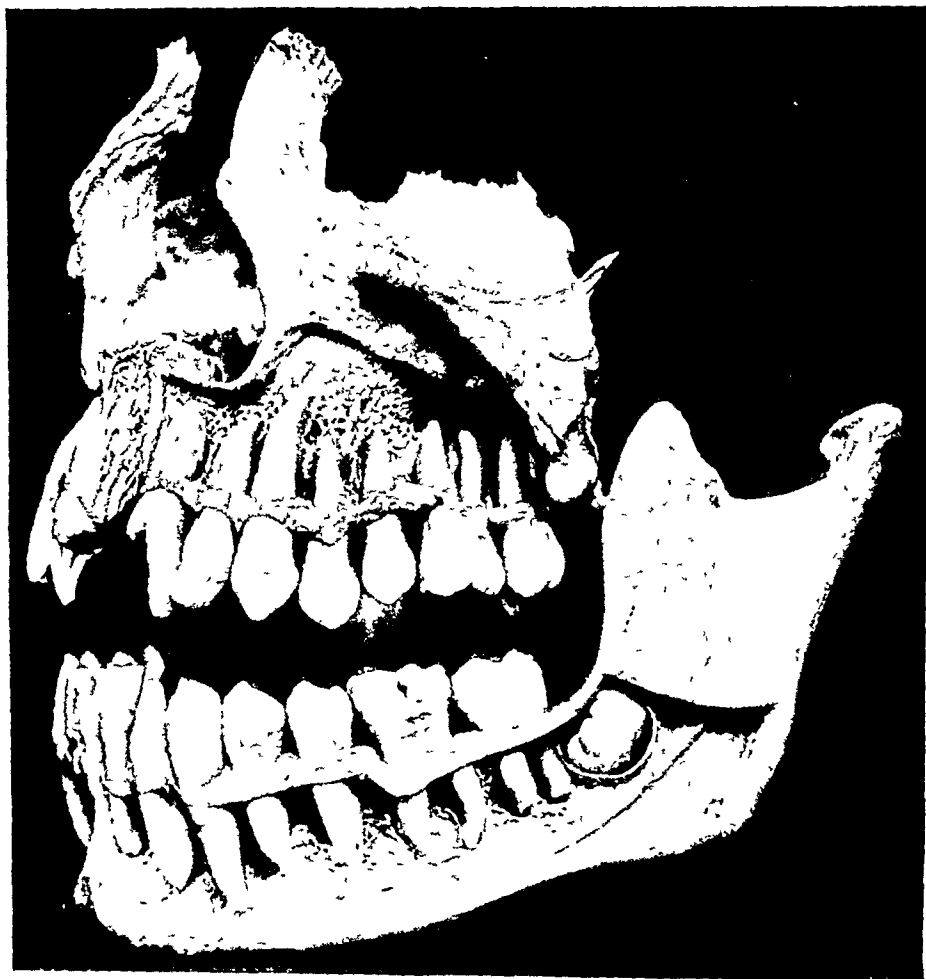


FIG 305 —The dentition of a young adult. The third molars have not erupted (About fifteen years)

lies to the lingual of the temporary lateral root, and with its mesio-occlusal angle below the distal surface of the central. The development of the cuspid has pushed the crypt floor through the cancellous bone until it has reached the solid cortical plate, and still the formation of the crown is not quite completed. The six teeth form a

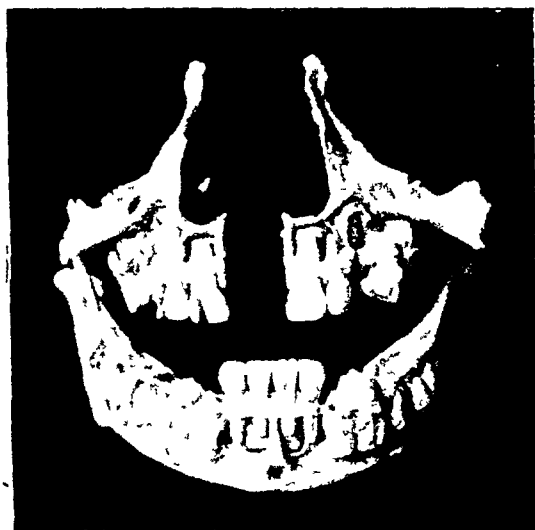


FIG 306 —Adult dentition    Note the distance from the apices of the incisors to the lower border of the mandible and the floor of the nose



FIG 307 —Edentulous jaws showing loss of alveolar process.

triangle of which the centrals are the apex, and the cortical plates from cuspid to cuspid the base. The completion of the roots of



FIGS 308 and 309 were photographed in the same relative size, to show the amount and direction of growth, with the development of the full permanent dentition

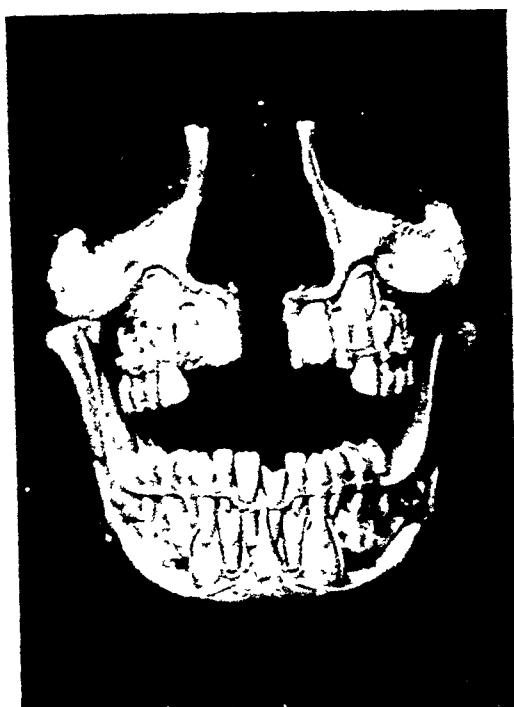
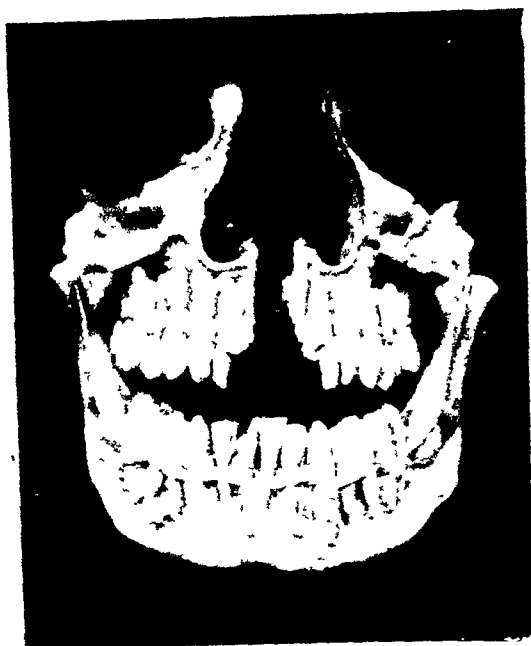
these teeth will carry the temporary teeth, alveolar process and all, upward, forward, and outward, thus increasing the distance

from the mental foramen to the symphysis and enlarging the arc of the jaw from cuspid to cuspid

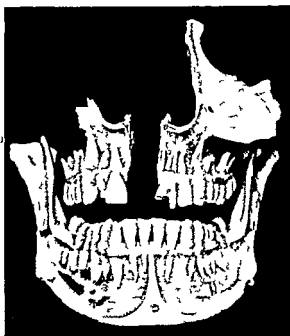
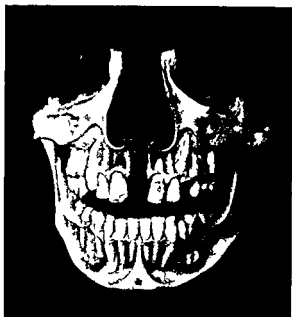


FIGS 310 and 311 were photographed in the same relative size to show the amount and direction of growth with the development of the full permanent dentition

In the same skull notice the relation of the upper incisors and cuspids to the corresponding temporary teeth. They lie to the lingual of the roots of the temporary teeth, the lateral a little to



FIGS 312 and 313 were photographed in the same relative size, to show the amount and direction of growth, with the development of the full permanent dentition.



FIGS. 314 and 315 were photographed in the same relative size to show the amount and direction of growth with the development of the full permanent dentition

the lingual of the central and cuspid. The cuspid has pushed back the floor of its crypt until it is braced against the solid bone at the base of the malar process. The growth of these teeth will first cause the temporary teeth to move occlusally, the bone growing from the border of the process to follow them. In this growth the distance from cuspid to cuspid is increased and spaces appear between the temporary incisors some time before they are lost.

If such spaces do not appear, the development is not progressing normally, and artificial force should be applied to stimulate bone growth. If this is not done the permanent teeth are sure to come in more or less rotated and out of position.

In Figs 301 and 302 the incisors have been pushed off and the permanent ones are beginning to move occlusally. Notice the relation of the floor of the crypt to the floor of the nose, and the root has scarcely begun to develop. In the adult skull (Fig 306) there is almost as much space from the apex of the root to the floor of the nose as there is now from the border of the alveolar process to the floor of the nose. The result of the growth of the cuspids' roots is shown by comparing Figs 300 and 301 with Fig 303.

**The Importance of Proximal Contact.**—The proper contact of the teeth upon their proximal surfaces is necessary for this development. If, for instance, the mesial angle of the lower lateral fails to engage with the distal surface of the central, but slips by to the lingual, the growth of the cuspid will push it farther and farther past the central instead of enlarging the arch. One of the cogs in the mechanism has slipped, and the growth of bone cannot later be expected to make room for the crowded teeth.

In the next stage of growth the increase in size is from the mental foramen to the ramus, and is largely influenced by the development of the roots of the bicuspid and the second molars. Figs. 302 and 303 show the relation of the second molar to the distal surface of the first, and it will be seen that its growth exerts force upon the first molar, and this is transmitted through the arch by means of proximal contact. Notice the inclination of the bicuspids' roots, which help to carry the growth in the same direction.

After the second molar is in place the growth of the third should exert the same force and room be provided for it (Fig. 304). The muscular action of the lips and tongue are specially important in these last stages of growth, and particularly the forces that are generated by the action of the muscles in respiration and deglutition. The activity of the connective-tissue cells in the bone requires



mechanical stimuli for their maintenance, and as the muscular action is vigorous or deficient the growth of bone will be full and normal or imperfect and unbalanced. It appears often that the bone activity becomes so sluggish that the growth of the third molar cannot produce the effect it should, and it remains impacted. A comparison of figures will show that while room has been made for the third molar, all of the upper teeth have moved downward, forward and outward and the lower ones upward, forward and outward. Compare the distance from the apex of the incisor



FIG. 316—Two years



FIG. 317—Three years



FIG. 318—Six years



FIG. 319—Ten years

Maxillæ photographed from the median line in the same relative size to show the amount and direction of growth



FIG 320.—Twelve years



FIG 321.—Adult.

Maxillæ photographed from the median line in the same relative size, to show the amount and direction of growth.



FIG 322 —Bone from the buccal plate of the mandible of a young sheep, showing transformations of bone 1, subperiosteal bone, 2, Haversian system bone, 3, Haversian system bone becoming cancellous



with the same lens and bellows length, so as to make the pictures of the same relative size as the skulls. Notice the increase in distance from the floor of the nose and the floor of the orbit to the edges of the upper incisors, and from the lower border of the mandible to the edge of the lower incisors. It will be seen that if the infant mandible were placed in relation to the adult mandible it would lie entirely within the arch and in the mouth cavity, while



FIG 324 —A decalcified section from the lingual vertical plate of a human mandible, showing the arrangement of lamellæ as a record of growth.

in the upper the temporary incisors in Fig 315 would be some place in the nasal cavity. In all of this growth the size of the air spaces increases with the movements of the teeth, the floor of the nose and palate growing downward and developing. This may be shown in Figs. 316 to 321, in which the right half of the maxilla has been removed from dissected skulls and photographed from the median line.

**Tissue Changes in the Physiologic Movements of the Teeth**—All that has been said in regard to bone growth must be recalled in



FIG 325 —Cancellous bone from a decalcified section of a human mandible showing reconstructions to change the direction of the spicules

order to obtain a conception of the manner in which these movements of the teeth and the development of the bone are accomplished. Bone laid down under the periosteum and the periodental

membrane has been transformed into Haversian system bone and then made cancellous, as illustrated in Fig 322, which is taken



FIG 326 —Decalcified section of cancellous bone from a human mandible, showing absorptions and rebuildings, changing the direction of the spicules

from the buccal plate of the mandible of a young sheep. Reversed changes have also been going on, the periosteum cutting into the

Haversian bone by absorption and the cancellous bone being condensed into Haversian system bone. These changes leave a record in the arrangement of the lamellae, and may be studied in decalcified sections (Figs. 323 to 326). Even the direction of the spicules of



FIG. 3. — A longitudinal section through the tip of the alveolar process of a temporary tooth about ready to be lost. *D*, dentin; *Cm*, cementum showing absorption and rebuilding; *Pd*, periodontal membrane; *B*, bone growing occlusally at the border of the process; *Hb*, rebuilt Haversian system bone.

cancellous bone are being constantly changed by absorptions and rebuilding to adjust them to changes of stress.

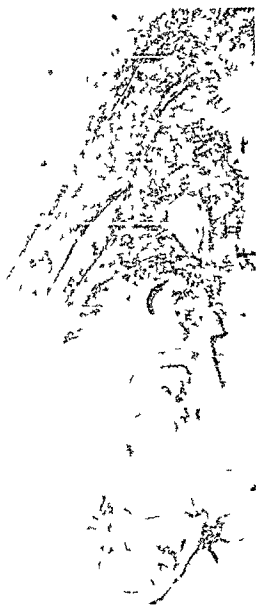
While the temporary teeth are moving occlusally, bone is laid down under the periodontal membrane at the border of the alveolar process which is at once cut out by absorptions and replaced by

Haversian system bone (Fig. 213). The alveolar process becomes a veritable patchwork, as shown in Figs 327 and 328. The



FIG 328—A longitudinal section through the temporary alveolar process, which is growing occlusally to follow the temporary tooth. It is from the same series as Fig 327, but shows more of the bone. Study the absorptions and rebuildings, as shown in the arrangement and character of the lamellæ. Pd, peridental membrane, Po, periosteum.





cutting away the spicules of bone, thinning and cutting apart the crypt wall, and allowing it to be bent and pushed back.

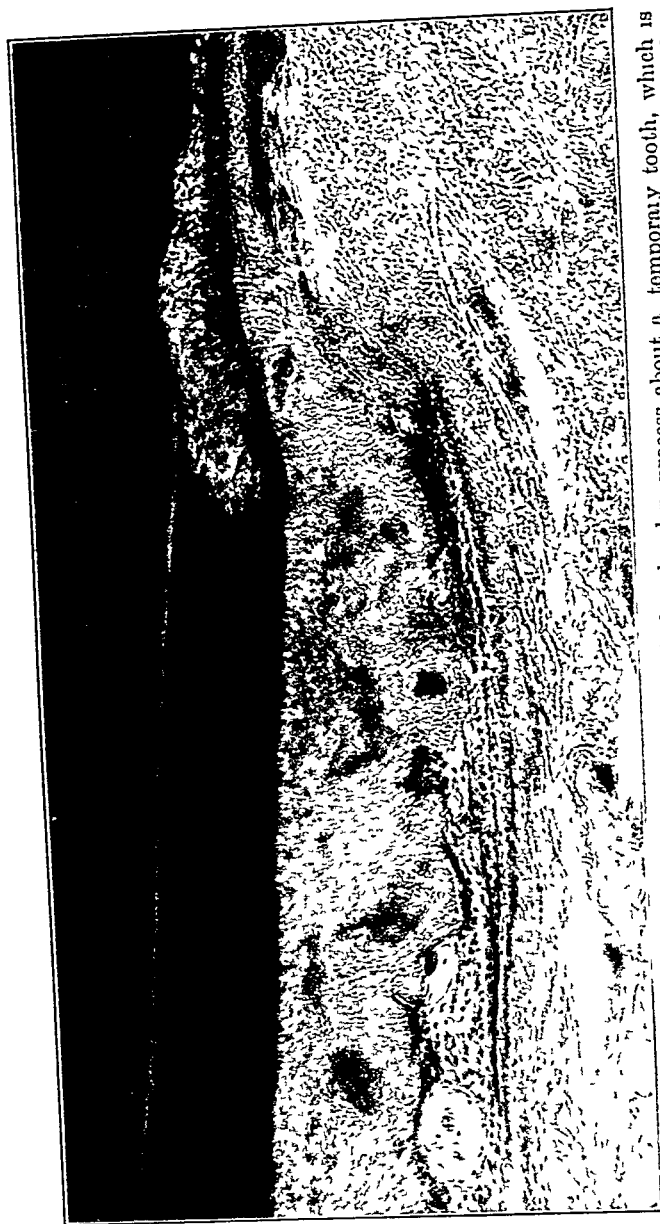


FIG. 330 —A section through the labial plate of the alveolar process about a temporary tooth, which is moving upward, forward and outward, under the influence of the developing permanent teeth. Note that bone formation is going on on the whole of the labial surface under the periosteum, and that both formation and destruction are going on on the periodontal membrane side, but that destruction is in excess.

Fig. 329 shows the alveolar process on the lingual side of the temporary incisor, and illustrates the enlargement of the medullary spaces preparatory to the eruption of the permanent tooth. Fig.



## PART II.

### DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK.

(TWENTY-FIVE PERIODS IN THE LABORATORY)

---

#### PRELIMINARY.

It is assumed in this work that the student has had a course in general histology, including laboratory work, that he is familiar with the technique of handling the microscope, the technique of staining and mounting sections, and that he is able to recognize at once the elementary tissues. The same outfit is required as for general histology, including slides and blank labels for them; cover-glasses, teasing needles, forceps, section lifter, a tube of balsam; a funnel, pipette, filter paper and lens paper; 6 one-ounce reagent bottles containing xylol, absolute, 95, and 70 per cent. alcohols, hematoxylin, and eosin; at least two chip butter dishes that can be used for staining, a box for the slides, a note-book; a hard and a soft drawing pencil; a good eraser; and a piece of clean soft linen for wiping slides and cover-glasses.

**Teeth for Grinding.**—It is difficult to obtain satisfactory teeth for the grinding of microscopic sections, and the student should bring to the laboratory a number of suitable teeth from which selection can be made. Old, dry teeth are absolutely useless for the purpose, however perfect their structure may have been. When a tooth has been extracted for some time the tissues dry out, giving up a considerable amount of water, and consequently shrink. The shrinkage of dentin and enamel is unequal, and the result is a cracking of the tissue. The observation of the teeth in any skull will reveal cracks in the enamel that may be seen with the naked eye, the tooth often splitting lengthwise. Besides the cracks that can be seen, the tissue is full of microscopic cracks. When the grinding of sections from such teeth is attempted, before the section is reduced to sufficient thinness for microscopic observation

the enamel will break to pieces and be lost. A tooth that is to be used for grinding must be placed in solution as soon as it is extracted, *and never at any stage of the process be allowed to dry*, until ready for mounting. Any solution that will prevent decomposition will do for this purpose. The best that I have found is a 4 per cent formaldehyde in 50 per cent alcohol. This may be roughly prepared by diluting 95 per cent alcohol with an equal volume of water and adding one part of formalin to nine parts of the diluted alcohol.

Alcohol	45 c c
Water	45 c c
Formalin	9 c c

This solution not only prevents the drying, but has a hardening action on the organic matter, which facilitates the grinding. Teeth may be preserved in this indefinitely.

**Teeth Required** — From his collection the student should select for grinding an incisor or cuspid, a bicuspid, and a molar. The teeth should be free from caries and their crowns as perfect as possible.

**The Relation of the Section to the Crown** — The practical value of the study of ground sections depends upon obtaining from them a knowledge of enamel rod directions in relation to the tooth crown as well as the section. In operating the teeth are looked at from their outside surface, but the operator needs to see in the enamel not simply a hard and extremely dense tissue, but a tissue made up of minute rods whose general direction he knows beforehand. If a tooth is selected and a section cut from it in a known position, and the relation of the section to the crown remembered, the direction of enamel rods can be placed in relation to the entire crown as well as to the section. This is one of the objects to be sought in the making of the outline drawings.

**Location of the Section** — Having selected the teeth for grinding, the next step is to locate the position and direction of the section. This must be so placed as to cut the enamel rods in their length. The section from the incisor or cuspid should be ground labiolingually, but the section from the molar and bicuspid may be ground either buccolingually, mesiodistally, or diagonally. The surface of the tooth should be considered and the section placed in an area in which the student desires to discover the enamel-rod directions and the structure of the tissue. The line of the section should now be marked on the tooth with India ink and a fine pen.

**The Drawings of the Teeth.**—After marking the position of the section the tooth should be carefully and accurately drawn, showing the position of the section as seen from the axial and occlusal surfaces

**Grinding of the Section.**—Every institution should have a machine for the preparation of ground sections, but such a machine is too delicate an instrument to be handled by students. In the appendix will be found a chapter written by Dr Black describing the grinding machine and the technique of its use. If one is available, the student may have his sections ground for him and returned ready to mount, or he may grind them himself, using the following technique:

**Preparation of Ground Sections of the Teeth.**—For this work the student should have two large corundum stones not less than four inches in diameter, one of "C" and one of "E" grit. Corundum is very much better than carborundum for this purpose. In grinding the stone should be kept revolving slowly and moistened with a stream of water. Holding the tooth against the flat side of the coarse stone with the fingers, the tissues should be rapidly ground away until the position marked for the section is reached, when the fine stone should be substituted and the grinding continued just enough to remove the scratches. The surface should now be polished on the Arkansas stone until a very perfect surface has been obtained. Wash the specimen clean and immerse in several changes of 95 per cent alcohol, and leave in absolute alcohol in a closed bottle for several hours or over night. Harden a drop of balsam on the center of a clean slide by warming it over a Bunsen burner to evaporate the xylol. When the slide is cool the balsam should be neither sticky nor brittle. Now remove the tooth from the alcohol, wipe it dry, and, placing it on the balsam with the polished surface next to the glass, gently warm the slide until the balsam is thoroughly softened, and press the tooth down against the glass and clamp it firmly in position, using a spring clip. Set it away to harden thoroughly, when the grinding may be continued.

Holding the slide parallel with the surface of the coarse stone, the tissues may be rapidly removed until the section is about as thin as a calling card, when the fine stone should be substituted and the section reduced to the required thinness. It should not be more than twenty microns in thickness. In the final stages progress of the grinding may be followed with a hand magnifying glass. Finally the surface should be polished on an Arkansas stone. The specimen should now be washed with alcohol, the balsam removed



principles of art can in a very short time acquire the ability to make excellent microscopic drawings. A few principles of procedure will help greatly. The first of all is that a light line can always be made darker, therefore the drawing should always be kept light until the later stages.

After selecting a field, draw lightly the outline of the principal masses and then the outlines of the smaller ones. In this way the proportion of objects in the field and their relation to each other can be maintained. Never draw any detail such as individual cells, nuclei, etc., until all of the outlines are completed. Then work in the details in the darker colored areas. The making of the outlines is by far the most important stage in the drawings.

Each outfit should contain a 6 H and an H-B pencil and a good eraser, which must be kept clean. The pencils should be kept sharp and always used with a light touch upon the paper. The beginner always tends to start his drawing by making a circle. This should be avoided, for it is objects that are being studied, not fields, and in many cases the object cannot be bounded by a circle. There is also a tendency to represent the object smaller on the paper than it appears in the field.

The prime qualities in a microscopic drawing are *accuracy* and *correctness of detail*. The drawings are made to show all the detail of structure that can be observed. It often happens that a drawing that looks very well shows very little knowledge of the structure of the tissue which it represents.

**Stencilled Laboratory Notes.**—In fifteen years of teaching the author has found stencilled notes on the daily work in the laboratory of very great assistance. There are always variations in the appearance of the material which cannot be anticipated before the sections are cut. Very often something will be seen unusually well that would not be mentioned in the text-book. Different stains may have been used which would change the appearance of the tissues, and for all of these things and many others daily notes are very convenient.

## USE OF DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK.

At the beginning of the laboratory period the first thing to be done is to read *through the directions for the day's work*. The amount of work for the day is then clearly in mind, and all the steps in any



## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

procedure that is to be undertaken are understood at the beginning. It is necessary to divide the time available, so as to accomplish the work indicated for the day.

## PERIOD I

**Drawings of Tooth Surfaces Showing the Position of Sections—** The object of these drawings is to show the relation of the section to the crown from which it is ground, so that in studying the enamel rod directions as seen in the sections, they may be referred to the entire crown. The drawings should be made from five to ten times natural size and must be made accurately to scale (Fig 332).

Measure the length and the breadth of the tooth and lay out a rectangle say eight times these dimensions, to serve as a guide in drawing. If the tooth is marked for a buccolingual section, stick the apex of the root on a bit of wax and place the tooth on the table with the buccal surface toward you. Do not change its position until the drawing is completed for to do so would change lights and shadows. After getting the outline accurately, work in the shadows so as to give the drawing roundness. Remember in doing this that you can always make it darker but you cannot erase without injuring the neatness of the drawing. When the drawings are completed the section is ready for grinding which must be done outside of the laboratory, following the directions in Introduction to Part II.

## PERIOD II

**Etching and Mounting of Ground Sections—**At the desk will be found 1 per cent hydrochloric acid dilute ammonia and vaseline, which are the only reagents not included in the outfit and required for this work. The sections are brought to the laboratory ground and ready to mount. Fill one of the dishes with water and carefully wash the specimen free from all debris of grinding. Dry the section between filter papers so as to remove all moisture from the surface. Fill one dish with 1 per cent hydrochloric acid and the other with dilute ammonia. Put a very little vaseline upon the tip of the finger and holding the section by the root portion cover one surface of the crown portion with a very thin layer of it. In doing this the vaseline should be wiped from the center toward the edges of the section, so as to prevent it from running over on

to the other surface. The vaseline is to confine the action of the acid to one surface of the enamel. Holding the section by the root portion, immerse the crown in the dilute acid for thirty seconds,

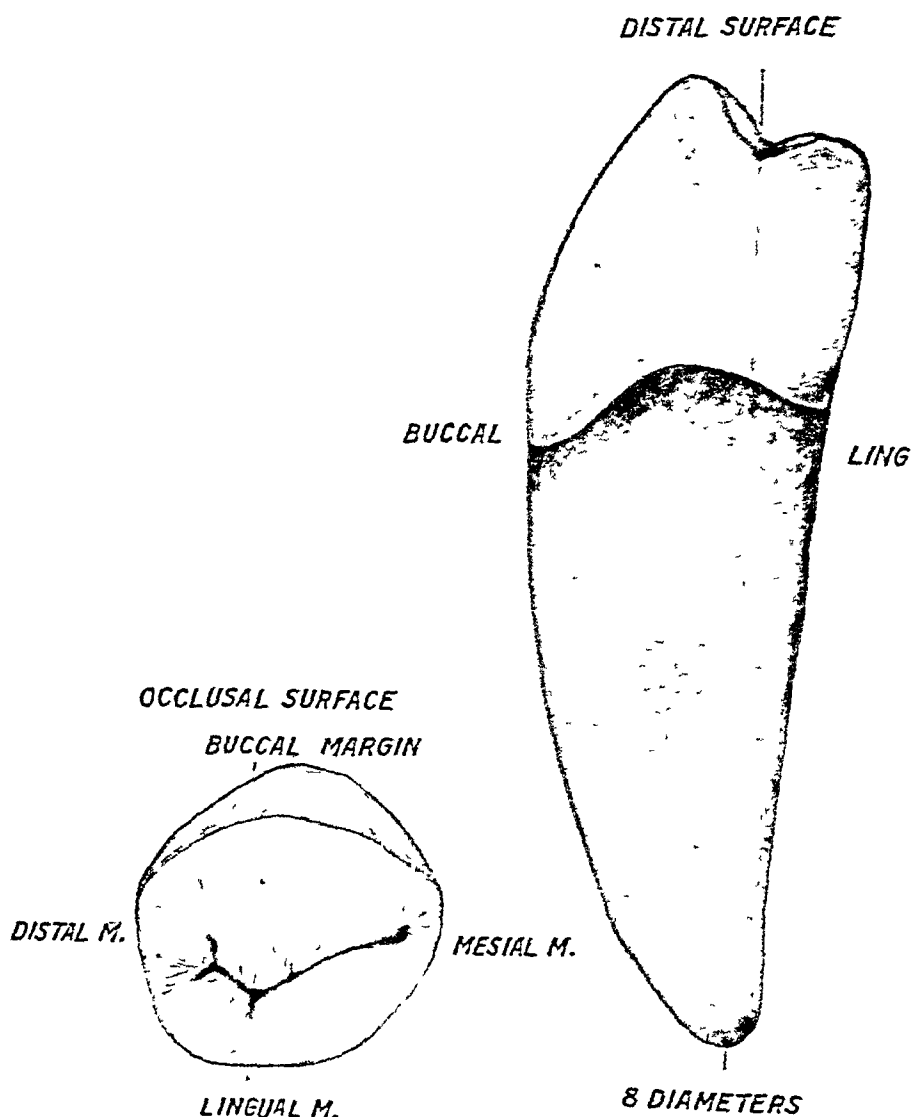


FIG. 332.—Drawing of occlusal and axial surfaces of a tooth to show the relation of the section to the tooth. (Drawn by W. A. Offil, 1910.)

or until minute bubbles can be seen forming upon the surface. Remove and immerse at once in the dilute ammonia for a minute. Remove the vaseline by carefully wiping the section with absolute alcohol or ether, and immerse in 95 per cent. alcohol. In this it

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

procedure that is to be undertaken are understood at the beginning. It is necessary to divide the time available so as to accomplish the work indicated for the day.

## PERIOD I

### Drawings of Tooth Surfaces Showing the Position of Sections—

The object of these drawings is to show the relation of the section to the crown from which it is ground so that in studying the enamel rod directions as seen in the sections, they may be referred to the entire crown. The drawings should be made from five to ten times natural size and must be made accurately to scale (Fig 332). Measure the length and the breadth of the tooth and lay out a rectangle say eight times these dimensions to serve as a guide in drawing. If the tooth is marked for a buccolingual section stick the apex of the root on a bit of wax and place the tooth on the table with the buccal surface toward you. *Do not change its position until the drawing is completed*, for to do so would change lights and shadows. After getting the outline accurately, work in the shadow so as to give the drawing roundness. Remember in doing this that you can always make it darker but you cannot erase without injuring the neatness of the drawing. When the drawings are completed the section is ready for grinding which must be done outside of the laboratory, following the directions in Introduction to Part II.

## PERIOD II

### Etching and Mounting of Ground Sections—

At the desk will be found 1 per cent hydrochloric acid, dilute ammonia and vaseline, which are the only reagents not included in the outfit and required for this work. The sections are brought to the laboratory ground and ready to mount. Fill one of the dishes with water and carefully wash the specimen free from all debris of grinding. Dry the section between filter papers so as to remove all moisture from the surface. Fill one dish with 1 per cent hydrochloric acid and the other with dilute ammonia. Put a very little vaseline upon the tip of the finger and holding the section by the root portion cover one surface of the crown portion with a very thin layer of it. In doing this the vaseline should be wiped from the center toward the edges of the section, so as to prevent it from running over on

to the other surface. The vaseline is to confine the action of the acid to one surface of the enamel. Holding the section by the root portion, immerse the crown in the dilute acid for thirty seconds,

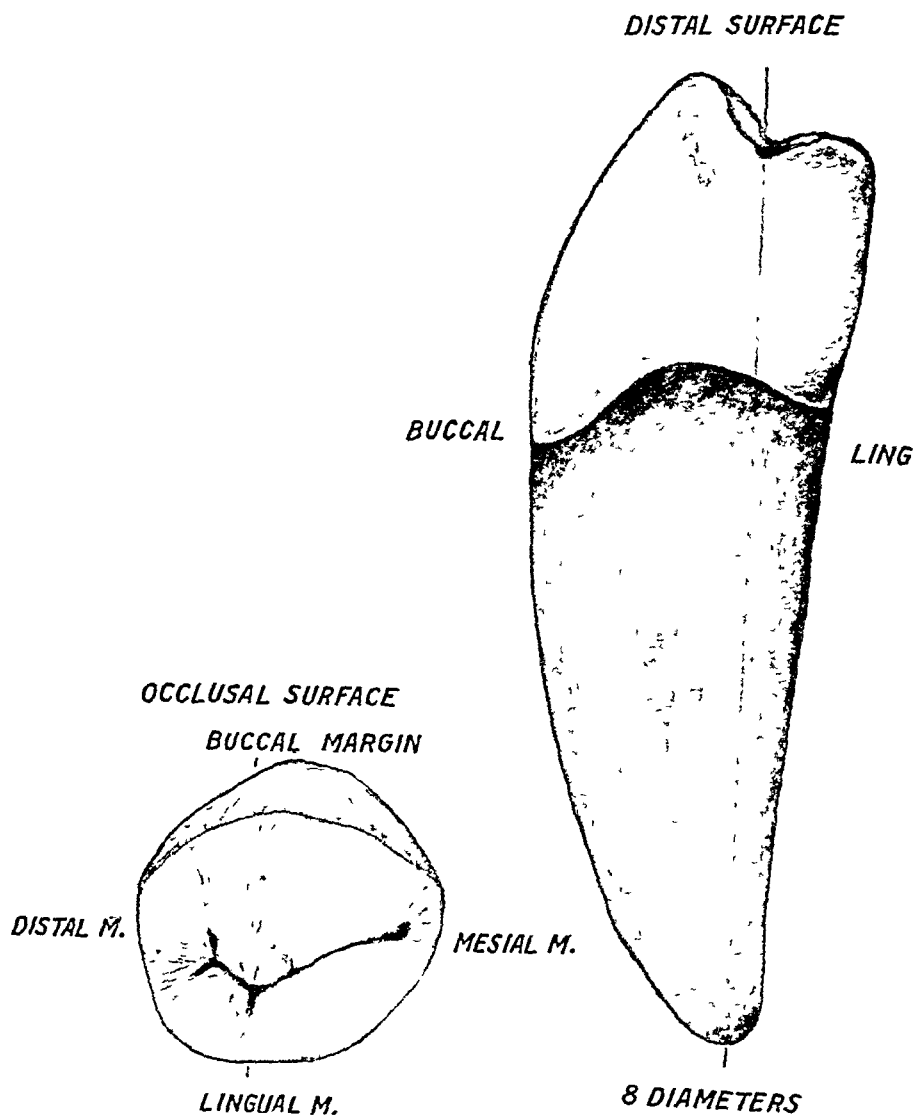


FIG. 332.—Drawing of occlusal and axial surfaces of a tooth to show the relation of the section to the tooth (Drawn by W. A. Offil, 1910)

or until minute bubbles can be seen forming upon the surface. Remove and immerse at once in the dilute ammonia for a minute. Remove the vaseline by carefully wiping the section with absolute alcohol or ether, and immerse in 95 per cent alcohol. In this it

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

should remain while the slide and cover glass are being prepared. Obtain from the desk a cover glass long enough to cover the entire section and carefully clean both slide and cover glass. On the center of the slide place a drop of balsam that is as long as the section. Holding the slide over a Bunsen burner or alcohol flame warm it gently so as to evaporate the xylol. In this process the drop will spread out over the slide and the direction of spreading may be guided by the heat. Allow the slide to cool and test the hardness of the balsam with a teasing needle or the finger nail. When cold the balsam should be just soft enough to take the imprint of the needle or nail but not be sticky. If it is sticky it must be reheated. If on the other hand it is brittle enough to chip it must be scraped off from the slide and the process tried again. In the same way prepare a film of balsam on the cover glass. Remove the section from the 95 per cent alcohol and dry it for a few minutes in the air (after wiping with filter paper).

Place the section *etched side up* upon the balsam on the slide, and place the cover glass on it, *balsam side down*. Warm the slide gently over the flame while pressing the cover-glass down with the handle of a teasing needle. As the balsam is warmed the slide and cover glass are brought together forcing the balsam out to the edges of the cover glass in all directions. All excessive balsam should be squeezed out at the edges. Place on the cover glass a small piece of blotting paper or a layer of cork, adjust some with a spring clip and put the section away until the balsam is entirely hard. When the balsam is entirely hard the excess may be removed by gently scraping with a knife-blade and wiping with xylol. The section should now be labelled with the name of the student, the direction and position of the section, the student's name and number, and the date.

The mounting in hard balsam greatly improves the value of the section for the dental tubules and the lacunæ of the cementum are left filled with air and can be more easily studied. Sections may, however, be mounted in the ordinary way in soft balsam. If the section is broken or extremely thin soft balsam should be used.

## PERIOD III

**Outline Drawings from Ground Sections**—The object of the outline drawing is the study of the dental tissues, their distribution, portion of the tooth formed by each, their relation to each other,

and the coarser points of their structure. To get the value from this work the drawings must be made very accurately to scale and as large as the note-book page will allow. With the Boley gauge or a millimeter rule measure accurately the length of the section, multiply this by eight or ten, and mark the length on a page of the drawing book. Measure the width of the section at the point of the greatest diameter and multiply this by the same factor. Using this for the width and the previous measurement for the length, lightly draw a rectangle, which is to be used as a guide in the construction of the drawing. The success of the drawing now depends on the accuracy and number of the measurements.

First measure the vertical distance from the incisal edge to the gingival line on one side of the section, and then on the other, and mark these on the sides of the rectangle. This will give the relative length of root and crown and the difference, if any, in position of the gingival line on the two sides. Measure the vertical distance from the most prominent point on the axial surface to the incisal edge or the tips of the cusps, and so on, making every measurement that can help in the formation of the drawing. In this way the outline of the section should first be traced inside the rectangle, then the dento-enamel junction, then the pulp chamber is shown, and finally the cementum. Before drawing the outline of the cementum, the section should be placed under the microscope, using the low power, and the cementum should be observed, studying it from the gingival line on one side of the section to the gingival line on the other.

It would be a waste of time to attempt to fill in the structure of the tissue of the entire outline, and only certain things are to be shown in these drawings. For that reason fill in three portions of enamel and dentin and three portions of cementum and dentin, using the low-power objective. Study first the bands of Retzius (page 68), and lightly indicate their direction. Study the enamel-rod direction, beginning at the gingival line at one side and following it around the crown to the other side. In a portion at the incisal edge, or on the occlusal surface, indicate the rod directions, and in the same way show them in a portion near the center of the axial surface on one side and near the gingival line. Follow the dentinal tubules which end next to the portions of enamel which have been filled in to the point where they open into the pulp chamber, and indicate their direction (page 139). In the same way fill in three portions of the cementum and the dentin under

\*hem—one in the gingival line one near the middle of the root and one in the region of the apex (Fig 333)

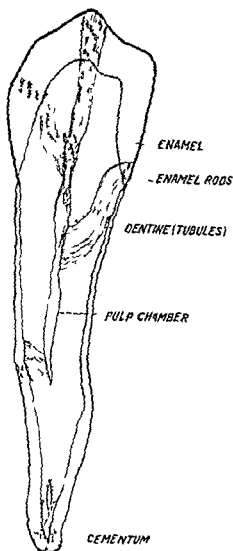


FIG. 333. Longitudinal section made as a study of the dental structure. (Drawn by E. J. Schmidt)

If any portion of the section has been lost in grinding, that portion should be indicated by dotted lines and in the same way if a portion of the crown has been lost by wear the original form may be added in dotted lines.

Outline drawings should be made from each of the three classes of teeth—one from the incisor or cuspid, one from a bicuspid, and one from a molar, and a laboratory period should be devoted to each drawing.

#### PERIOD IV.

**Isolated Enamel Rods.**—Obtain from the desk a fragment of enamel which has been broken in the direction of the rods. Place a drop of distilled water or glycerin on the center of a clean slide. Moisten the broken surface with a drop of water and lightly scrape it with the blade of a broad, sharp, chisel, holding the edge parallel with the surface and the shaft at right angles to it. Dip the edge of the chisel in the drop of liquid on the slide, and the scrapings will be left. Cover with a cover-glass and study with the high power, using a small diaphragm. Fragments of enamel will be found made up of broken rods, some single and others in groups. Note the diameter of the rods and the appearance of the cross-markings, which will be seen if the light is properly adjusted. Draw as seen with the high power.

Repeat this operation, using enamel that has been immersed in 1 per cent hydrochloric acid for a number of hours. Compare the appearance of the rods with those of the former specimen and make a drawing as seen with the high power.

Find an old tooth with a large carious cavity, remove the softened dentin without touching the enamel if possible. Lightly scrape the whitened inner surface of the enamel next to the cavity and mount the scrapings as before. Compare the appearance of these rods isolated by the action of caries with those of the previous specimen. Notice that the cross-markings are more distinct and the expansions and constrictions of the rods more prominent. Draw a few of the rods as seen with the high power, using the small diaphragm.

#### PERIOD V.

**Minute Study of the Enamel and Dentin.**—Select a field from one of the ground sections where the specimen is very thin, and, if possible, where the entire thickness of the enamel plate can be seen in one field with the  $\frac{2}{3}$  objective. To select this field all of the enamel in the three sections should be carefully studied with the low power, and the one chosen in which the rods can be seen best and can be most easily drawn. Having selected the field, study



the enamel with the high power, beginning at the dento-enamel junction. Note the form of the dento-enamel junction and the relation of the two tissues at this point. Note the diameter of the

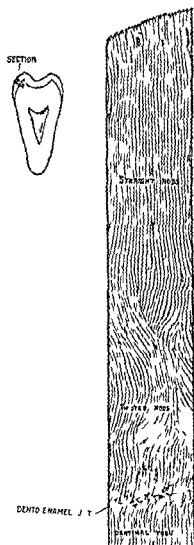


FIG. 331.—High power drawing of the enamel (Drawn by A. B. Hopp, 1902-03)

enamel rod and estimate it, using a red blood corpuscle as a standard of measurement. Note the striation of the enamel (page 67). Using both the low and the high power draw as accurately as

possible the enamel from the surface to the dento-enamel junction, showing all the details of structure that can be made out

The drawing should be made as long as the page will allow, and need not be more than an inch wide, and should include just enough of the dentin to show the dento-enamel junction and the character of the dentin at that point (Fig 334). Notice the diameter of the dentinal tubules, comparing them with the red blood corpuscles and the enamel rods. Note the amount of matrix that separates the tubules. Observe the forking and the anastomosis of the tubules as they approach the enamel, and follow them as far as possible

## PERIOD VI.

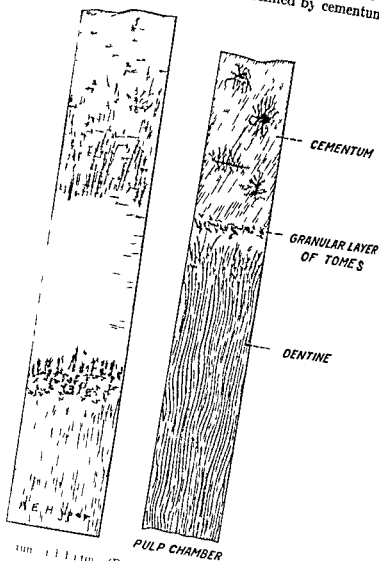
**Minute Study of the Cementum and Dentin.**—With the low power study the cementum in the three specimens, looking for all the details of structure that can be made out (see page 154). In the gingival portions and often well toward the apex, especially if the tooth is from a young person, the cementum will be very thin and almost structureless in appearance. With the high power, fine lines parallel with the surface may be seen, which indicate the lamellæ. In the apical portion the cementum becomes much thicker, and it will be seen that each layer is thicker and consequently more easily seen. Little black spots looking like spiders will be found in larger or smaller numbers. These are the lacunæ with the canaliculi radiating from them. They were filled in life by cement corpuscles. Look for embedded fibers of the periodontal membrane. In all of this work each field should be studied with both the low and the high power.

The inner layer of the cementum next to the dentin is clear and structureless, and the dentin adjoining it appears with the low power as a granular layer known as "the granular layer of Tomes." Studied with the high power, the appearance will be seen to be caused by irregular spaces in the dentin matrix communicating with the dentinal tubules and filled in life with protoplasm of the fibrils. Compare the dentin in the root with that in the crown (page 143)

After studying all the cementum in the three sections, select three fields, one from the gingival, one from the middle, and one from the apical portion of the root, and draw the tissues from the surface of the root to the pulp chamber. Show all the details of structure that can be made out with both low and high powers

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

(Fig 33.) With the high power search the cementum for the record of absorptions which have been refilled by cementum



(Drawn by H J Lund and A E Hopper)

## PERIOD VII

**Drawings of Typical Cavity Walls**—From the molar or bicuspid section select a field in the region of a groove or pit. Imagine a cavity to be prepared in this position. To help in this an ink line may be made on the cover glass by using a fine pen and India

ink, or ordinary ink to which a little sugar has been added. Now, using both the high and the low power, study the direction of the enamel rods as they appear in the line of the cavity wall, and make a drawing showing the structural requirements for a good wall in this position. From any one of the three sections select a field in the gingival third of the labial or buccal surface and indicate the line of a cavity wall in the same way. Study with the low and the high powers the direction of the enamel rods as they appear in the line of the walls of the cavity, and make a drawing showing the structural requirements for good walls in these positions (page 107).

### PERIOD VIII.

**Outline Drawings from Transverse Sections of the Root.**—The ground sections of the root have been prepared and should be brought to the laboratory in solution, ready for mounting. The three sections should be mounted together under one cover-glass, using balsam about the consistence of molasses. The sections may be studied at once, but after the day's work upon them they should have a spring clip adjusted to the cover-glass and be put away until the balsam is thoroughly hard, otherwise they may work out to the edge of the cover-glass. With the millimeter gauge measure the length and breadth of each section, multiply the measurements by twenty, and lay off a rectangle as in making the longitudinal drawings. Draw the outline of the section and the pulp chamber as accurately as possible before studying the section with the microscope. With the low power follow the dento-cemental junction around each section and draw it into the outline. Fill in half of each section, showing the direction of the dentinal tubules, the position and character of the granular layer of Tomes, the number and positions of the lacunæ, and the other structural characteristics of the cementum. In this study the record of the reduction of size of the pulp chamber which may be noted by changes in the direction and the character of the dentinal tubules (page 152). Label the section with the name of the root from which it was ground, your name, and the date.

### PERIOD IX.

**Study of Secondary Dentin and Cementum.**—With the low power find a field where there is a distinct demarcation between dentin

of earlier and later formation, and draw it accurately with the high power. Compare the size of the tubules, their number, their direction, and their diameter in the earlier with the later formed dentin. Is there any connection between the tubules of the two portions? Find a similar field from a longitudinal section and study in the same way, making an accurate drawing.

Search all of the ground sections with the low power until a field is found where the dentinal tubules are cut transversely. Adjust the high power objective and study the field. Notice that by focussing up and down with the fine adjustment the tubules seem to move in a circle, showing the spiral course through the matrix. Using a red blood corpuscle as a standard, note the size of the tubules, their distribution in the matrix, and the amount of matrix separating them. Look for the appearance of Newman's sheath which is that portion of the matrix forming the immediate wall of the tubule. Draw accurately one field as seen with the high power. Study the cementum from all the ground sections for an area showing absorption and rebuilding and if found, draw one field with the high power. Draw five or six lacunae with their canaliculi as seen with the high power, selecting as great a variety of forms as possible.

## PERIOD X

**Ground Sections of Bone**—From a shaft of a femur or humerus saw a disk about one-quarter of an inch thick. In doing this notice the appearance of the marrow cavity especially as you look into it toward the articular ends. Saw the disk into sectors with an arc of about a quarter of an inch on the outer surface. From this piece saw two thin slices—one at right angles to the axis of the bone, the other parallel with it. These should be ground as directed in the introduction for the grinding of transverse sections of the root and be brought to the laboratory ready to mount. They should be mounted in hard balsam as described in the mounting of longitudinal sections of the teeth. Label the slide with the name of the bone from which the section is taken and the direction in which it is cut. Study the transverse section with the low power working out the arrangement of the lamellae and the distribution of the subperiosteal and Haversian system bone (p 213). Draw the tissue from the surface of the bone to the marrow cavity. This drawing should be not more than an inch wide and

the full length of the page. With the high-power objective draw one or two Haversian systems.

Study the arrangement of the Haversian canals as seen in the longitudinal sections. With the high power draw at least three lacunæ, showing one cut lengthwise, one transversely, and one as seen from above.

## PERIOD XI.

**Decalcified Bone.**—One of the bones from a small animal has been decalcified, embedded, sectioned, and stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Receive from the desk two sections, one of which is cut longitudinally, the other transversely. Mount in balsam in the usual way. Label the slide with the name of the animal, the bone from which it is cut, and the direction of the section. Study the transverse section with the low power, noting the bone corpuscles in the lacunæ, the tissue in the Haversian canals, and the marrow. With the high power draw one field showing two or three Haversian systems, one of which has been partially destroyed in the building of another. Draw with the high power one field from the marrow cavity. From the longitudinal section draw, with the high power, one field showing osteoblasts in a medullary space.

## PERIOD XII.

**Comparative Study of Subperiosteal Bone and Cementum.**—For this day's work the previously mounted sections must be used, the longitudinal sections of the teeth, the transverse sections of the root, the ground and decalcified sections of bone. Study the cementum and the subperiosteal bone as shown in these sections and make one drawing of cementum and one drawing of subperiosteal bone to show the comparison in structure. Compare the regularity in form and arrangement of the lacunæ in the bone with the irregularity in form and position of the lacunæ in cementum. Note that in the bone the lacunæ lie between the layers, in the cementum they may be between the layers or entirely within a single layer. Compare the regularity in the arrangement and thickness of layers with the corresponding irregularity in cementum. Note the size, number and arrangement of the canaliculi radiating from the lacunæ in bone, and compare them with the canaliculi of the cementum.

## PERIOD XIII

**Dental Pulp from the Unerupted Tooth of a Sheep**—An unerupted molar or premolar of a yearling lamb was removed from the lower jaw by splitting the bone. The pulp was pulled out of the partially formed dentin embedded in paraffin sectioned stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Bring to the desk a clean slide with a drop of balsam upon the center of it and receive a section. Label the slide. Pulp from unerupted tooth of sheep, stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Study first with the low power. Upon the circumference of the section the layer of odontoblasts may or may not be shown depending upon whether in the removal of the pulp the fibrils have pulled away from the dentin, or the odontoblasts have been pulled off from the surface of the pulp. They are usually present at least in spots. Note the number and arrangement of the bloodvessels and the distribution of the connective-tissue cell. With the low power draw a portion from the surface to the center showing the layer of odontoblasts, if present. With the high power draw one field showing a bloodvessel and the connective tissue cells taking particular pains to represent their forms correctly. If there are any odontoblasts present draw one field showing them and the layer of Weil (see page 167).

## PERIOD XIV

**Dental Pulp Normal Human**—A number of human teeth were cracked immediately after extraction and the pulps removed from the pulp chambers. They were embedded in one block of paraffin sectioned stained with hematoxylin and eosin and are ready to be given out. Bring to the desk a clean slide with a drop of balsam on the center and receive a section. Label the slide. Transverse section of pulp from human teeth. There will be several sections in this specimen each from a separate pulp. With the low power follow the circumference of each section looking for places where odontoblasts are present. Find the best field in the specimen and draw the layer of odontoblasts as seen with the high power. Notice the fibrils which have been pulled out of the dental tubules projecting from the ends of the odontoblasts. If the section is parallel with the long axis of the cells they will appear as tall columnar cells with a nucleus in the deeper end. If it is oblique to their axis the layer may appear as two or three

layers of oval cells Just beyond the odontoblasts the layer of Weil will be seen, usually appearing as a clearer layer containing few cells and about half as wide as the odontoblasts Beyond this the connective-tissue cells are thickly placed for a short distance, and still deeper they are more widely scattered and about evenly distributed in the rest of the pulp

With the high power draw one field to show the form of the connective-tissue cells of the pulp With the low power study the distribution of the bloodvessels in all of the sections. Select the best section and draw the entire section to show the size, number, and arrangement of the large bloodvessels With the high power draw a single field to show accurately the structure of a bloodvessel wall.

### PERIOD XV.

**Dental Pulp, Pathologic Human.**—By the coopération of the man in charge of the extracting room, or an extracting specialist, teeth with living but inflamed or hyperemic pulps were dropped as soon as extracted into a fixing fluid The teeth were afterward cracked and the pulps removed, embedded, and sectioned as before Bring to the desk a clean slide with a drop of balsam on its center and receive a section Label the slide "Pathologic pulp from human tooth stained with hematoxylin and eosin." Follow the same routine in studying these specimens as in the case of the normal pulp It is impossible to tell just what conditions will be present Compare the size and number of the bloodvessels with those in the normal tissue, and the character and distribution of the cellular elements Look for nodules of calco-globuli, especially in the inflammatory specimens, and make a diagnosis of the condition, as shown in the specimen See the chapter on the Structural Changes in the Pulp and Pathological Conditions for further assistance on the work in this material.

### PERIOD XVI.

**Endochondral Bone Formation.**—A forming bone from a human fetus has been embedded, sectioned, and stained with hematoxylin and eosin Receive a section from the desk and mount as usual. Study the specimen with the low power, identifying first the general arrangement of the tissues, following from the unchanged



## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

cartilage to the development of bone. Notice the subperiosteal fibers on the surface. Make a sketch of a sufficient part of the section to show the changes from the typical hyaline cartilage to the young bone. With the high power draw one field from a primary marrow cavity showing osteoblasts laying down lamellæ on one of the spicules and one field showing osteoclasts.

## PERIOD XVII

**Bone Growth** — A piece of a long bone from a very young animal has been embedded and sectioned transversely to the shaft. Section have been stained in hematoxylin and eosin, to be mounted on a slide. Label the slide. Growing bone cut transversely stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Study first with the low power. On the surface of the section will be seen the periosteum, in which the fibrous and osteogenetic layers can be easily recognized. Bone formation is actively going on laying down lamellæ under the periosteum which are being transformed into Haversian system bone. With the low power draw a portion of the section from the periosteum to the center of the bone. With the high power draw a field showing the osteoblasts of the periosteum actively laying down the absorption of subperiosteal bone to form a medullary space and a field showing osteoblasts in a medullary space.

## PERIOD XVIII

**Periosteum from Attached Portion** — From a young kitten a portion of a bone in a region to which muscles are attached to the periosteum was carefully dissected out removing the attached muscle and the tissue embedded in celloidin. The sections cut parallel to the axis of the bone and perpendicular to its surface have been stained in hematoxylin and eosin and are ready to be given out. Receive a section and mount as usual. Label Periosteum from attached portion stained in hematoxylin and eosin. Study the specimen first with the low power. The outer fibrous layer of the periosteum will be seen with the muscle fibers attached to it and the osteogenetic layer with the greater number of cells taking the stain more deeply. Draw with the low power showing the tissues from the surface of the periosteum well into the substance of the bone. With the high power study the attach

ment of the muscle fibers to the outer layer of the periosteum, the character and arrangement of the fibers of the outer layer, the interlacing of the fibers of the outer and inner layer, the cells, and especially the osteoblasts of the inner layer and the penetrating fibers that are built into the bone. Draw the thickness of the periosteum as seen with the high power, showing the details of structure as accurately as possible.

### PERIOD XIX.

**Gingivus and Gum Tissue.**—The gingivus and gum tissue covering the alveolar process down to the point of reflection on to the cheek was dissected away from the teeth and jaw of a sheep. The tissue was embedded in paraffin and sectioned parallel with the long axis of the tooth. The sections have been stained with hematoxylin and Van Gieson, and are ready to mount. Bring to the desk a clean slide with a drop of balsam on the center and receive a specimen. Label the section "Gingivus from a sheep, stained with hematoxylin and Van Gieson." By this staining the cellular elements will have a brownish color, the nuclei dark, the protoplasm lighter, the white fibers should be bright red, and the elastic fibers yellowish. It is a specially good stain for connective tissue. Study with the low power. The epithelium will be stained a brownish yellow or purple. It is a stratified squamous epithelium made up of many layers of cells and with a distinct horny or corneous layer on the surface from the crest of the gingivus to the point where the mucous membrane is reflected on to the cheek, or where it ceases to be attached to the gum. This layer is yellowish in color, and is made up of closely packed scales having no nuclei. They are the remains of epithelial cells from which the protoplasm is gone, leaving only the horny material which it had produced. The portion of the epithelial lining the gingival space has no corneous layer, nuclei being seen in the cells at the surface. The cells are larger and more loosely placed. The connective-tissue papillæ and the projections of epithelium which are between them are extremely long. In the epithelium covering the alveolar process the connective-tissue papillæ are broader and not so deep, and the cells are much more compactly arranged. At the point of reflection on the cheek the epithelium changes its character abruptly, the corneous layer disappears, the surface cells showing nuclei,

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

the epithelial layer is thicker and made up of larger and more loosely placed cells. This change in the structure explains why the epithelium is easily broken where a movable portion of the membrane passes over the edge of an artificial denture. When an infection reaches the connective tissue a sore is produced that requires some time to heal.

Study the connective tissue which is made up of coarse, wavy bundles of white fibers taking the red stain. In the gum tissue, that is the portion of the section covering the alveolar process the bundles are very large and form a very coarse network. Beyond the point of reflection the bundles are finer and more delicate in their arrangement. Elastic fibers take the yellowish stain. Notice the bloodvessels in the connective tissue and the capillaries in the papillae. With the low power draw the entire section so as to show the character of the epithelium and the fibrous tissue in the three parts.

With the high power draw the thickness of the epithelium lining the gingival space and at the point where the membrane is reflected to the cheek.

## PERIOD XX

**Periodontal Membrane Transverse Gingival**—The lower jaw of a young sheep was sawed through between the teeth, cutting the jaw into blocks each containing two teeth. The crowns were broken off or opened so as to admit the fluids to the pulp tissue. The tissues were decalcified, embedded and sectioned at right angles to the axis of the tooth. They are cut from the gingival portion and have been stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Receive a section and mount as usual. I label the slide 'Periodontal membrane, transverse gingival stained with hematoxylin and eosin'. A similar block of tissue preserved in alcohol will be found at the desk. This should be observed so as to study out the relation of the section to the gross appearance of the tissue.

Holding the section to the light observe the distribution of the tissue. Two roots will be seen cut across. Observe the epithelium on the labial and the lingual and possibly also that lining the gingival space lying next to the root of one of the teeth. By the aid of the low power sketch the outline of the entire section to show the distribution of the tissues. Note the demarcation where the finer fibers of the periodontal membrane unite with the coarser

mat of gum tissue. Beginning at the center of the labial surface, follow the fibers springing from the cementum to where they are lost in the gum tissue or attached to the approximating tooth. Draw the portion of the membrane between the two roots, accurately representing the arrangement of the fibers. The epithelial structures will be seen lying between the fibers close to the cementum, and should be shown in the drawing (p. 248).

With the high power study the cementoblasts and the epithelial structures. Make a drawing of one field, showing all the details of structure as accurately as possible.

With the high power draw one field showing the fibrous tissue between the roots and the relation of the fibroblasts to them. This field should include a bloodvessel.

## PERIOD XXI.

**Peridental Membrane, Alveolar Portion, Transverse.**—The sections for this work have been cut from the same block as the preceding, but are in the occlusal third of the alveolar portion and as close to the border of the alveolar process as possible. Receive a section. Mount as usual and label the slide "Peridental membrane, alveolar portion, transverse, stained with hematoxylin and eosin."

Study the general arrangement of the tissues and make a sketch as in the case of the previous specimen. Note the muscle fibers from the muscles of the lip attached to the periosteum on the labial surface of the process, the bone of the labial plate, the septum separating the alveoli, the peridental membrane filling the space between the bone and the surface of the root, the layers of the cementum, the dentin and the pulp.

After studying the specimen with the low power as carefully as possible, draw the peridental membrane surrounding one root, including the thickness of the labial plate of bone with its periosteum and a part of the lingual plate. In this drawing represent accurately the fibers of the peridental membrane, their arrangement in the bundles, and the relation of the bundles to each other and the bloodvessels. To do this the fine adjustment must be used to obtain ideas of the third dimension of space. With the high power draw one field from the wall of the alveolus, showing the attachment of the fibers to the bone, the osteoblasts on the surface of the bone, and the other cellular elements. This field should include

## DIRECTIONS FOR LABORATORY WORK

a bloodvessel With the high power draw the thickness of the cementum at some point where a specially strong bundle of fibers is attached This should show the fibers embedded in the cementum cementoblasts on the surface, and the branching and interlacing of the bundles

## PERIOD XXII

**Longitudinal Section of the Periodontal Membrane**—The lower incisor of a young sheep was removed from the jaw by sawing through between the teeth leaving two teeth in each block The crowns of the teeth were broken off near the level of the gum so as to admit the reagents to the pulp chamber The tissues decalcified embedded in celloidin and sectioned They were cut through from labial to lingual and only the ones from the central portion used They have been stained in hematoxylin and eosin and are ready to mount Mount the section as usual and label the slide

Longitudinal section through the periodontal membrane of a sheep labiolingual stained in hematoxylin and eosin First hold the section up to the light and note the relation of the tooth to the bone and the soft tissues Study the section with the low power and make a sketch showing the general distribution of the tissues Show the pulp chamber dentin and cementum bone periosteum, gum tissue and epithelium Do not attempt to fill in the drawing more than diagrammatically for it would require too much time The object of the drawing is to get the general relation of the tissue before studying parts of it in detail Compare the form of the labial and the lingual gingivus and make a drawing of the lingual showing the details of structure as far as the border of the process and as accurately as possible With the high power draw the thickness of the epithelium lining the gingival space Study the fibers in the occlusal third of the alveolar process and make a drawing to represent them accurately, showing the cementum at one side and the bone at the other The entire length of the root can seldom be got in one section on account of the curve of the tooth so that the fibers can probably be studied to advantage in the occlusal third of the alveolar process only Draw one field with the high power showing the bloodvessels

## PERIOD XXIII.

**Tooth Germ.**—The head of an embryo pig was embedded in paraffin and sectioned at right angles to the snout. The sections begin in the region of the incisors and far enough back to cut through the nose cavity. They have been stained in hematoxylin and eosin. Bring to the desk a clean slide and receive a section. Label the slide: "Tooth germ, stained with hematoxylin and eosin."

The general form of the section will depend on the position of the section through the head. At the desk is the head of a similar embryo preserved in alcohol. This should be observed so as to determine from the section its relation to the head. By holding the section to the light and the use of the low power, make a sketch of the entire section. Note the epiblast covering the outer surface and lining the nose and mouth cavity. The mass which is to form the tongue lying between the roof of the mouth and the mandibular arch. If the section is in front of the angle of the mouth there will be no connection between the upper and lower parts of the section. Notice the separation of the nose cavity into right and left by a septum containing cartilage, and the projections of cartilage from the side walls which will form the turbinate bones. On either side of the septum where it joins the palate will be seen little structures known as Jacobson's organ, which later disappear. Notice Meckel's cartilage in the mesodermic mass of the mandible. In the epiderm of the outer surface the beginning of the formation of hairs are to be seen.

With the low power follow the epiderm lining the mouth cavity and look for the tooth germ. In each section there are four chances for tooth germs, one on either side in the upper and lower arches. Select the best one and draw it as seen with the low power. The appearance will depend entirely upon the stage of development.

With the high power draw enough of the enamel organ to show the arrangement of the cells in the outer and inner tunics and the stellate reticulum.

## PERIOD XXIV.

**Tooth Germ.**—Sections have been prepared in the same way as in the preceding, but from the head of an older embryo, in which the tooth germs are completely formed and calcification is ready to begin.

Receive a section, mount, and label as before and draw the outline of the entire section. Note the changes in form and in the tissue elements from the previous section. Bone formation has begun both in the mandible and the maxilla. The amount and distribution of this should be carefully studied.

With the low power draw the entire tooth germ, selecting the most typical one in the section. With the high power draw one field showing ameloblasts, odontoblasts, and a portion of the papillae. Find a field in which bone formation is going on and draw it accurately with the high power.

## APPENDIX CHAPTER I.

---

### THE GRINDING OF MICROSCOPIC SPECIMENS, USING THE GRINDING MACHINE.

By G. V. BLACK, M D , D D.S , Sc D , LL D

**The Machine.**—The basis of this machine is the larger watch-maker's lathe known as No 2. It must swing 4 inches, the length of the bed must be 12 inches, and be good and solid. A test should be made of the alignment of the lathe head to see that this is exact. If there is any inaccuracy, another lathe should be selected. The power should consist of one of the largest and strongest electric lathes, or motors, made for the use of dentists. This power should be transmitted to the lathe through an overhead shaft of a length that will give good room to operate the lathe without the motor being in the way. A pulley may be placed on the left end of the shaft of the motor on one of the brass carriers for grinding wheels. This pulley should carry a good quarter-inch round leather belt. Its diameter should be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches. The pulley on the right hand end of the shaft above should be 5 inches. This will reduce the speed one-half and double the power. On the left end of the shaft should be placed a copy—reversed—of the pulley on the lathe-head, which has 4 grooves. This gives good varieties of speed with each speed of the motor. Another small pulley will be placed near the center of the length of the overhead shaft, the purpose of which will be explained later (Figs 336 and 337).

The grinding apparatus is built upon a base fitted to the lathe bed in the same way as the lathe head, or tail-piece. It has one main shaft parallel with the lathe bed, in good and sufficient bearings to maintain accuracy of alignment and perfect steadiness for long-continued usage (see Figs 336 and 337). This shaft moves freely lengthwise, or back and forward, while turning slowly in its bearings. On the end of this shaft next to the lathe head—the forward end—there is a larger portion, or ring, and this end ter-



minutes in a threaded nipple, upon which the removable grinding disks are screwed firmly against the face of this larger ring to

FIG 336



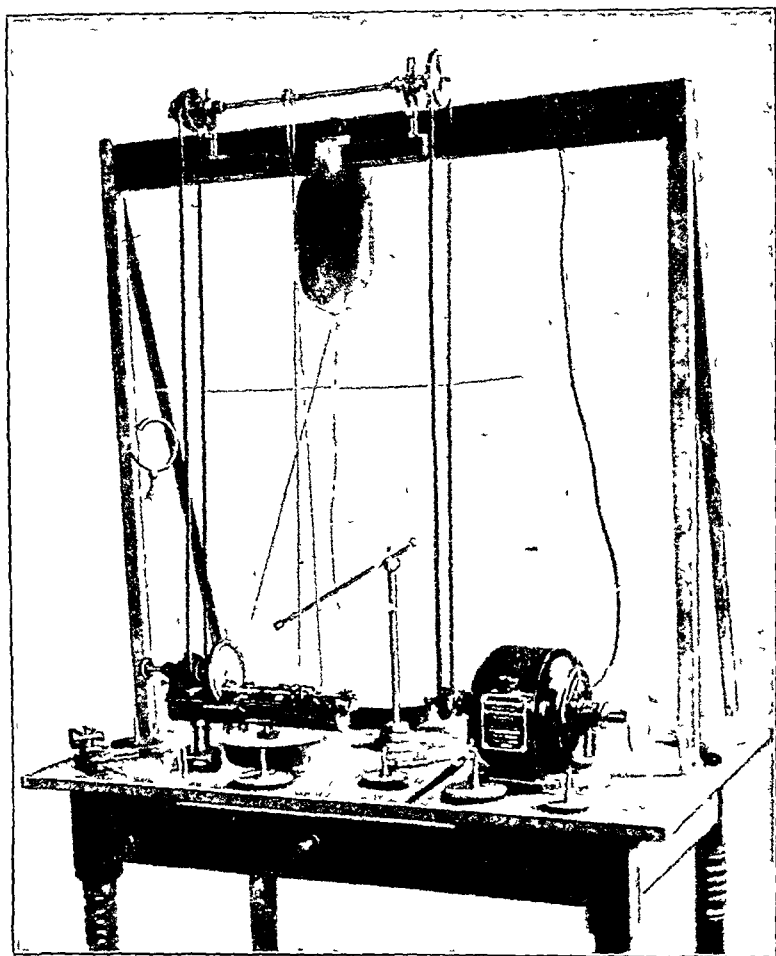
FIGS 336 and 337 —A general view of the grinding machine showing particularly the arrangement for transmitting the power from the electric motor to the machine that does the work. All of this may be made out by reference to the picture while following the text. The bed of the little lathe on the left hand is  $12\frac{1}{2}$  inches long which gives a good idea of the general dimensions.

The water is delivered to the grinding stone from a rubber bag or bucket hung on the frame above through a rubber tube to the metal tube on a movable stand which may be so placed as to bring the brush at its end against the stone. This stand and brush are better seen in Fig 337.

secure accuracy of adjustment. The use of these disks will be more fully explained later.

On the rear end of this shaft, just back of its rear bearing and abutting against it, a large movable nut is placed. This is provided with a thumb screw by which it is made fast at any point desired. Turning this forward pulls the shaft back from the grinding stone. Turning it backward allows the shaft to move forward

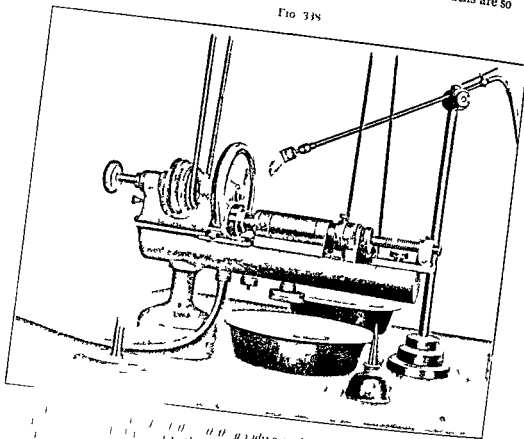
FIG 337



against the stone. It has also a finger reaching back over a graduated disk just to its rear. This disk is made fast on the shaft, and the two together constitute the micrometer, by which the thickness to which specimens are ground is measured. The movable nut has 40 threads to the inch. The graduation of the disk is on the same principle as that on the screw calipers used by machinists

for fine measurements—one thousandth of an inch—but as this disk is  $1\frac{1}{8}$  inches in diameter the graduations of thousandths are so

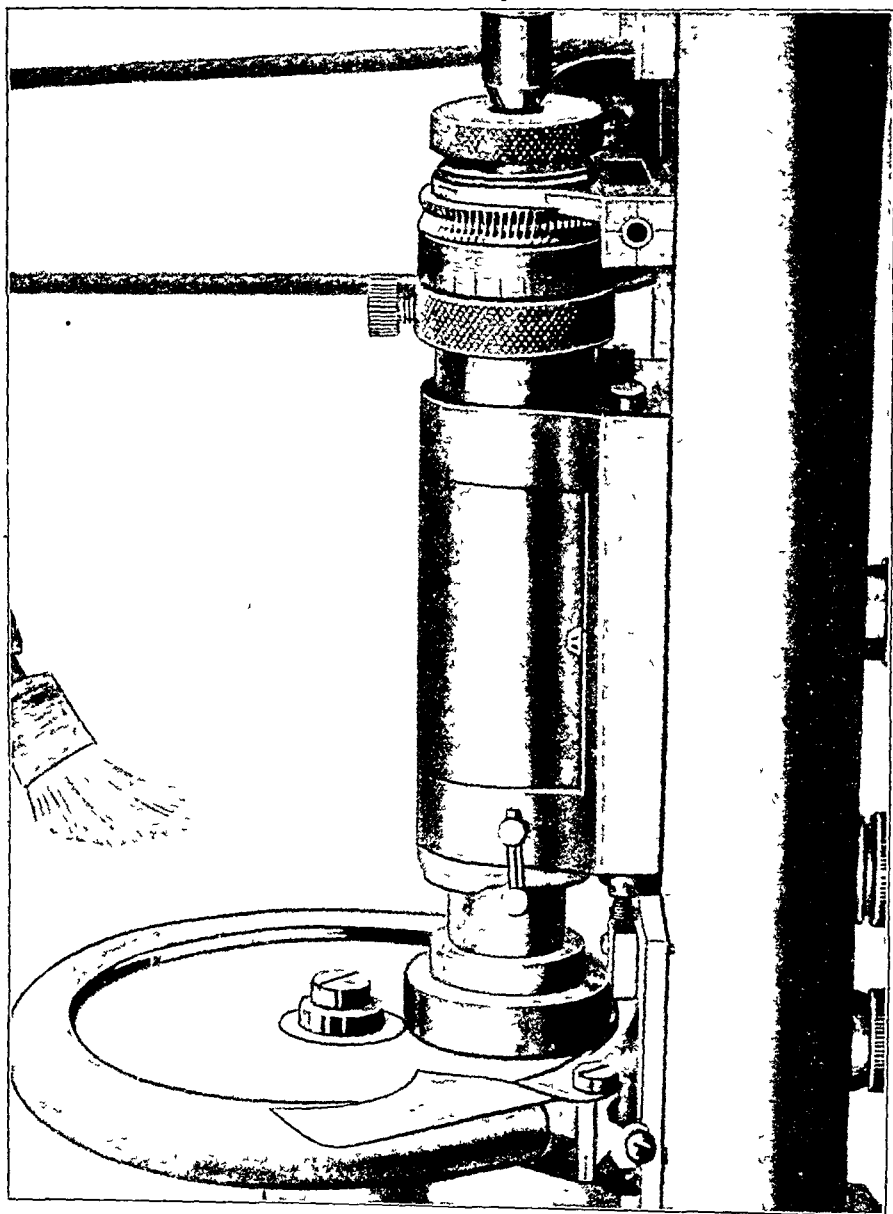
FIG. 338



The grinding machine mounted upon it in position  
 the lead is the grinding stone surrounded by the  
 water from the wheel and delivers it through  
 the wheel the lathe bed which conveys it to a con-  
 tainer comes from a rubber bag or bucket hung  
 through a rubber tube to the metal tube mounted  
 through which it passes may be placed against  
 the finger is seen at the foot of the spatter guard  
 the screw is below the lathe bed  
 the hose (the hose) runs through its whole length  
 its usings to protect its bearings from grit except  
 the grinding stone) This part is protected by a swaddle  
 the working bearing lean On this end the grinding  
 the Thromometer is on the other end of the  
 the grinding machine Next back of this is a toothed  
 the actuating the middle one of the belts descend  
 the hand belt in Fig 337) This belt passes over  
 the through a small worm shaft turns the main shaft  
 the by a plunger actuated by a spiral spring seen

wide that one-quarter of one-thousandth may readily be used. It differs in plan, in that both the graduation and the parallel lines

FIG. 339



are placed upon this disk. On the machinist's micrometer the lines are placed on the shaft and the graduations on the nut. The graduation is read from the side of the finger on the movable nut,

and the lines are read from its end. It is a very perfect micrometer (Figs 338 and 339)

The forward movement of the shaft when grinding and also the pressure exerted upon the stone are furnished by a tail piece placed behind it and attached to the lathe bed. This has a plunger actuated by a spiral spring which pushes the shaft forward against the stone. The amount of pressure exerted in the grinding is controlled by the amount of compression of this spring in fixing the piece to the lathe bed. It may be much or little as desired. Usually very little pressure is used. When the movable nut has come against the frame in which this shaft turns the machine may continue to run but the forward movement of the shaft stops and the grinding ceases in consequence. Therefore there is no danger of grinding a specimen thinner than the measurement fixed upon. The further arrangement for finding this measurement will be described later.

On the rear portion of the graduated disk, or wheel, a portion or space is toothed and connected with a worm pinion or threaded shaft by which the main shaft is turned in its bearings. A belt is attached over a wheel on the end of this worm shaft, and extends to the third wheel previously mentioned, on the overhead shaft. When this belt is adjusted and the motor started, it causes the main shaft in the grinding machine proper to turn slowly on its axis while being pressed against the stone by the tail piece. By this arrangement every part of the specimen fixed on the grinding disk is brought successively against every part of the rapidly revolving stone and is cut perfectly level in all of its parts.

**The Grinding Disks**—The grinding disks are of brass accurately turned  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch thick and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter. They have a threaded hole  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch deep in the back to fix them to the nipple on the forward end of the shaft of the grinding machine. A machine should have a half-dozen or more of these, lettered or numbered on the edge so that records of each may be made when measuring preparatory to mounting specimens for grinding. As the mounting of specimens on others of these may proceed while the grinding on one is going on (for the machine being automatic needs little attention) this number at the least is necessary for rapid work. The machine may be stopped and the disk removed from the shaft by a few backward turns the progress of the grinding examined the disk returned for further grinding etc. at any time during the progress of the work. The face of the disk, which

should be perfectly flat and parallel with the face of the stone, should always be perfectly bright, so as to reflect light through the specimen when it becomes thin. This enables one to judge very closely of the thickness by the eye (after sufficient practice), that sometimes proves a valuable check on the setting of the measurement in the beginning.

**The Point-finder.**—This is a piece of steel one-eighth of an inch thick, fitted to the lathe bed and set against the face of the lathe head, and made fast by a thumb-screw passing through the lathe bed from below. It has a strong arm which passes around other fixtures between the lathe head and the forward end of the base of the grinding machine. It is provided with a set-screw, by which a range of variation can be made in the distance of the forward end of the frame of the grinding machine from the lathe head. When this is in place and the measurement of a disk has been made and recorded for the grinding of a specimen to a specified thickness, the machine may be taken to pieces and set up again and the grinding proceed without fear of disturbing the measurement, so long as the set-screw in the point-finder is not moved. It is often necessary during grinding to loosen the grinding machine from the lathe bed, slide it back to adjust something, to remove disks for examination of the progress of the work, etc. This point-finder, by preserving the distance between the lathe head and the grinding machine, enables one to do this at will, and again find his exact point of measurement simply by sliding the frame of the grinding machine forward against the set-screw of the point-finder. This little device seems absolutely necessary to the highest usefulness of the machine.

**Lap Wheels and Grinding Stones.**—I began my work of grinding specimens by the use of lap wheels, but soon discarded them because they were dirty. They cut much quicker than stones, however, and may be used for the bulk of the work when much grinding of very hard material is to be done. They are not necessary in grinding teeth, bone, etc., but in grinding the harder fossils, especially those impregnated with the silica, and in some geological work they become necessary.

The best lap wheel I have used is an aluminum wheel. Brass or iron will do the work, but aluminum holds the grit better, cuts with lighter pressure, and does the work quicker. In using these I have fed them continuously by hand with carborundum powder in soapy water, using a brush.

**The Stones**—Anyone who is doing much grinding should have a good supply of stones. I have a pair of carborundum wheels, a pair of emery wheels, a pair of India oil stones, and a pair of Arkansas stones. In each of these pairs one is fine and the other coarser grit. Every stone is dressed to a perfect face on the lathe head where it is to do its work with a black diamond held in the slide rest.

These stones, when put in good shape, seem capable of doing an unlimited amount of work. The conditions of the grinding prevents them from getting out of true. All that seems necessary is to roughen them a bit with a picking wheel when they become too smooth to cut well. For this purpose a much smaller picking tool than the smallest sold for the general mechanical uses seems desirable. This picking wheel has sharp teeth of the hardest steel possible on its periphery. It is held in a handle in such form that the wheel is free to turn. In use it is held against the rapidly rotating stone and slowly passed over its entire surface. It may be held in the hand aided by a tool rest or may be arranged for use in the slide rest, which is the better form for this work.

**Watering the Stones**—In grinding, the stones are kept wet in *running ice water*. A balsam that is too soft to hold a specimen for grinding in water at room temperature will hold it perfectly in ice water because it is much harder when cold. For this purpose, a receptacle for ice is hung on the frame that holds the overhead shaft, and filled with bits of ice and then filled with water. Both the ice and the water must be clean, for the opening in the tube where it passes the valve which regulates the flow is very small and a little bit of dirt or trash might stop the flow. In this case the specimen being ground would be burned instantly. A bucket, or a large rubber bag will answer for this purpose. Then an ordinary rubber tube answers to conduct the water. It is best to have this rubber tube to connect with a metal tube mounted on a stand that may be placed in any position wanted to deliver the water to the stone. This metallic tube is provided with a valve for the regulation of the flow. In its final end it should be provided with a brush of rather long bristles into which the water is delivered and spread upon the stone. This brush is made upon a short tube fitted into the end of the metal tube. To make this brush first cover the plain part of the small brass tube with thick shellac dissolved in absolute alcohol. Place a layer of the bristles around it and wrap them tightly with a fine strong thread. Then place

more shellac over this and another layer of bristles. Continue this until the brush is large enough. Then wrap thoroughly with a cord in shellac, let it dry, and then trim it up. Two of these have served for four years of fairly hard usage.

**Waste Water**—A *spatter guard* is made by bending a  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch round brass tube into a circle, the inner diameter of which is the size of the stones used, and brazing the ends together solidly. Then this is fixed in the lathe and one-fourth of its inner circular diameter is turned away. The grinding stones will then go inside this. Then this piece is provided with a foot and hollow post and fitted to the lathe bed with a washer and nut, the same as other pieces are attached. This catches all waste water and through a rubber tube attached to the end of its hollow post under the lathe bed delivers it into a receptacle so placed by the table as to receive it. This prevents all of the spattering of water which would be thrown from a rapidly revolving wheel without it. If it should be inclined to run over when a very full stream is wanted, a piece of rubber dam may be stretched over the foot and pulled to its upper end. This may be caught under the guard in fastening it to the lathe bed, and will deliver any overflow into a receptacle placed to receive it. In this way nothing is wet or spattered with water.

**Preparation of Material.**—In the preparation of material, such as teeth, bone, etc., in histological work of ordinary delicacy, the specimen is first ground flat on one side by hand on a rough stone 4 inches in diameter, on the motor, and finished perfectly flat on one of the finer stones on the lathe head. The piece is then washed clean and placed in absolute alcohol for a sufficient time to remove all traces of water, or, when cracking or injury from shrinkage is not feared, it may be dried in the warming box. Then when dried and warmed to about  $120^{\circ}$  F, it is ready to mount with balsam on the grinding disk for grinding.

**Management of Balsam.**—I suppose the management of balsam will always be a difficult problem with many persons. Many, however, learn it quickly. One may take the dry balsam and dissolve it in xylol, and filter it at a high temperature, say  $110^{\circ}$  or  $120^{\circ}$  F. Or one may use the prepared balsam for microscopic mountings. In either case it must be evaporated until stiff enough so that it will move rather sluggishly at  $110^{\circ}$  F., but will be fluid at  $120^{\circ}$  or  $130^{\circ}$  F.



**Spiders and Dogs**—For using this another bit of apparatus is necessary. A circular piece of steel made flat on the upper surface is mounted on three legs  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 inches high. The steel disk should have two rows of holes around its periphery, the one row  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch inside the other. A hard rolled tool steel wire, or rod  $\frac{3}{32}$  inch in

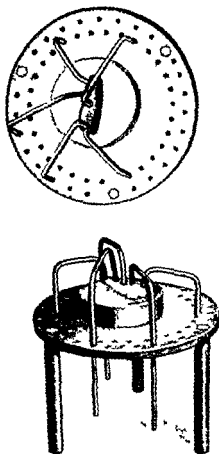


FIG. 340.—The spider with a grinding disk upon it and a specimen laid on and secured by bent rods called dogs. When the dogs are placed and pressed down through the holes in the disk of the spider they hold fast. With a little pressure of the finger outward on the end of the rod below the disk of the spider the dog slips up and is loose. The disk of the spider is three inches in diameter.

diameter, should exactly fit these holes. These rods should now be bent at right angles with a short nib on the end bent again at right angles so that it will point downward when the free end of the rod is set into one of the holes. The length between these two angles should vary from  $\frac{3}{4}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in three dozen or more

pieces which should be prepared. The end which goes in the holes should be cut so that it will not quite reach the surface of the table when dropped into the holes with the end of the nib on the surface of the circular plate. These rods are called "dogs" (Fig. 340)

With this arrangement a warming box arranged with a thermostat to maintain an even temperature, sufficiently high to soften the stiff balsam, is used. The specimen, the balsam, the grinding disk, and the "spider" are placed inside, and allowed to rest until they have reached the temperature desired. Then working quickly, a sufficient amount of balsam is placed on the grinding disk, and the specimen laid on it. This should be pressed down until it is seen that all space under it is filled with balsam, but no considerable excess should be used. It is well if this rest so in the warming box for fifteen minutes for the balsam to soak well into the specimen. Then the grinding disk, with the specimens, should be laid on the spider and one of the dogs dropped into one of the holes in the steel plate, that will bring its nib on to a part of the specimen chosen. Then another, and still another, should be placed, each with its nib on a different part of the specimen, so that every part of it may be pressed flat on the disk. More dogs should be added if necessary. Now each in turn is pressed down a little, one after another, until all are exerting about all the force the spring of the rods will exert without permanently bending them. In this condition the whole thing is again enclosed in the warming box.

At this time any number of specimens of teeth or bits of teeth, bone, etc., that the face of the disk will hold may be placed on the disk, and all may be ground together. Four to six lengthwise sections of incisor or cuspid teeth may be placed at once, or eight to twelve cross-sections. It seems to be best practice, however, not to load the disk too heavily. Four lengthwise sections will grind better than six, as a rule.

Now, after the loaded disk had remained in the warming box until all balsam that will come has been squeezed out from under the specimens, all excess of balsam should be very carefully removed, or wiped away, close up against the specimens. Nothing clogs a stone and stops its cutting more effectually than balsam smeared over it, and every excess that may come against the stone should be got out of the way.

When this is done the whole thing should be returned to the

warming box for from one to four hours, so that it may dry some about the margins at least. Then it may be removed from the warming box and allowed to cool and await convenience in grinding. It should, however, remain secured on the spider by the dogs if it is to wait more than a few hours for the disposition of dentin to warp in drying may pull some part of the specimen from the disk. Under these conditions, two or three days, or a week, will do no harm.

When the grinding is completed, the disk is removed from the machine and the specimens flushed with clean water, and dried by the pressure of a soft napkin folded to several thicknesses or clean pieces of waste cotton fabric may be used. Then the disk with its specimens should be laid in a dish and sufficient xylol added to cover it, and allowed to rest until the balsam has been dissolved and the specimens released. This will usually require from twenty to thirty minutes or sometimes as much as an hour. When the specimens are very thin they loosen much quicker than when thick. Any material not penetrated by xylol, as silicified petrifactions and stones, require much more time.

When the specimens have loosened, they are ready for permanent mounting for microscopic study.

**Rapidity of Grinding**—In order to make rapid progress in grinding specimens one should have six to ten grinding disks, nearly as many spiders, and a large supply of dogs. The machine is so nearly automatic in its action that it needs but little watching so that the preparation may be going on while the grinding is in progress. One of the principal points that needs attention is the flow of water. But if the water and ice placed in the receptacle are clean and free from dirt or trash that may stop the flow of water, the only care is that the quantity of water is kept up. The vessel should be large enough to hold a supply for several hours. If the stone should run dry, the specimen would be destroyed in a few seconds.

**Setting the Measurement of Grinding Disks**—When beginning any considerable series of grindings, the first thing of importance is to try out and obtain a record of the measurements of each grinding disk for the particular stone that may be selected for finishing. I find that most persons, after some practice, prefer to use a fine stone for the entire grind. In grinding teeth, after roughing down the surface that is to form the specimen the back is also ground away to a flat surface that will better accommodate

the placing of dogs in mounting on the grinding disks. These may be made quite thin and reduce the grinding with the fine stone. Then the stone selected is placed in the lathe head, seeing to it carefully that the face of the stone is clean. Then the grinding machine is brought up in contact with the set-screw of the point-finder. The tail-piece is placed in position and pushed up so as to make some pressure on the shaft. Then, with the large nut the shaft is so adjusted that the grinding disk being tried comes close to the stone but does not touch it. Now start the machine and note the running carefully, and while doing so catch the adjusting nut of the micrometer and move it one-thousandth at a time, and listen for the first touch of the disk to the stone. The moment this is heard, quickly reverse the movement of the adjusting nut and separate the disk from the stone. Try this again and again, until you feel very certain of having detected the first touch of the stone on the disk by moving the adjusting nut half or a quarter of  $\frac{1}{1000}$  inch. At last, while it is touching, stop the machine in a position to see the finger on the adjusting nut, and read the measurement and enter it on your record for that disk. In setting for a grind with this disk, turn the adjusting nut so as to draw the grinding disk back from the stone  $\frac{3}{1000}$  inch. When the specimens to be ground are mounted on this disk, place it back on the machine, start it, seeing that the iced water is running first, and let it run until it ceases to cut, which it will do when the forward movement of the shaft is stopped by the contact of the adjusting nut of the micrometer with the rear bearing of the shaft.

Then remove the disk and examine the specimens carefully. If the placement has been accurate, the specimens will be too thick. Replace the disk carefully and turn the nut forward so as to grind one-thousandth of an inch thinner, or one may do only a half of one-thousandth at a time. Repeat this until the section seems to be thin enough. Then remove and mount the sections and judge them with the microscope. By this time one will have arrived at an accurate measurement of this disk, and the record will be trustworthy for other grinds, and will not have to be repeated until the wearing of the stone begins to leave the specimens a bit thick. Then a half-thousandth of an inch will bring it right. And so on, and on. Each disk will be treated in the same way for each stone used, and if one is doing much grinding all will be running on their records, and all go smoothly. Recently a man who was grinding sections of teeth for me made all of the preparations, preparatory

grindings, and disk mounts, ground and removed from the disks ready for mounting forty full length sections of central incisors in six hours, and had his lunch during the time. Every section was complete, was even in thickness in every part, and all practically the same thickness—a thickness chosen for the special studies in hand.

**Grinding Frail Material**—While the machine facilitates the production of the more ordinary sections to such a degree as to be indispensable to one having many grindings to do, it is in the production of sections of very frail material that the grinding machine stands out as vastly superior to other methods of grinding. In the study of caries of enamel in which disintegration has rendered the remaining tissue very frail and likely to fall to pieces before it is sufficiently thin, we may obtain the required thinness and yet retain all of the tissue. I have also produced exceedingly fine sections of salivary calculus and equally good sections from small crumbs of serusal calculus. The production of these is slow, but fairly certain of good results.

Also in grinding sections of fossil teeth, fossil woods, and the like, in which very fine sections are too brittle to be handled in any way except as stuck to glass the machine gives excellent results. In geological work it practically removes the difficulties. Good sections of the very brittle stones can be made with fair safety by grinding on the cover glass.

**Plans for Grinding Frail Material**—Much very desirable material for microscopic investigation will be found that is so frail, or at least so brittle, when reduced to sections thin enough for microscopic investigation that it will crumble to pieces, either in the grinding or in the mounting by the ordinary processes. For grinding and mounting such material the following processes have been slowly evolved. These may be divided into the balsam process and the shellac process. Such material that, when made fast to a cover glass and ground in hard balsam is not liable to go to pieces when this hard balsam is softened by sticking the specimen and glass cover to a glass slide may be ground in hard balsam. If, however, the different parts are liable to separate and change position when the balsam softens shellac should be used for the grinding. I have had some very sorrowful failures in grinding rare specimens of enamel that had no cementing substance between the enamel rods in hardened balsam. For when the softer balsam was added to mount the specimen on the glass slide, the hard balsam was softened

and the enamel rods floated out of position. All such material as will not hold together strongly enough to prevent this should be ground in shellac.

To grind in hard balsam, the one side of the specimen may be ground flat on the rough stone and then dried out in absolute alcohol. Then the ground side should be saturated to sufficient depth with soft balsam, and laid aside until the balsam has become hard enough to grind smoothly. Then the grinding and polishing of this first side should be completed by grinding away all balsam from the immediate surface, and sufficiently into the substance of the specimen to produce a clean, smooth surface of the material. When this has been done, and the surface dried, it should be mounted on an ordinary cover-glass, the thickness of which should have been measured and recorded. In this mounting the cover-glass should be laid on a spider and weight enough placed upon it to insure a perfect fit of the surface of the glass. This should be subjected to about 120° F. heat for from one to five or six hours, for the purpose of expressing the last bit of balsam possible from between the specimen and the cover-glass. Then it may rest, awaiting the convenience of the operator, for several days, but the balsam must not be allowed to become "brittle hard," because in that case it loses toughness. All excess of balsam about the margins of the specimen should be carefully removed to facilitate the hardening of that which remains, and especially so that it may not come in contact with the grinding stone, stick to its surface, and interfere with the cutting.

Good judgment must be acquired by practice as to the hardening of balsam and shellac in these grinding processes. *The best idea of it that can be given in words is this. The balsam or the shellac must have become firm enough so that it will not drag or allow the specimen to move while grinding in iced water. Neither must it become hard enough to become brittle, for then it becomes liable to break.*

When ready, the specimen is mounted on the grinding disk. This is done by first cleansing the disk, finishing with xylol, and then sealing the cover-glass to this with soft balsam. This should be placed on the spider and well weighted down with dogs. All excess of balsam should be carefully wiped away from the margins of the cover-glass. This may be quickly dried at 120° F., or more slowly at room temperature. It should, however, be warmed for a half-hour or more, for the purpose of expressing as much balsam

as possible. This cover glass will be well held for grinding in iced water with only a little drying about the margins, if all excess of balsam is cleaned away closely. The balsam should not become very hard.

If the specimen is of considerable bulk and of a quality of material that can be cut with a steel saw, the disk may be caught in a vise "with leather cushioned jaws to avoid bruising" and the bulk of the material removed with a jeweler's saw, leaving only a moderately thin section for grinding. Or if the material is very hard as stones silicified fossils etc., the disks may be mounted upon the slide rest and cut with the slicing disks to be described later.

The specimen is now ready for the final grinding. The record for measurement with the particular stone to be used in finishing has been made, tried out on unimportant material, and the cover-glass has been measured and its record made. With this data, the disk is screwed to its place, the micrometer turned to the proper measurement for the finish, the iced water arranged, the machine set in motion, and it will do the rest. When coarser stones are used for cutting away considerable material, I find those with just a little experience prefer to gauge the amount of the cutting by the eye for the coarse stone.

**Removal of the Cover glass from the Disk**—I remove the cover glass with the specimen from the grinding disk in two different ways, as seems at the time best.

First the grinding disk is placed on a heated piece of metal that will warm the grinding disk quickly. Have a stick of rather soft wood ready, the end of which is cut to a rather sharp angle and thinned down almost in the form of a blade. When the grinding disk begins to warm, catch the margin of the cover glass with the end of the stick and begin to make steady pressure. As the disk warms so as to soften the balsam, the cover glass will begin to move under the steady pressure slowly at first but more rapidly later and will slide off the grinding disk before the specimen is loosened. For this plan the cover glass should be pretty strong, one and one-half to two thousandths of an inch thick. Otherwise there will be great danger of breaking it. It is well in some cases to run just a little xylol around the margins of the cover glass and partially dissolve the balsam that has become dried before the heating. Great care must be taken not to allow the xylol to spread on to the specimen for it would loosen it very quickly.

The specimen is then turned downward and placed on a tiny drop of balsam on a glass slide, and quickly pressed down close and level. As the new balsam will soften the old, it should not be moved further than to quickly apply a light spring clip to hold it steady. The parts of the specimen are less likely to move if this is laid on ice for an hour or more.

**The Use of Shellac.**—In the second plan shellac is used instead of balsam for hardening the specimen and holding its parts together in the first grinding. This part of the work is otherwise done in the same way. The drying of the shellac requires more time usually than the balsam.

The attachment of the cover-glass to the grinding disk is done in the same way as when balsam is used to hold the specimen on the cover-glass—that is, with balsam. The grinding proceeds similarly in every respect.

In the removal of the cover-glass from the grinding disk, and mounting the specimen, comes the important differences in the two processes. Xylol dissolves balsam very quickly. But xylol does not dissolve shellac at all. Therefore, instead of pushing the cover-glass of the grinding disk, the disk is laid in xylol and the balsam dissolved out. In this there is no danger of detaching or moving the specimen if the handling is careful. When cleaned, it is inverted upon a glass slide on a drop of balsam without fear of movement of parts of the specimen, no matter how frail.

**The Preparation of Shellac.**—To keep shellac in condition for this work has some difficulties. The dry scales should be dissolved in absolute alcohol so as to make a moderately thick varnish. It should then be filtered at a temperature of 110° to 120° F., or be made thinner and filtered at room temperature. Great care should be exercised to keep the filtrate from exposure to a damp atmosphere, for it absorbs water readily and then will throw down fine crystals, which destroy its value for microscopic purposes.

After being filtered it should be evaporated in a close warming box in about 110° to 120° F., to the consistence of syrup. In doing this it is well to divide the supply into two or three grades—a thinner, medium, and a thicker solution. The thinner solution will be used for saturating frail specimens before any cutting is done. The thicker solutions for attaching specimens to the cover-glass for grinding. The medium solution for either purpose, as the material may seem to require.



**The Grinding from Crumbled Material** —There is often important material for investigation that can be had only in very small crumbs, or broken pieces, such as serunal calculus, sands, crumbled bits of strange stones, or mixtures of such material as is found in some of the coarser sands. These on microscopic investigation, may tell important stories as to their origin and throw important light upon geological questions. In addition to the ordinary microscopic observation, the polariscope may be turned on these, and reveal important facts as to their origin and structure. Also many things will be found in botanical work, such as obtaining sections of small seeds, and the like, which will give important information.

Having done a few of these grindings especially of the very frail dental material, such as serunal calculus extremely frail fossil teeth, etc., plans of work more or less well adapted have been developed.

For instance, I have obtained excellent sections of serunal calculus which can be had only in small crumbs or flakes in this wise. A small collection of these bits are first immersed for a time in absolute alcohol, or until all air has been removed if they are dry, or if they are freshly gathered, until all water has been removed. Then a cover glass is prepared by covering its central part with the thicker solution of shellac, and these crumbs are placed in this, in what seems to be the best position for obtaining sections. These are allowed to soak full of the shellac, under a close cover and then uncovered to dry up. Then if some of the pieces seem to need it, more shellac is added from time to time until the embedding seems sufficient. This may be dried at room temperature or in the warming oven at  $110^{\circ}$  to  $120^{\circ}$  F. Shellac should not be subjected to much higher temperatures for a considerable time, because continued high temperature for many days together seems to injure the strength.

When this is sufficiently hard for smooth grinding, and before it has become too brittle (determining this point requires some experience) the preparation is cemented to the grinding disk with balsam and ground to such a point as seems most favorable for obtaining sections. This point is to be determined by frequent removal of the disk from the machine and examination of the exposed surfaces of the several pieces.

When this part is done, the cover glass is dissolved off of the grinding disk by xylol. Then another cover glass is attached to the surface *with the least possible amount of shellac*. This in turn is

dried to the right consistence. Then the last cover-glass placed—that is, the one on the side that has been ground—is secured to the grinding disk with balsam. When this has set it is placed on the machine and the first cover-glass is ground away and the section ground to the required thinness. They are again dissolved off of the grinding disk, and may be at once mounted in balsam on the microscopic slide.

**Difficulties in Grinding.**—In the grinding of material enveloped in shellac, or in balsam, either of these materials are apt to gum up the stone and stop the cutting, or render the grinding very slow. When this is from balsam, it may be quickly removed after drying the stone by washing with xylol on a brush, or a bit of cloth, while the stone is slowly revolved.

When clogged with shellac, the washing is done with absolute alcohol. This requires much more time, and some advantage may be obtained by using pumice stone with the cloth or with cork. After rubbing with pumice stone, a very thorough washing with alcohol should be made to remove the last particles of pumice, before rebeginning the grinding. Even with this, the ground surface is apt to be rough or scratched for a time by particles of the pumice lodged on the stone. These will soon disappear, however. Yet the pumice should not be used in the last portion of the grinding.

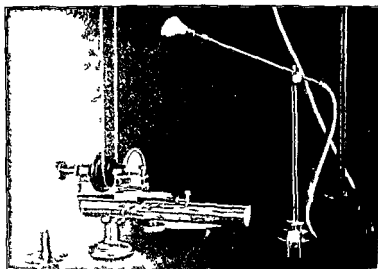
With much grinding of hard substances, the surfaces of the stones become worn so smooth that they do not cut well. Then the picking tool should be run over the surface until it is perceptibly roughened. This will cause the stone to cut briskly for a considerable time, and at first—following such sharpening—the ground surface of the specimen is likely to be full of scratches. In that case a smooth stone should be used for the finishing.

Much care should be taken in keeping the stones in good condition. Except in the ways mentioned, no dirt or grit should be allowed to come in contact with their surfaces. A single particle of grit lodged in the surface of the stone will fill the whole surface of the ground section with scratches. Although I shut up my stones in a close-fitting drawer, I find it necessary to cover each with a close-fitting cloth that is so closely woven as to exclude all dust.

In taking care of the machine itself, one cannot be too careful. All of the bearings of the lathe head and of the grinding machine should be swaddled with candle wick saturated with oil to prevent

the ingress of gritty particles. This is especially needful when using the aluminum saws and feeding them with carborundum powder. Then every bearing about the whole machine should be especially protected to prevent the possibility of getting grit in the bearings. Carelessness in such a matter will quickly ruin a fine bit of mechanism. But with this care, such a machine should continue to do its work well for a lifetime (Figs 341 and 342).

FIG 341

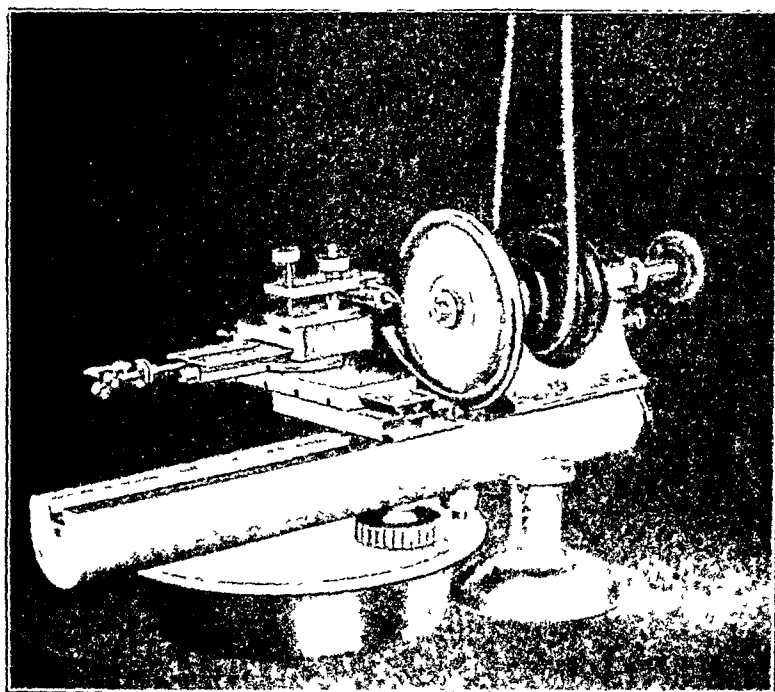


FIGS 341 and 342 — *Arrangement for slicing very hard material.* Fig 341 is the more ordinary view of the machine with the slide rest and object holder in position. In Fig 342 the lathe is turned about to give a better view of the slide rest, object holder, spatter guard, and aluminum disk. In these illustrations the slotted tube is used (see text) to hold the object being cut. Notice that the disk used for cutting is surrounded by a spatter guard which is open for a space at one side so that the periphery of the disk may be used in cutting. This guard gathers all water and grit used in cutting and delivers it into the pan below through its hollow post. When doing this kind of work all of the bearings of the machine should be carefully wrapped (swaddled) to keep them safe from intrusion of grit.

**The Slicing Mechanism**—This is an arrangement for slicing very hard substances which cannot be cut with the ordinary steel saw—such as the enamel of teeth, silicified fossils, rocks, etc. This consists of an aluminum disk fitted to the lathe head and surrounded by a special form of spatter guard that admits of the use of the periphery for cutting and an object holder fixed upon the slide rest of the lathe. The object holder consists of a clamp that grasps a brass tube slotted at the free end in which teeth, or other objects may be made fast with plaster of Paris or sealing wax for slicing. Or in place of this a brass mandril, upon the end of

which there is a threaded nipple by which any of the grinding disks may be attached. These are fixed in the position of the ordinary tool post, and may be swung horizontally to any possible position in relation to the aluminum disk. An object can therefore be so placed on the disk as to be cut in any direction desired. Usually these are fixed upon the disk with sealing wax. In using the aluminum disk it is fed with carborundum powder suspended in soapy water to give it some stickiness. This is applied with a brush by hand, and is kept going so constantly as to prevent the disk from running dry. The ordinary aluminum plate, of twenty-

FIG 342



four to thirty gauge, may be used for making these. They are first cut in circles by hand, as large as the lathe will swing (4 inches), and then are cut down to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches with a tool in the slide rest. These are quickly made when wanted. They wear out rapidly, and yet one of them will do much cutting of very hard substances, and do it accurately and delicately. Rings may readily be cut from the ordinary test-tubes without special danger of breaking. The crown of a molar tooth may be cut into many slices, fossil teeth, silicified fossil woods, stones, etc., may readily be sliced as thin as they can be handled in the after-work of preparation.

## APPENDIX CHAPTER II

### THE THEORY OF HISTOLOGICAL TECHNIQUE

THE first requirement of histological technique is to obtain a general view of the theory of procedure. Many beginners make the mistake of supposing that directions for histological technique can be followed like the receipts of a cook book or the directions for an experiment in chemistry. This is very seldom the case, and while it is always necessary to follow directions accurately, it is still more necessary to follow them intelligently. All histological methods require judgment. For instance, the length of time required for xylol to replace absolute alcohol in a block of tissue which is to be embedded depends upon the size of the piece, the character of the tissue, the temperature, and possibly some other factors. It is therefore impossible to say exactly what time would be required and the experimenter must use the judgment which has been acquired as the result of experiment. In the same way no experimenter can make up a stain and be sure that it will work exactly like the last lot made by the same formula until he has tried it. Even with the same stain the length of time required for staining a section depends upon the thickness of the section, the character of the tissue, and the preliminary technique it has been through. So that all time directions must be considered as approximate and to be successful the experimenter must study, first, the object to be obtained by the use of each reagent and the peculiar action of the reagent upon the tissue.

For observation with the compound microscope transmitted light is ordinarily used. The object must therefore be thin and transparent enough to allow the light to pass through it. The higher the magnification the smaller the field, that is, the smaller the portion of the tissue that can be seen at one time and the less depth of focus and consequently the thinner the sections must be. A section that would be excellent for study with the  $\frac{3}{4}$  objective may be almost valueless under a  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and sections that

are splendid under the  $\frac{1}{12}$  might be of little value under the  $\frac{2}{3}$ . In other words, the thickness of the section should be related to the magnification with which it is to be studied, and to the size of the structural elements which make up the tissue. For the study of the organs and tissues of multicellular organisms there are three general methods—(1) teasing, (2) maceration, and (3) sectioning.

**Teasing.**—In this method a small portion of the living tissue is torn apart with two needles in a drop of normal salt solution or some indifferent medium which will not affect the tissue. In this way it is spread into a thin film and squeezed a little between a slide and cover-glass so as to separate the structural elements when they may be directly observed. Of course, in studying such a preparation it must be remembered that the tissue has been forcibly torn apart and effects of violence must be looked for. These often bring out facts of structure which would not otherwise be as easily seen. After teasing the living tissue, staining agents may be used to facilitate the study of structure. The fresh tissues are often so transparent and made up of substances of so near the same refracting index that very little structure can be made out without the use of staining agents. It must be borne in mind that staining agents are of two classes, diffuse and selective. A diffuse stain gives an even color to all of the tissue and facilitates the study chiefly by rendering it less transparent. A selective stain combines more readily with one portion of the tissue than another, rendering it more conspicuous. Selective stains therefore must be thought of as chemical agents which combine with parts of the cell or tissue and demonstrate chemical differences in the structural elements. For instance, basic anilines react with the chromatin of the nucleus, producing a colored compound. The stain may then be washed out of the section, leaving only the nuclei colored. Acid anilines in general are diffusive stains giving a general color to the cytoplasm. In a similar way certain stains will react only or chiefly with intercellular substances, rendering them more conspicuous. For staining freshly teased specimens methyl green, the formula for which will be found under the paragraph on stains, is an excellent agent. Teased specimens are never very permanent, though they may be preserved for a considerable length of time by mounting in glycerin or glycerin jelly and putting a ring of varnish or white lead around the edge of the cover-glass so as to prevent evaporation.

**Maceration**—When an organ is composed of more than one tissue the structural elements may be separated by selecting an agent which will act upon one and not upon the others for instance the muscle fibers of a voluntary muscle may be separated by treating a piece of tissue with dilute alkali, which will soften and dissolve the connective tissue, allowing the muscle fibers to separate. In a similar way dilute alcohol will soften the cementing substance between the epithelial cells. By first treating a piece of tissue with the proper agent and then teasing the form of the structural elements of the tissue can be made out. By treating a portion of connective tissue containing both white and elastic fibers with dilute hydrochloric or acetic acid which dissolves the white fibers elastic fibers which could otherwise not be seen may be made out. Macerating and teasing methods are of great assistance to the study of tissues in sections, and it would be often very difficult to obtain true ideas of structure from sections without their assistance.

**Sectioning**—For the study of the structural elements in their relation to each other in the tissue sectioning is the one method. As they exist in the body, however, some of the tissues are too soft and others too hard to allow the cutting of a thin enough slice without disturbing the relation of the structural elements. They must therefore be put through rather an elaborate process in which the object of every step must be understood.

**Dissecting**—First of all the material for histological work must be absolutely fresh that is, living. It must be remembered that living cytoplasm is chemically different from dead cytoplasm, and as soon as death occurs postmortem changes begin which gradually destroy the structure. The period from death to the beginning of histological methods of preparation should be measured in minutes not in hours. Tissues that have been dead for a few hours will not react with the staining agents so as to produce the brilliant specimens that can be obtained from fresh material, and often a few days will render material entirely useless except for the grosser anatomical relations. The specimens to be studied should be dissected while the cells of the tissue are still alive and in doing so the greatest care should be used not to disturb the relation of the tissues.

**Fixing**—Histologically this word means killing. After dissecting out the tissue to be studied, and while the cells are still alive, it must be immersed in some liquid that will kill the cells and fix

their structure as when alive. The pieces should be made small enough for the fixing agent to penetrate them rapidly, and the size of the piece that can be used depends upon the density of the tissue, its character, and the nature of the reagent. Some fixing agents are very much more penetrating than others. All fixing agents coagulate or set the cytoplasm and tend to prevent shrinkage. The success of all the following steps and the value of the specimen for the study of detail of structure depend upon the perfection of fixation.

The fixing agents most commonly used are bichloride of mercury, potassium chromate or chromic acid, osmic acid, alcohol, and formalin. The formulas for the same will be found on pages 439 and 441.

**Hardening**—Since all the fixing agents coagulate living cytoplasm, they are also to a greater or less extent hardening agents, and after fixing tissues may be handled with less danger of disturbing the relation of the structural elements. Some fixing agents, especially chromic fluids, may be continued in their action as hardening agents until the tissue has attained the proper consistency for sectioning, but, as a rule, it is necessary to use other agents for this purpose. In all cases the *fixing agent must be thoroughly washed out of the tissue* before the process is continued. Alcohol is the universal hardening agent, and at the same time it removes the water from the tissue. In carrying tissues from water to alcohol several grades must always be used, and the more delicate the tissue the more gradual must be the changes. If a piece of tissue is taken from water and placed in 95 per cent alcohol, the diffusing currents will be so strong as to disturb structure and at the same time the hardening action is so energetic as to produce shrinkage. From water a tissue should never be placed in alcohol stronger than 70 per cent, where it should be allowed to remain for twenty-four hours. From 70 per cent it may be taken to 95 per cent for the same length of time, and from 95 per cent to absolute, which will entirely remove the water and prepare the tissue for embedding. If the tissue is very delicate, it should be placed in water, then in 50 per cent alcohol, and carried through in grades of 10 per cent. to 95 per cent.

**Embedding.**—In order to cut thin sections of tissue the piece must be surrounded and infiltrated with some firm substance which will not only support the entire piece, but will soak through the tissue, filling all intercellular spaces and supporting the individual



structural elements At the same time the embedding material is used to fasten the tissue firmly to a block of fiber or wood which can be grasped in the clamp of the sectioning machine Two kinds of material are used for this purpose Substances that are fluid when warm, and solid when cold as paraffin, or substances which may be dissolved in volatile liquid and are solidified by evaporation, as celloidin In both of these methods the substances, as a rule, are either oily or insoluble in water, and therefore the tissue must be thoroughly dehydrated—that is, have all the water removed from it before it is placed in the embedding material To accomplish this there should be at least one change of absolute alcohol From the absolute alcohol the tissue should be placed in a fluid which is a solvent for the embedding material, so that it will penetrate the tissue more perfectly and rapidly Heat is always injurious to the tissue and in embedding in paraffin, therefore, the tissue should be kept in the melted paraffin for the shortest possible time and paraffin of as low a melting point as is consistent with sufficient hardness for cutting should be used In embedding by evaporation the evaporation should not be too rapid or the shrinkage will be increased Tissues may be kept blocked and ready to cut for a long time, but as a general principle the shorter the time the more perfect will be the specimen

**Sectioning**—For sectioning some sort of machine is necessary, and many kinds have been designed, the general principles of which are all the same They consist of a clamp which holds the knife and a clamp which holds the specimen, and can be adjusted in such a way as to bring the specimen in proper relation to the knife The position of the specimen is advanced by a micrometer screw so that sections of any desired thickness may be sliced The delicate part of this machine is the micrometer screw The essential to the success of its working is the sharpness of the razor, and for such specimens as decalcified bone the razor must be heavy and strong so that the edge will not spring in cutting the hard tissue

**Staining**—The detail of staining process will be described in the next chapter, but it must be remembered that stains, as a rule, are water solutions and the sections must be carried through the grades of alcohol to water before they are ready for the stain After staining they must be carried back through the grades of alcohol, so as to remove the water entirely before they can be mounted in balsam which is not soluble in water

**Mounting.**—Except in serial work, but one specimen should be placed on a slide, and this should be in the center, leaving room at either end for a label. In serial work the sections may be placed at one end of the slide, preferably the left hand, leaving room at the right for one label

**Labelling.**—Nothing in histological technique is more important than labelling, especially in all research work. Through every step of the process the specimen must be kept track of, and a mixing of labels may spoil months of work. A laboratory note-book containing a record of all material and work should always be on the tables. I have found a system of date and number convenient. For instance, on June 4 a number of specimens are dissected out, in the note-book the record of the source of the tissue is made; the first piece is placed in a bottle of fixing fluid and the bottle labelled 6-4-1911, No 1, the second, 6-4-1911, No 2, and so on. In the note-book the description of each block and the date and the hour when it was placed in the fluid is recorded. In this way the tissue may be carried clear through recording each step in the process, and when it is sectioned and mounted we can follow its history in the note-book. Every slide should be labelled first with the date and the block number so as to follow its technique, second, the name of the tissue, and third, the kind of staining. This should be placed on the right-hand label, leaving the left-hand label for index and file number if the section is preserved.

**Indexing and Filing.**—Many beginners make the mistake of not indexing and filing their slides. They think because they have only a few, that they can easily find anything they want, and that they will wait until they have a larger number before they begin a system, but when a large number have piled up they can never find time to go back and arrange them as they should be. And only one who has failed in this way knows the annoyance of looking through hundreds of slides to find one that he knows he has some place.

so as to give a melting-point at about  $52^{\circ}$ . In winter softer paraffin should be used than in summer, as the cutting quality depends upon the adjustment of the paraffin to the temperature of the room. If the paraffin is too hard the sections are liable to tear and curl; if it is too soft, the structure of the tissue will be disturbed in cutting. Perfect infiltration is always necessary for good sections. Chloroform or oil of cedar may be substituted for xylol in this process. Xylol is most rapid, but has some disadvantages in its action on the tissues, especially if left too long.

**Cutting Paraffin Sections**—If the specimen has been placed at one end of the block, the other end of the paraffin may be clamped in the microtome. If the piece is too small it should be fastened to a block of vulcanized fiber with melted paraffin and the fiber block clamped in the specimen holder. With a sharp scalpel the excess of paraffin around the specimen should be trimmed off, leaving the block in a rectangular form. The microtome knife is placed at right angles to the microtome bed, and the side of the block should be parallel with the blade. The specimen should be brought up just to the edge and the first section cut. The knife should be moved with a quick, sharp motion, as paraffin sections are chopped when the knife is in this position. The knife is pushed back, the block lifted with the micrometer screw so as to give a section of the proper thickness, and the second section cut. If the paraffin is of the proper consistency and the block has been properly trimmed, the edge of the second section will stick to the first and the sections stretch out over the knife in a ribbon. The ribbons may be transferred to a piece of clean white paper and complete series of sections cut. When series are not required larger specimens are often cut better by placing the blade of the knife obliquely and drawing it with a slow, even motion through the block. If the sections show a tendency to curl up when the corner of the section begins to curl over the edge of the knife, it may be caught with the tip of a camel's hair brush and so section after section transferred to the paper. Paraffin sections should be cut at a thickness of from seven to ten microns, but sections as thin as one micron may be cut from small blocks under ideal conditions.

**Handling of Paraffin Sections**—For staining paraffin sections must be fastened to the slide or cover glass. If a few sections are to be cut the slide is preferable, if many sections as in the preparation of class work, square cover glasses should be used. In either case the glass must be absolutely clean. A stock of per

fectly clean slides and cover-glasses should always be kept on hand (see p. 439). A thin film of albumin fixative is spread upon the glass; this film must be as thin as possible. The best way to spread it is to put a drop of fixative on a glass slab or an ordinary slide, touch the edge of the drop with the end of the little finger and spread it over the cover-glass, wiping off all that can be removed with the finger. Lay the cover-glasses film side up on a piece of paper until the required number have been prepared. As each section is cut it is laid on a cover-glass, straightened, and pressed down with a camel's-hair brush. If the sections curl or wrinkle they should be floated on water warmed just enough to soften the paraffin but not melt it. As each section is cut it should be dropped on the top of the water, where it will straighten out. When a number have been placed on the surface of the water they may be picked up by holding the cover-glass in the point of the pliers and slipping it underneath the section and lifting it as on a section



FIG 343 —Morris staining dish.

lifter. The water is drained off and the cover-glass placed in the groove of the tray of a Morris staining dish,<sup>1</sup> shown in Fig 343. Each tray will hold about thirty cover-glasses. They must now be thoroughly dried by leaving them over night at room temperature or for a shorter time in a warm oven, which should not be hot enough to melt the paraffin. When dry, each cover-glass should be picked up in the pliers and passed quickly through the middle of a Bunsen flame, so as to coagulate the albumin, or they may all be fixed at once in an oven. Heat that will just melt the paraffin will coagulate the albumin and hold the section on the glass. By means of a little wire basket the tray with the thirty cover-glasses may now be carried from one dish to another through the following necessary reagents. First, a minute or two in xylol to remove the paraffin, then absolute alcohol, then 70 per cent, then water, Delafield's hematoxylin for five minutes, distilled water to wash off the stain; acid alcohol (70 per cent. alcohol to which 2 or 3 drops of hydrochloric acid has been added to every

<sup>1</sup> These are manufactured by Bausch & Lomb

100 c c of alcohol), again washed in tap water to remove and neutralize the acid (some prefer alcohol to which a few drops of ammonia have been added), 70 per cent alcohol eosin for thirty seconds, 70 per cent alcohol, then 95 per cent, then absolute and finally xylol. From the xylol the sections may be mounted or given out to the class. For class work a student brings to the desk a clean slide with a drop of balsam on the centre and receives a section.

**Summary of Paraffin Method —**

Tissues in 80 per cent alcohol

95 per cent alcohol, twenty four hours

Absolute alcohol (changed once), twenty four hours

Xylol, one-half to six hours

Xylol and paraffin, one-half hour

Soft paraffin, one half to six hours

Hard paraffin one to six hours

Block

Section

Fix on glass

Heat

Xylol, one minute

Absolute alcohol one minute

95 per cent alcohol, same

70 per cent alcohol, same

Distilled water

Hematoxylin, five to ten minutes

Tap water

Acid alcohol

Tap water or ammonia alcohol

70 per cent alcohol

Eosin, thirty seconds

70 per cent alcohol

95 per cent alcohol

Absolute alcohol

Xylol

Mount in balsam

Label

**Celloidin Method —**Tissues fixed and washed are taken from 80 per cent alcohol and placed in 95 per cent for twenty four hours, then in absolute alcohol for the same length of time changing the alcohol once. Then into a mixture of absolute alcohol and

ether for twenty-four hours, from this into a thin solution of celloidin, in which they should remain for from two days to a week. From the thin solution they should be placed in a thick celloidin solution, about the consistency of syrup, for the same length of time. The tissues may be kept in the celloidin solution indefinitely without injury, and if the tissue is difficult to infiltrate it may be of advantage to leave them in these solutions for weeks or months. In this case the bottles must of course be perfectly corked to prevent evaporation.

**Blocking of Celloidin Material.**—There are several methods for blocking celloidin materials, of which the author prefers the following. Thick celloidin is poured into a Stender dish or a small Petrie dish until there is enough to abundantly cover the specimens, which are arranged on the bottom of the dish. A match or bit of cork is placed under the edge of the cover so as to allow slow evaporation. In a day or two the celloidin will attain the consistence of a thick jelly. A knife is now passed around each tissue and the celloidin containing the specimen lifted out, and the excess of celloidin is trimmed away. A vulcanized fiber block has one surface dipped into the thick celloidin and the specimen arranged upon it. Thick celloidin is now added to surround and cover the tissue with its adherent celloidin. As soon as this is hardened so as to form a film it is dropped into 80 per cent alcohol to harden the entire mass. In this it must remain at least twenty-four hours before it can be sectioned. Tissues embedded in celloidin may be kept for years in 80 per cent alcohol blocked and ready to cut without great injury to the tissues.

Celloidin solutions for embedding should be kept in two grades and labelled "thick" and "thin" celloidin. The latter should be quite fluid, the former about a syrup consistence. Scherring's celloidin is furnished in two forms, in shreds and granules. The former will dissolve more rapidly. About half an ounce is placed in a large-mouthed bottle, and a mixture of equal parts of absolute alcohol and ether added. It dissolves slowly and should be shaken frequently. When this solution is sufficiently thick, part may be poured into another bottle and diluted with sufficient absolute alcohol and ether for the thin solution, while the thicker portion is poured into a bottle for the thick solution, and absolute alcohol and ether may be added to the stock bottle to dissolve the residue. When blocking tissues as described above the trimmings are dropped back into the stock bottle.

**Cutting Celloidin Sections**—The fiber block is clamped in the specimen holder and adjusted. The knife is set diagonally so as to cut with a drawing motion, and both the knife and the block are kept flooded with 80 per cent alcohol. The sections may be allowed to pile up on the knife, and after eight or ten are cut they are slid off with a camel's-hair brush on to a section lifter and transferred to 80 per cent alcohol, in which they may be kept for some time.

**Staining Celloidin Sections**—For transferring celloidin sections the most convenient thing is a small tea strainer with a handle. These may be got for a few cents at any hardware store. By means of this the sections are transferred to 70 per cent alcohol, from this to distilled water, and are stained from five to ten minutes in Delafield's hematoxylin. The stain is then washed off with tap water, destained with acid alcohol, washed in tap water or ammonia alcohol, stained thirty seconds in eosin, washed with 70 per cent alcohol from this to 95 per cent, in which they should be given two or three changes. From this they are transferred to beech wood creosote or some other clearing agent (see p. 445), and in this they may be kept until they are ready to mount or to be given out to the class. For class work the student brings to the desk a clean slide, and a section is placed upon the center of it. After blotting off the excess of oil he adds a drop of balsam, covers with a cover glass, and labels the specimen.

**Summary of Celloidin Method**—

Tissues in 80 per cent alcohol

95 per cent alcohol, twenty four hours

Absolute alcohol, changed twice, twenty four hours

Absolute alcohol and ether, twenty four hours

Thin celloidin, two days to a week

Thick celloidin, the same

Evaporate

Block

80 per cent alcohol to harden or store

Sections cut in 80 per cent alcohol

70 per cent alcohol one minute

Distilled water

Hematoxylin, five to ten minutes

Tap water

Acid alcohol

Tap water or ammonia alcohol

70 per cent alcohol

Eosin, one minute.

70 per cent alcohol to wash.

95 per cent alcohol, changed twice.

Creosote.

Mount in balsam.

Label.

**Serial Sections with Celloidin.**—It is difficult to cut series of sections with the celloidin method. The simplest process, and one used with success, is to carry the sections in order from the knife to the slide, arranging three or four at one end of it and leaving room for a label. Strips of porous tissue paper are cut the proper size and one laid over the sections to hold them in place. A thread is then lightly wrapped around the slide and paper, when they may be carried through the necessary agents for staining, in Naples jars. After they are cleared the paper is removed, the excess of the oil blotted off, the balsam put upon the section and covered with a long cover-glass.

### SPECIAL METHODS.

**Dental Pulp.**—The unerupted premolars from a young sheep furnish excellent material for the study of the dental pulp. The jaws of sheep slaughtered for spring lamb can be easily obtained from the stockyards, and while still warm are placed in Müller's fluid and formalin, in which they are taken to the laboratory. The temporary incisors are still in place and may be used for peridental membrane material.

With the bone forceps the cortical plate is removed and the unerupted teeth dissected from their crypts. By grasping the base of the dental papillæ with the pliers the pulp may be pulled out of the dentin. They should then be replaced in Müller's fluid and formalin for twenty-four hours, when they may be carried through the usual process, embedded in paraffin, and sectioned.

**Human Pulps.**—By the cooperation of the extracting room human pulps for histological work may be obtained. As soon as extracted the tooth should be wrapped in a gauze napkin, placed in the jaws of a heavy vise, which is carefully tightened until the tooth cracks. The same thing may be accomplished by a heavy hammer on an anvil. A few trials of this will enable one to crack the tooth so that the pulps may be easily removed without injury. The



cracked tooth is put in Muller's fluid and formalin for twenty four hours when the pieces of dentin are removed and the pulp carefully lifted out of the pulp chamber. It is then carried through the regular process, embedded in paraffin, and sectioned. If the teeth are not perfect clinical history should be noted.

**Periosteum**—Young kittens that have not attained their full growth may be used for this purpose. The bone should be very carefully dissected so as not to injure the periosteum and then sawed in pieces using a fine metal saw. It is usually best simply to saw it in two at the middle of the shaft and to fix it in Müller's fluid and formalin. After fixing and washing it should be cut in small pieces and decalcified in 2 to 5 per cent nitric acid. A comparatively large volume of acid should be used and a pad of cotton placed in the lower half of the bottle or the tissue suspended by a thread. It is best to change the acid once a day. Decalcification may require from two days to a week and should be tested by passing sharp needles through the tissues. As soon as decalcified the tissue should be washed for twenty four hours in running water, carried through the grades of alcohol and embedded in celloidin. The sections should be cut at right angles to the shaft.

**Periodental Membrane**—For class work the periodental membranes of sheep are the best for study, as their fibers are large and their direction easily observed. They are much better than those of either cat or dog, in which the fibers are much finer and the bone more dense. The jaws are brought from the stockyards in Muller's fluid and formalin, the crowns broken off at the level of the gum so as to expose the pulp chamber, and the jaws sawed through so as to leave two teeth in each block, after which they are replaced in Muller's fluid and formalin for two days, decalcified in nitric acid, and thoroughly washed. They may now be cut into small blocks for transverse sections and embedded in celloidin.

**Embryological Material**—For the study of the tooth germ in class work embryo pigs of all ages are easily obtained. The entire embryo should be at once placed in Muller's fluid or a saturated solution of picric acid and water. In Müller's fluid they should remain a week, in picric acid, forty-eight hours. After fixing, the heads are cut off thoroughly washed, carried through the grades of alcohol and embedded in paraffin.

## APPENDIX CHAPTER IV.

---

### FIXING AGENTS AND STAINING SOLUTIONS.

**Cleaning of Slides and Cover-glasses**—Slides or cover-glasses on which paraffin sections are to be mounted must be absolutely clean. They should be dropped in strong sulphuric acid and allowed to remain a few minutes. The acid should then be poured off and thoroughly removed with water, and strong acetic acid poured on. After remaining a few minutes wash the acid off thoroughly and wipe from alcohol. Keep ready for use in a clean box.

**Meyer's Fixative.**—The white of an egg is chopped with a pair of scissors and filtered through muslin, diluted with an equal volume of glycerin, and a little sodium oxalate added to prevent decomposition.

### FIXING AGENTS.

**Flemming's Solution.**—A good solution for fixing nuclear structures is the chromic acid solution of Flemming.

	Parts
Osmic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	10
Chromic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	25
Glacial acetic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	10
Distilled water	55

Small pieces are fixed in a small quantity of the fluid for at least twenty-four hours. They are then washed for the same number of hours in running water and passed through 50, 75, and 80 per cent. each twenty-four hours into 90 per cent. alcohol.

A stronger solution is made as follows:

	Parts
Osmic acid, 2 per cent. aqueous solution	4
Chromic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	15
Glacial acetic acid	1

**Fol's Solution**—A modification of Flemming's solution

	Parts.
Osmic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	2
Chromic acid, 1 per cent. aqueous solution	25
Glacial acetic acid, 2 per cent. aqueous solution	5
Distilled water	68

**Corrosive Sublimate**—An excellent fixing fluid is made by saturating distilled water with corrosive sublimate. Small pieces about 0.5 cm. in diameter are immersed in this fluid for from three to twenty-four hours, then washed in running water for twenty-four hours, and then transferred into 70 per cent alcohol. After twenty-four hours the tissues are placed in 80 per cent for the same length of time and then preserved in 90 per cent. It often occurs that after changes in temperature crystals of sublimate are formed on the surface or in the interior of the object. For their removal a few drops of iodine and potassium iodide are added to the alcohol (P. Mayer). It is a matter of indifference whether the 70 per cent, 80 per cent or 90 per cent alcohol is thus iodized. In future treatment of the object, as well as in sectioning, any such crystals of sublimate will not be found to be a hindrance. In the case of delicate objects it is better to undertake their removal *after* sectioning by adding iodine to the absolute alcohol then used.

**Acetic Sublimate Solution**—An excellent solution specially used for embryonic tissues and for organs containing only a small quantity of connective tissue. To a saturated aqueous solution of sublimate, 5 to 10 per cent of glacial acetic acid is added. After remaining two to three hours or more in this solution, the objects are transferred to 35 per cent alcohol and then passed through the higher grades of alcohol.

**Picric Acid**—Small and medium-sized objects (up to 1 c.c.) are fixed in twenty-four hours in a saturated aqueous solution of picric acid (about 0.75 per cent). Objects of considerable size may be left in this solution for weeks without detriment. The tissues are then transferred to 70 or 80 per cent alcohol, in which they remain until the alcohol is not colored by the picric acid. Instead of a pure solution of picric acid, the picrosulphuric acid of Kleinenberg, or the picric acid of P. Mayer may be used. Picrosulphuric acid is made as follows: 1 c.c. of concentrated sulphuric acid is added to 100 c.c. of a saturated aqueous picric acid solution. Allow this to stand for twenty-four hours and dilute with double its volume of distilled water. The picric acid solution is made by adding 2 c.c. of pure nitric acid to 100 c.c. of saturated picric acid solution. Filter after standing for twenty-four hours.

**Chromic Acid**—Chromic acid is used in a  $\frac{1}{3}$  to 1 per cent aqueous solution. Small pieces are fixed for twenty-four hours; larger ones for a longer time. The quantity of the fixing fluid should equal at least more than fifty times the volume of the tissues to be fixed.

After fixing, objects must be washed for at least twenty-four hours in running water, then through the grades of alcohols, and preserved in 80 per cent. Two to 3 drops of formic acid to every 100 c c of chromic acid solution improve their fixing properties

#### Müller's Fluid —

Potassium bichromate	2 to 2 5 grams
Sodium sulphate	1 gram
Water	100 c c

This solution requires a long time for fixing, at least several weeks, and for large pieces several months. During the first few weeks the solution should be changed every three or four days and later once a week, until it remains clear. Tissues should be thoroughly washed in running water at least twenty-four hours. For some special purposes it is better to wash in alcohol. Tissues should be carried through the grades and preserved in 80 per cent alcohol. While tissues are in Müller's fluid they should be kept in the dark.

#### Müller's Fluid and Formalin —

Müller's fluid	100 c c
Formalin	10 c c

The addition of formalin to Müller's fluid greatly hastens fixation. It is an excellent agent of great penetrating power, and tissues stain very well after it. Twenty-four hours will fix tissues of ordinary size, though they may be left longer without damage. Bone fixed too long in formalin is liable to be hard to cut.

#### Zenker's Fluid —

	Grams
Potassium bichromate	2 5
Sodium sulphate	1 0
Corrosive sublimate	5 0
Glacial acetic acid	5 0
Water	100 0

Add the glacial acid in proper proportion to the quantity of the solution to be used, and not to the stock solution. Allow the tissues to remain in this solution for from six to twenty-four hours. Then wash in running water for from twelve to twenty-four hours and transfer to gradually concentrated alcohol. Crystals of sublimate which may be present are removed with iodized alcohol. Zenker's fluid penetrates easily and fixes nuclear and protoplasmic structures equally well without decreasing the staining qualities of the elements.

**Formalin** —Of recent years formalin, which is a 4 per cent solution of the gas formaldehyde in water, has been much used as a fixing fluid. Make a solution by adding 10 parts of formalin to 90 parts of water or normal saline solution. Small pieces of tissue should remain in this for from twelve to twenty four hours, larger pieces a number of days or weeks, and then transfer to 90 per cent alcohol.

### STAINING AGENTS

#### DeLafield's Hematoxylin —

Hematoxylin crystals	4 grams
Absolute alcohol	20 c c
Ammonia alum aqueous solution	400 c c
Methyl alcohol	100 c c
Glycerin	100 c c

Dissolve hematoxylin crystals in absolute alcohol and add to the alum solution, place in an open vessel for four days, then filter and add the methyl alcohol and glycerin.

**Hemalum** (Mayer 91) —One gram of hematin is dissolved by heating in 50 c c of absolute alcohol. This is poured into a solution of 50 grams of alum in 1 liter of distilled water and the whole well stirred. A thymol crystal is added to prevent the growth of fungus. The advantages of hemalum is as follows. The stain may be used immediately after its preparation, it stains quickly, never overstaining, especially when diluted with water, and penetrates deeply, making it useful for staining in bulk. After staining sections or tissues are washed in distilled water.

#### Safranin —

Safranin	1 gram
Absolute alcohol	10 c c
Aniline water	90 c c

Aniline water is prepared by shaking up 5 c c to 8 c c of aniline oil in 100 c c of distilled water and filtered through a wet filter. Dissolve the safranin in the aniline water and add the alcohol. Filter before using.

Stain sections fixed in Flemming's solution for twenty four hours and decolorize with a weak solution of hydrochloric acid in absolute alcohol (1 to 1000). After a varying period of time, usually only a few minutes, all the tissue elements will be found to have become bleached, only the chromatin of the nucleus retaining the color.

**Methyl Green.**—Stains very quickly. One gram is dissolved in 100 c.c. of distilled water to which 25 c.c. of absolute alcohol is added. Rinse the sections in water, then place in 70 per cent alcohol for a few minutes, transfer to absolute alcohol for a minute, etc.

**Hematoxylin.**—**Van Gieson's Acid Fuchsin-Picric Acid Solution.**—Stain in any of the hematoxylin solutions, and after rinsing sections in water counter-stain in the following

Acid fuchsin, 1 per cent aqueous solution	5 c c
Picric acid, saturated aqueous solution	100 c c

Dilute with an equal quantity of water before using. The hematoxylin stained sections remain in the solution from one to two minutes, are then rinsed in water, dehydrated, and cleared.

**Hematoxylin-Eosin.**—Sections already stained in hematoxylin are placed for two to five minutes in a 1 to 2 per cent aqueous solution of eosin or in a 1 per cent solution of eosin in a 60 per cent solution of alcohol. They are then washed in water until free from the stain, after which they remain for a short time in absolute alcohol. In place of the eosin solution a 1 per cent aqueous solution of benzopurpurin may be used for the following solution of erythrosin (Held).

Erythrosin	1 gram
Distilled water	150 c c
Glacial acetic acid	3 drops

**Silver Nitrate Method.**—Especially useful for staining intercellular substances of epithelium, endothelium, and mesothelium, and the ground substance of connective tissues. It may be used on either fresh or fixed tissues, fresh tissue, however, being more satisfactory. Spread the tissues to be stained in thin layers, immerse in a 0.5 to 1 per cent solution of silver nitrate from ten to fifteen minutes, rinse in distilled water and place in fresh distilled water or 70 per cent alcohol or a 4 per cent solution of formalin and expose to direct sunlight until they assume a brown color. The sunlight reduces the silver in the form of fine particles which appear black on being examined with transmitted light. The preparations thus obtained may be examined in glycerin or dehydrated and mounted in balsam.

**Glycerin.**—To mount in glycerin transfer the sections from water to the slide, cover with a drop of glycerin, and apply the cover-slip.

Sections colored with a stain that would be injured by contact with alcohol and where clearing is not especially necessary are mounted this way

**Farrant's Gum Glycerin**—In place of pure glycerin the following mixture may be used

Glycerin	50 c c
Water	50 c c
Gum arabic (powder)	50 grams
Arsenous acid	1 gram

Dissolve the arsenous acid in water. Place the gum arabic in a glass mortar and mix it with the water, then add the glycerin. Filter through a wet filter paper or through fine muslin. To preserve such preparations for any length of time the cover glasses must be so fixed as to shut off the glycerin from the air. For this purpose cements or varnishes are used, by painting over the edges of the cover glass. These masses adhere to the glass, harden, and fasten the cover glass firmly to the slide, hermetically sealing the object. Krönig's is one of the best formulas for varnish, and is made as follows. Melt 2 parts of wax and stir in 7 to 9 parts of colophonium and filter the mass hot. Before employing an oil immersion lens it is best to paint the edges with an alcoholic solution of shellac.

**Silver Nitrate**—In thin membranes and sections the vessel walls can be rendered distinct by silver impregnation, which brings out the outlines of their endothelial cells. This may be done either by injecting the vessel with a 1 per cent solution of silver nitrate, or with a 0.25 per cent solution of silver nitrate in gelatin. This method is of advantage, since after hardening the capillaries of the injected tissues appear slightly distended. Organs thus treated can be sectioned but the endothelial mosaic of the vessels does not appear definitely until the sections have been exposed to sunlight.

The injections of lymph channels, lymph vessels, and lymph spaces is usually done by puncture. A pointed cannula is thrust into the tissue and the syringe empties by a slight but constant pressure. The injected fluid spreads by means of the channels offering the least resistance. For this purpose it is best to use aqueous solution of Berlin blue or silver nitrate as the thicker gelatin solutions cause tearing of the tissues.

**Clearing Agents.**—Clearing agents are substances of high refracting index, mostly oils, which are used to displace alcohol and prepare tissues for embedding and sections for mounting in balsam.

Clearing agents for embedding in paraffin must be miscible with alcohol and solvents for paraffin. They are called clearing agents because the tissues become translucent and clear in them. Xylol is the most rapid and probably most used agent. It has, however, a hardening action on the tissues, especially if they remain too long in it. Pure oil of cedarwood when free from turpentine is an excellent agent. Chloroform has been largely used for the same purpose.

Before celloidin sections are mounted in balsam they must be cleared. For this purpose an oil that will mix with 95 per cent alcohol is desirable, as absolute alcohol softens the celloidin. The oil used must not dissolve the celloidin, and should not dissolve the stain. Beechwood creosote is an excellent agent, and has been largely used. It clears sections rapidly from 95 per cent alcohol. Oil of bergamot is an excellent agent, also oil of *origanum*; but in the latter the *oleum origani cretici* and not the *oleum origani gallici* must be used. A mixture of equal parts of oil of bergamot and beechwood creosote has been used satisfactorily, and is an excellent agent. A cheaper mixture is made of equal parts of phenol, oil of *origanum*, and oil of cedarwood.





# INDEX.

## A

- ABSCISS, absorption of roots before and after, 284  
 Absorbent organ, 282  
     osteoclasts as, 287  
 Absorption of bone, 276  
     of cementum, 163  
     of deciduous tooth roots, 279  
         causes of, 275  
     of dentin, 280  
     of enamel, 280  
     of implanted teeth, 282  
     of permanent tooth roots, 284  
 Acetic acid and sublimate for fixing 440  
 Acrodont teeth, 235  
 Alveolar bone, 338  
     relation of, to mandible, 27  
         to teeth 26  
     removal of, physiologically 27  
     crest group of fibers, 241  
     division of periodental membrane, 239  
 Alzheimer, 279  
 Ameloblasts, 327  
 Amphioxus, 19  
 Analogies, definition of, 23  
     illustration of, 23  
 Antrum of Highmore See Maxillary sinus  
 Apical division of periodental membrane, 239  
     group of fibers, 241  
 Arey, 276  
 Aristotle, 183  
 Attachment of teeth 230  
     by ankylosis, 233  
     fibrous membrane, 231  
     hinge joint, 231  
     insertion in a socket, 235

## B

- BALSAM in grinding, 417  
 Bibra, von on enamel, 38  
 Black on absorption of roots, 286  
     on epithelial cords 260  
     on periosteum 222  
 Bland-Sutton on absorptions, 277

- Blastoderm formation, 310  
     layers of, 308  
 Blastula, 307  
 Blocking of celloidin material, 434  
     of paraffin material, 431  
 Blood supply of ameloblasts, 283  
     of osteoclasts, 280  
     of pulp, 171  
 Bloodvessels in cementum, 153  
     of periodental membrane, 267  
     of pulp, 171  
 Bohm, 277  
 Bone, 209  
     and cementum compared, 393  
     arrangement of, 213  
     canaliculi, 211  
     cancellous, 336  
     compact, 213  
     construction and destruction in bone building 214  
     Cope on, 340  
     corpuscles of, 211  
     decalcified, 393  
     definition of, 209  
     distribution in mandible, 341  
     endochondral, 216  
     endomembranous, 218  
     fibers of Sharpey in, 160  
     formation and growth of, 216  
     ground sections of 392  
     growth of, 219  
     Haversian system, 211  
     influences of mechanical forces on, 350  
     interstitial, 214  
     lacunæ of, 211  
         compared with lacunæ of cementum, 158  
     matrix of, 210  
     osteoclasts in, 214 217  
     periosteal buds in 217  
     relation of teeth to, 26, 334  
     structural elements of, 209  
     subperiosteal, 211  
         compared with cementum 391  
     varieties of, 211  
     Volkman's canals in, 211  
 Branchial arches, 313  
     arteries, 313  
     clefts, 313

Branching of dentinal tubules in crown  
139  
in root 143  
Bredichin 276  
Brooks Dr., 201  
Burchard and Inglis 283

## C

CALCIFICATION beginning of of teeth  
325  
of bone 216  
of cementum 153  
of dentin 326  
of enamel 326  
Calcium carbonate in enamel and den-  
tin 38 136  
fluoride in enamel and dentin 38,  
136  
phosphate in enamel and dentin  
38 136  
Canaliculi of bone 211  
of cementum 153  
Caries of dentin 59  
of enamel 48  
granular layer of Tomes and 146  
intensity and habit of 60  
interglobular spaces and 149  
secondary or backward 62  
stages in progress of 56  
Carotid internal 189  
Cartilage in bone formation 216  
in enamel analysis 38  
Meckel's 323  
Causch 277  
Cavities classes of 96  
relation of to marginal ridges 127  
rod direction in preparation of 97  
structural requirements of 90  
Cavo-surface angle 90  
requirements in preparation  
of 90  
Cell division 300  
theory of 229  
walls 202  
Celloidin blocking of 434  
method of 437  
cutting of 436  
serial sections of 437  
staining of 436  
stock solutions of 435  
Cementing substance 43  
Cementoblasts 251  
Cementum 153  
absorption of 163 278  
compared with bone 203  
corpuscles of 160  
definition of 153  
development of 153  
distribution of 32

Cementum, function of 153  
Haversian canals in 153  
histogenesis of 154  
imbedded fibers in 160  
lacunae of, 158  
compared with those of bone  
158  
lamellae of 154  
structural elements of 154  
Cervical division of periodontal mem-  
brane 239  
Chemical composition of dentin 136  
of enamel 38  
ideas 301  
Chromic acid for fixing 440  
Chromosomes vehicles of transmission  
301  
Chronology of dental follicle, 329  
Cleaning slides 439  
Clearing agents 445  
Cleft palate, 319  
Compensating canals 284  
Connective tissue 203  
cells becoming phagocytic 209  
chemical relation of formed  
materials to cytoplasm 207  
mutations of 203  
response to chemical changes  
207  
Cope on bone 340  
Corrosive sublimate for fixing 440  
Cortical plates 336  
Creosote 445  
Cribriform plates 331  
Cryer 338  
Czermak on interglobular spaces 146

## D

DAUSCHAKOFF 206  
Decalcification of bone 438  
by osteoblasts 278  
in osteomalacia, 276  
of teeth 438  
Delafield and Pruden, 277  
Dental caries 48  
of dentin, 59  
of enamel 48  
follicle 321 331  
lamina 331  
ligament 342  
papilla 323  
pulp 164  
ridge 321, 331  
Dentin 135  
absorption of 281  
calcification of 326  
caries of 59  
changes with age 137  
chemical analysis of, 136

Dentin, clear layer of, 145  
 defects in, 146  
 definition of, 135  
 development of, 326  
 distribution of, 29  
 fibrils of, 144  
 formative cells of, 113, 166  
 function of, 135  
 granular layer of, 145  
 histogenesis of, 135  
 interglobular spaces in, 146  
 lines of Schreger, 149  
 matrix of, 136  
 secondary, 150  
 sheaths of Newman, 137  
 structural elements of, 135  
 tubules of, 138  
   branching of, 143  
   caries in, 61  
   curves of, 139  
   diameter of, 138  
   direction of, in crown, 139  
     in root, 143

Dento-cemental junction, 144  
 Dento-enamel junction, 31, 139  
   and caries, 62  
   characteristics of, 143  
   sensitiveness of, 143

Dermal scales, 22, 230  
 Descriptive terms, 34  
 Dewey, Dr Kaethe, 175, 197  
 Dissecting, 426  
 Dog teeth, absorptions of, 279  
 Duval, 277

## E

ECTODERM *See* Epiblast

Embryology, 302  
   biological considerations funda-  
     mental, 298  
   chemical ideas related to, 301  
   early stages of, 302  
   of teeth, 321  
 Enamel, 28, 37  
   abrasion of, 96  
   absorption of, 280  
   action of acid on, 45  
   appearances of, 67  
   areas of weakness, 125  
   bands of Retzius, 70  
   blood supply of formative cells,  
     116, 284  
   calcification of, 326  
   caps, 113  
   cavity walls in, 90  
   cementing substances of, 43  
   characteristics of, 63  
   chemical composition of, 38  
   cleavage of, 84

Enamel cuticle, 74  
   defects in, 113  
   degree of calcification of, 38  
   development of, 326  
   differences between, and other cal-  
     cified tissue, 37  
     rods and cementing sub-  
       stance, 43  
   direction of rods, 41, 78  
   distribution of, 28  
   effect of caries on, 48  
   of elephant's tusk, 29  
   etching of, 45  
   function of, 28  
   gnarled, 64  
   of herbivora teeth, 34  
   histogenesis of, 37  
   hypoplasia of, 82  
   incremental lines of, 70  
   lines of Schreger in, 73  
   Nasmyth's membrane, 74  
   organ, 322

  ameloblasts of, 327  
   blood supply of, 283  
   development of, 322  
   effect on mesenchymal tissue,  
     322  
   loss of, 40  
   of molar teeth, permanent, 327  
   remains of, 261  
   stellate reticulum of, 323  
   stratum intermedium of, 332  
   tunics of, 323

  origin of, 37  
   planing of, 87  
   refraction of, 43  
   relation of formative organ to, 40  
   relative solubility of, 44  
     strength of rods and cement  
       substance, 43

  of rodent teeth, 34  
   rods, 41  
     diameter of, 41  
     direction of, 41, 78  
     length of, 42  
     refraction of, 43  
     size of, 41

  spindles, 76  
   straight, 64  
   stratification of, 68  
   striation of, 67  
   structural defects of, 113  
     elements of, 37

  Tomes on, 39  
   Williams on, 39

Endoskeleton, 19  
 Endothelial cells as phagocytes, 277  
   Mallory on, 277  
   relation to nervous system, 22  
 Epiblast, 308  
 Epithelial cords, 260

Epithelial cords arrangement of 261  
     of cells in 263  
     Black on 260  
     derivation of 261  
     distribution of 261  
     as lymphatics 260  
     von Brunn on 260  
 Eruption of teeth 275  
 Etching of enamel 45  
 Eustachius, 183  
 Exoskeleton 19

## F

Facial artery, 197  
 Farrant's gum glycerin 444  
 Fastening teeth to disks 413  
 Fat in dentin 136  
     in enamel 38  
 Fertilization 304  
 Fibers of periodontal membrane 240  
     classification of 241  
     imbedded in alveolar process 211  
     in cementum 160  
 Fibrils of odontoblasts 144 168  
 Fibroblasts in periodontal membrane 250  
 Filiform papillæ 293  
 Fischer 277  
 Fixatives 427 430  
 Fixing, 426  
 Flemming's solution 439  
 Follicle dental 324 331  
 Fols solution 439  
 Foramen apical 171  
 Forces influencing bone growths 340  
     349  
 Frontal nasal process 318  
 Fungiform papillæ 293

## G

Gastrula 307  
 Germ layers 308  
 Giant cells 277  
 Gilmer 282  
 Gingivæ 244  
     lymph vessels of 193  
 Gingival division of root 238  
     group of fibers 241  
     space epithelium of 264  
 Glands of Serres 264  
     of tongue 290  
 Glycerin for mounting 443  
 Gomphosis 236  
 Granular layer of Tomes 145  
     difficulty of staining 145  
     invisibility of in haematoxylin and eosin stain 145

Granular layer of Tomes Skillen stain for 145  
 Grinding of crumbled material 420  
     disks 408  
     in hard balsam 416  
     of frail material 416  
     machine, 403  
     clogging of stones of, 421  
     fastening teeth to disks of 413  
     lap wheels for 409  
     point finder of 409  
     preparation of shellac for 419  
     slicing mechanism for 422  
     spatter guards for 411  
     spiders and dogs for, 412  
     stones for, 410  
     watering stones of 410  
     rapidity of 414  
     removal of cover glass from disk of, 418  
     of tooth sections 379  
         process of 410  
 Growth force 349  
 Gubernaculum dentis 275  
 Gum 289  
     epithelium of 288  
     fibers of 289

## H

Hæmalum 442  
 Haematoxylin and eosin 443  
     Delafield's 442  
     failure to stain granular layer of Tomes 145  
 Hair compared with tooth 21  
 Hardening 427  
 Hare lip 320  
 Hassin 279  
 Haversian systems of bone 211  
     of cementum 153  
 Hertwig's embryology 230 320  
 Hess 281  
 Hinged teeth 231  
 Histological technic 424  
 Holoblastic segmentation, 306  
 Homology 19 23  
 Horizontal group of fibers 241  
 Howell, 276  
 Howship's lacunæ 255  
 Huber on pulpal nerves 177  
 Huxley 75  
 Hypoblast 308  
 Hypoplasia of enamel 82

## I

Implanted teeth absorbed 282  
 Incremental lines 70

Indexing and filing 427  
 Inferior dental nerve, 354  
 Ingus 285  
 Inter-cellular substances 200  
   in pulp, 171  
     kinds of, 202  
     relation of cells to 201  
 Interglobular spaces, 146  
   Czermak on 146  
 Intermaxillary bone 319

## J

JACKSON 276  
 Jaws, changes with age, 26  
   growth of, 347  
 Jugular, internal 189

## K

KERATINIZED scales 19  
 Kolliker on osteoclasts 276  
 Krause 183

## L

LABELLING of slides, 429  
 Laboratory methods 430  
   directions for students 381  
 Lacunæ of bone, 211  
   of cementum 158  
     compared with bone, 393  
 Lamellæ of cementum 154  
 Lansit 19  
 Lap-wheels 409  
 Lateral nasal process, 318  
 Layer of Weil, 171  
 Leukocytes in lymph stream 183  
   as origin of osteoclasts, 277  
 Ligamentum circulare, dental ligament  
   242  
   penetrated by lymph channels,  
   195  
 Lingual tonsils 297  
 Lymphatics, central trunks of, 199  
   character of fluid of, 183  
   coagulation of fluid of 181  
   collecting trunks of 184, 186  
   descending cervical chain of, 190  
   Dewey's work on, 197  
   discovery of 183  
   Eustachius, 183  
   external glands of 190  
   function of 181  
   of gingivæ, 195  
   of head and neck, 186  
     mastoid group, 188  
     parotid and subparotid  
     group 189

Lymphatics of head and neck, retro-  
   pharyngeal group 190  
   submaxillary group, 189  
   submental group 190  
   suboccipital group, 188  
 internal glands 190  
   of lips 192  
 lymphatic duct (right) 182  
 Massa on 183  
   of mouth and gums 193  
     inner surface of man-  
     dible 193  
     of maxillæ, 193  
     outer surface of man-  
     dible, 193  
     of maxilla, 194  
 network of origin, 184 186  
 nodes or glands, 186  
 parts of, 183  
   of peridental membrane 195  
   of pulp 197  
   Schweitzer on, 197  
   substernomastoid glands, 190  
   thoracic duct 182  
   of tongue, 197  
     anterior apical 197  
     marginal 198  
     median or central, 199  
     posterior or basal, 198

## M

MACERATION, 476  
 Magitot 330  
 Magnesium phosphate in dentin, 136  
   in enamel, 38  
 Mallory, 277  
 Mammalian segmentation, 310  
 Mandible, buds of 317  
   distribution of bone of 341  
   growth of, 335  
   structure of, 336  
 Marginal ridges as areas of weakness,  
   127  
 Massa 183  
 Matrix of bone 210  
   of dentin 136  
 Maturation 303  
 Maxilla, palatal process of, 319  
   structure of, 336  
 Maxillary sinus, 347  
 McMurrich, 304  
 Meckel's cartilage, 325  
 Membrana ebora, 169  
 Meroblastic segmentation, 308  
 Methods of embedding, 431, 435  
 Methyl green 443  
 Meyer's fixative, 439  
 Miller on caries, 57  
 Molar, permanent origin of, 327

Morri's staining dish 433  
 Mounting of specimens 429  
 Mouth cavity 288 314 319  
   epithelium of 288  
   formation of 314 319  
   glands of 290  
   mucous membrane of 288  
   nerve endings in 290  
   separation from nose cavity 319  
   submucosa of, 289  
   taste-buds of 295  
   tongue 291  
 Mucous glands 290  
 Müller's fluid 441  
 Mummary 177

## N

NASMYTH'S membrane, 74  
 Nerve fibers in dentin 178  
   in peridental membrane 271  
   in pulp 177  
 Newman's sheaths 137  
 Nissl 279  
 Northwestern University Dental School, 274 280  
 Notochord 19

## O

OBLIQUE group of fibers 241  
 Odontoblasts 113, 166  
 Oil of bergamot 445  
   of cedarwood 445  
   of organum 455  
 Oocytes primary and secondary 303  
 Oögonia 303  
 Osteoblasts of peridental membrane 254  
 Osteoclasts, 276  
   as absorbent organ, 287  
   in burrowing canals 255  
   in cementum 278  
   in dentin 281  
   function of 276  
   origin of 276  
   in peridental membrane 278  
 Owen's odontography 75 150

## P

PALATE formation of, 319  
   soft 295  
 Papillæ of gingivæ 266  
   of gum 289  
   of lip, 291  
   of tongue 293  
 Paraffin cutting of 432

Paraffin embedding in 431  
   kinds of 431  
   method summary of 434  
 Pathological absorption of permanent tooth roots 282  
 Paul 75  
 Peridental membrane 237  
   absorption of 278  
   arrangement of fibers of, 240  
   blood supply of, 267  
   cellular elements of 240  
   cementoblasts in, 241  
   changes in with age 272  
   classification of fibers of 240  
     Black on 241  
   comparison with capsules of organ 238  
     with perosteum 238  
   definition of 237  
   division of 238  
   epithelial structure in 260  
     Black on 260  
     von Brunn on 260  
   fibroblasts in 240  
   fibrous tissue of 240  
   function of 240  
   gland of Serres 264  
   lymphatics of 195 270  
   nerves of 271  
   nomenclature of 237  
   Pacinian corpuscles in, 271  
   practical consideration of 274  
   preparation of material in 274  
   principal fibers of 240  
     classification of 241  
     relation of cementoblasts in to cure of pockets 253  
     structural elements of 240  
 Periosteum appearance of 223  
   attached complex 229  
     simple 227  
   Black on 222  
   classification of 222  
   definition of 223  
   function of 222  
   layers of 224  
   relation of attachment of to burrowing pus 224  
   structural elements of 224  
   unattached complex 226  
     simple 225  
 Permanent molars first 327  
   second and third 330  
   teeth, origin of 321  
 Physiological absorption of tooth root 279  
 Picric acid 440  
 Placoid scales 22  
 Pleurodont 235  
 Point finder 409  
 Polar bodies 303

Prentiss, 276  
 Preparation of material, 411  
 Preserving, 430  
 Processes globularis, 319  
 Pulp, 164  
   arteries of, 171  
   cells, connective tissue, 170  
     specialized, 166  
   function of, 164  
   intercellular substance of, 171  
   layer of Weil, 171  
   lymphatics of, 175  
   membrana eboris of, 169

## Q

QUAIN, 314

## R

RAPIDITY of grinding, 414  
 Reattachment of tissue to tooth roots,  
   253  
 Relation of enamel to formative organ,  
   40  
   of nucleus to cytoplasm, 299  
   of tooth to bone, 26  
 Removal of cover-glass from grinding  
   disk, 418  
 Retzius, bands of, 70  
 Rose, 179

## S

SAFRANIN, 442  
 Salter, 168, 283  
 Schaffer, 276  
 Schweitzer, 197  
 Secondary curves of dentinal tubules,  
   139  
   dentin, 150  
     and cementum, study of, 391  
     tubules of, 150  
 Sectioning methods, 431  
 Segmentation, 306  
   holoblastic, 306  
   mammanian, 310  
   meroblastic, 308  
 Serial sections, 437  
 Serres, gland of, 264  
 Sertoli, 304  
 Sharpey's fibers, 160  
 Sheaths of Newman, 137  
 Sheep teeth, absorption of, 278  
 Silver nitrate, 443, 444  
   injection, 444  
 Skillen's stain of granular layer of  
   Tomes, 145

Slicing mechanism, 422  
 Southwell's experiment, 146  
 Spatter guard, 411  
 Spermatids, 304  
 Spermatocyte, 304  
 Spermatogenesis, 304  
 Spermatogonia, 304  
 Spermatozoa, 304  
 Staining agents, 442  
   of celloidin sections, 436  
 Stellate reticulum, 323  
 Stohr, 228  
 Stowell, 171  
 Stratum intermedium, 332  
 Subperiosteal bone, 211  
   and cementum, 393

## T

TASTE-BUDS, 295  
 Teasing, 425  
 Teeth, attachment of, 230  
   for grinding, 377  
   relation of, to bone, 26  
 Thecodont attachment, 235  
 Tissue changes with movement of  
   teeth, 368  
 Tomes, Charles, 39, 230  
   granular layer of, 145  
   John, 145, 276  
 Tongue, 290  
   epithelium of, 294  
   glands of, 290  
   muscles of, 291  
   papillæ of, 293  
     circumvallate, 293  
     filiform, 293  
     fungiform, 293  
     taste-buds of, 295  
     tonsils of, 297  
 Tonsils, 296  
   lingual, 297  
   palatal, 297  
   pharyngeal, 297  
 Tooth attachment, 230  
   ankylosis, 233  
   fibrous, 231  
   gomphosis, 236  
   hinge-joint, 231  
   germs, beginning of formation of,  
     325  
     of permanent teeth, 324  
     origin of, 324  
     time of, 325  
   of temporary teeth, 322  
 Transeptal group of fibers, 241  
 Transmission, vehicle of, 301  
 Transverse sections of tooth roots, 380



## V

VITAL function of peridental mem-  
brane 241  
of pulp 164  
Von Bibra enamel analysis 38  
Von Brunn and epithelial cords 260  
Von Giesen stain, 443

## W

WALDEYER 75  
Walkoff 337

Washing of tissue 430  
Waste water, 411  
Water of crystallization in enamel 39  
Watering stones in grinding 410  
Weed 279  
Wegener 276  
Weil 171  
Williams on enamel 39  
Wilson 305

## Z

ZFNKER'S solution 441

